

*An Introduction to
Latin Literature and Style*

by

*Floyd L. Moreland
Rita M. Fleischer*

revised by

*Andrew Keller
Stephanie Russell
Clement Dunbar*

*The Latin/Greek Institute
The City University of New York*

Introduction

These materials have been prepared to fit the needs of the Summer Latin Institute of Brooklyn College and The City University of New York, and they are structured as an appropriate sequel to Moreland and Fleischer, *Latin: An Intensive Course* (University of California Press, 1974). However, students can use these materials with equal effectiveness after the completion of any basic grammar text and in any intermediate Latin course whose aim is to introduce students to a variety of authors of both prose and poetry. The materials are especially suited to an intensive or accelerated intermediate course.

The authors firmly believe that, upon completion of a basic introduction to grammar, the only way to learn Latin well is to *read* as much as possible. A prime obstacle to reading is vocabulary: students spend much energy and time looking up the enormous number of words they do not know. Following the system used by Clyde Pharr in *Vergil's Aeneid, Books I-VI* (Heath, 1930), this problem is minimized by glossing unfamiliar words on each page of text. Whether a word is familiar or not has been determined by its occurrence or omission in the formal unit vocabularies of Moreland and Fleischer, *Latin: An Intensive Course*. Students will need to know the words included in the vocabularies of that text and be acquainted with some of the basic principles of word formation.

This system of providing vocabulary has obvious advantages: (a) It permits greater speed in reading and affords the opportunity of covering far more text in the same time that is allotted to dictionary work and reading in more conventional systems. (b) Since it provides students with all the basic information they need about the words in question, they can focus greater attention on the structure of the Latin, on its syntax and style. (c) It eliminates much of the fatigue and frustration which derive from constant fingering through the dictionary.

At the same time, we felt that there should be some controlled way of assuring that each student will steadily increase his active vocabulary. For this reason, each word which occurs three or more times in the text is arrowed at its first occurrence and does not subsequently appear in the visual vocabularies, except in cases where it has a specialized meaning. These words are to be learned and retained as part of the student's active vocabulary. Some exceptions to this principle have been made in the case of words which we considered rare (either in fact or for this level of work), such as *capella* (which occurs several times in Vergil's first *Eclogue*) and *conditōrium* (in the selection from Petronius' *Satyricon*). Such words are arrowed and are glossed each time they occur.

Since many contemporary students begin Latin very late in their college careers and since an increasing number have very little time to devote to their experience with this language and literature, we feel it important to incorporate a survey of the major development of the literature and the style of the language into the curriculum of the intermediate level course in reading. We judge this beneficial because: (a) it provides a backdrop or framework for the general progression of the language and literature so that major authors like Cicero, Horace, or Vergil can be seen in perspective and not just as entities unto themselves; (b) it introduces students to brief selections from a variety of authors, facilitating their ability to choose wisely which authors they may wish to

pursue in greater depth; (c) it increases an awareness of style and linguistic structure. This affords the ability to appreciate more acutely the specific stylistic achievements of a Cicero or a Tacitus than is possible in more conventional settings where the student is thrown into such authors with no ready frame of stylistic or literary reference; (d) it makes exercises in prose composition potentially more meaningful, for at a very early stage, such exercises can focus not only on morphology and syntax but on stylistic variations as well.

Notes on the Latin text are kept to a minimum to encourage students to fend for themselves, except in areas of extreme difficulty or obscurity.

The book is divided into four main sections:

- (1) A survey of Latin literature from Livius Andronicus through Tacitus, with a brief consideration of the transition into the medieval period. Succinct introductions precede each author and selection and are designed primarily to stress the salient features of language, style, and theme which the selections illustrate.
- (2) The *First Catilinarian* of Cicero is included to afford an opportunity to read a prose work continuously from beginning to end and also to introduce students more extensively to features of rhetoric. For those instructors who wish to omit the survey of Latin literature or to deal with it after providing more extensive practice in reading Cicero, the vocabularies have been structured so that either part I or part II can be introduced without the other as prerequisite. That is, if a word occurs three or more times in part I and so has been arrowed, it will nonetheless be glossed if it reappears in part II.
- (3) A modest selection of odes from Horace may serve as an introduction to lyric poetry and affords an opportunity to experiment with some of the metrical schemes found in Horace. The vocabulary listing, again, does not presuppose the completion of parts I or II as prerequisite. The observations on metrics, however, do assume that students have studied the discussions of metrics that precede the selections from Ennius and Catullus in part I.
- (4) Selections from the prose of Saint Augustine provide students with a link between the thought and language of the classical and medieval periods. The vocabulary listing, again, does not presuppose completion of parts I, II, or III.

An appendix of major rhetorical figures with examples from English literature and from the selections in parts I and II (as well as from Vergil, *Aeneid* IV) is included for reference.

In this book, i-stem nouns of the third declension are not indicated as such in the vocabularies at the foot of the page. They will be so designated in the final vocabulary at the end of the book.

In order to prepare students for dealing with actual Latin texts, long marks (macrons) are not included in the text but do appear in the visual vocabularies so as to facilitate pronunciation and, where applicable, scansion.

The authors wish to express their thanks to Professor Dennis J. Spininger of the Department of Comparative Literature at Brooklyn College for collecting the English examples in the appendix on figures of rhetoric. Special gratitude is owed

to colleagues and students in the 1974 Summer Latin Institute who tested some of these materials in the classroom and were responsible for many positive revisions. A greater number will surely follow.

New York
February 1975

FLM
RMF

Introduction to the Second Edition

The second edition of this book is being issued to students of the 1992 Latin Institute of Brooklyn College and the CUNY Graduate School. It has been substantially corrected, revised, and re-arranged by John F. Collins, many other staff members of the Institute, and most recently by Andrew Keller and Stephanie Russell. Clement Dunbar, an alumnus and former staff member of the Latin Institute, has been responsible for computer processing and production.

Although the book is now in an incomplete and temporary form, it has nevertheless undergone some improvements that will remain: approximately twenty more Catullus poems have been included, the first fifteen chapters of Sallust's *Bellum Catilinae* have been added, and—most important—the book has been brought into line with the Institute's current curriculum.

New York
May 1992

FLM
RMF

Introduction to the Third Edition

The third edition of this book is being issued to students of the 1993 Latin Institute of Brooklyn College and the CUNY Graduate School. Andrew Keller, Stephanie Russell, and Clement Dunbar have continued their efforts at correction and revision. More chapters of Sallust's *Bellum Catilinae* have been added, and several selections added to the Prose and Poetry Surveys appear for the first time. All these additions represent necessary parts of the Latin Institute's current curriculum.

Much work has also been done to improve vocabulary acquisition by students as they make their way through the book. (3rd declension i-stem nouns are now indicated as such.) An added note explains the system of arrowed words.

Macrons have been added to the texts of Cicero, *In Catilinam I*, and Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae*. Since these texts are read immediately after the completion of Moreland and Fleischer, macrons aid students in acquiring an appreciation of Latin prose rhythms.

It is hoped that by the summer of 1994 the book will be completed in a form that will make it useful for many future Institutes.

New York
May 1993

FLM
RMF

A Note on Vocabulary

The vocabulary glosses provided on each page beneath the texts in this book have been prepared according to a section-by-section system designed to aid students in continuing regular vocabulary acquisition after mastering all words presented in the eighteen unit vocabularies of *Latin: An Intensive Course* by Moreland and Fleischer. The vocabulary glosses in this book assume mastery of all words in the Moreland and Fleischer text. These words are never provided in the glosses. (Poems of Catullus read before students have finished their study of Moreland and Fleischer represent exceptions to this rule.)

Several other points may be of help to the student:

- 1) Words preceded by an arrow appear only in the texts that are part of the required curriculum of the Latin Institute. These words appear three times or more in their respective texts or sections and thus should be memorized by the student. In general, once a word has been arrowed, it is not glossed again later in the book. Following this note there is a list of all arrowed words with the numbers of the pages on which they appear. This list comprises the words in this text that a Latin Institute student should have learned by the end of the course. (**In addition to the arrowed words in this book, Latin Institute students will be provided with a list of words from Vergil's *Aeneid IV* that are also "arrowed words" and must be learned.)
- 2) The following separate sections of this book contain arrowed words:
 - a) Cicero, *In Catilinam I*, and Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* (selections): assume mastery of Moreland and Fleischer words only
 - b) A Survey of Latin Prose: assumes mastery of Moreland and Fleischer words only
 - c) A Survey of Latin Poetry: assumes mastery of Moreland and Fleischer words and arrowed words in Cicero, Sallust, and the Prose Survey
 - d) Vergil, *Aeneid IV* (not in this text): assumes mastery of Moreland and Fleischer words and arrowed words in Cicero, Sallust, and the Prose Survey
 - e) Horace, Selected Poems: assumes mastery of Moreland and Fleischer words and arrowed words in *all* preceding sections
- 3) This book also omits glosses for all compounds and other vocabulary words whose meanings Latin Institute students should be able to deduce by using Vocabulary Building information in the Moreland and Fleischer text. Mastery of the following vocabulary aids is assumed:

I. Prefixes

A. from prepositions

ā-, ab- (abs-, au-) from, away from; off; thoroughly
 ad (ac-, af-, ag-, al-, ar-, as-, at-) to, towards, against, near
 ante- before, in front
 circum- around, round about
 (cum, prep.) com- (col-, con-, co-, cor-) together (with); completely
 dē- down from or away; utterly
 ē-, ex-, (ef-) out, away; thoroughly

- in- (il-, im-, ir-) in, on, against
 inter- between, among
 ob- (oc-, of-, op-) to meet, toward, against
 per- through; thoroughly
 post- after
 prae- in front, ahead; (with adj.) indicates preeminence in the quality
 praeter- past, by, beyond [praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond; besides]
 prō- forward, forth, in front of
 sub- (suc-, suf-, sum-, sup-, sur-, sus-) under, up from under; somewhat
 super- over, above
 trāns- (trā-, trān-) across

B. not from prepositions

- dis- (dī-, dif-) apart, in different directions
 in- (il-, im-, ir-) not
 re- back, again
 sē- apart

II. Verbs

- A. compound
- B. denominative (formed from nouns or adjectives)
- C. frequentative (-tō, -sō, -itō, repeated action)
- D. inceptive/inchoative (-scō, beginning, becoming)
- E. syncopated (-ve-, -vi-, -v-)
- F. shortened (-ēre for -ērunt)

III. Nouns made with suffixes

A. added to the stems of verbs:

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| -tor, -tōris <i>m.</i> | } | one who |
| -trīx, -trīcis <i>f.</i> | | |
| -iō, -iōnis <i>f.</i> | } | abstract nouns, names of actions |
| -or, -ōris <i>m.</i> | | |
| -tiō, -tiōnis <i>f.</i> | | |
| -tūra, -tūrae <i>f.</i> | | |
| -tus, -tūs <i>m.</i> | | |
| -men, -minis <i>n.</i> | } | names of actions, results of actions |
| -mentum, -mentī <i>n.</i> | | |
| -mōnium, -mōniī <i>n.</i> | | |
| -mōnia, -mōniae <i>f.</i> | | |

B. added to the stems of adjectives:

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|----------------|
| -ia, -iae <i>f.</i> | } | abstract nouns |
| -iēs, -iēī <i>f.</i> | | |
| -tia, -tiae <i>f.</i> | | |
| -tiēs, -tiēī <i>f.</i> | | |
| -tās, -tātis <i>f.</i> | | |
| -tūs, -tūtis <i>f.</i> | | |
| -tūdō, -tūdinis <i>f.</i> | | |

C. added to the stems of *nouns*:

-ium, -ī n.	}	abstract nouns
-tium, -ī n.		
-ārium, -āriī n.		place for
-ārius, -āriī m.		person concerned with

IV. Adjectives made with suffixesA. added to the stems of *verbs*:

-āx, -ācis	}	
-idus, -a, -um		action of verb as quality or tendency
-ulus, -a, -um		
-īvus, -a, -um		
-ilis, -e	}	passive qualities
-bilis, -e		
-bundus, -a, -um	}	continuance of action of verb
-cundus, -a, -um		

B. added to the stems of *nouns*:

-ōsus, -a, -um	}	full of
-lentus, -a, -um		
-fer, -fera, -ferum	}	bearing
-ger, -gera, -gerum		
-ulus, -a, -um	}	
-ōlus, -a, -um		diminutives (small size, affection, pity, contempt)
-culus, -a, -um		
-ellus, -a, -um		
-ālis, -e	}	pertaining to
-āris, -e		
-īlis, -e		
-eus, -a, -um	}	
-īus, -a, -um		made of or belonging to
-ānus, -a, -um		
-ēnus, -a, -um		
-īnus, -a, -um		
-ēius, -a, -um		
-cus, -a, -um		
-ticus, -a, -um		
-ter, -tris, -tre	}	
-ester, -estrīs, -estre		belonging to (times and places)
-timus, -a, -um		
-nus, -a, -um		
-urnus, -a, -um		
-ternus, -a, -um		

Contents

I: Catullus

An Introduction to Quantitative Rhythm	1
Catullus	5

II: Cicero and Sallust

Cicero: <i>Oratio in Catilinam Prima</i>	41
Sallust: Selections from the <i>Bellum Catilinae</i>	60

III: A Survey of Latin Prose

Ennius	83
Cato	85
Cicero	87
Livy	92
Tacitus	96
Petronius	101
Saint Augustine	110
Einhard	115
<i>Gesta Romanorum</i>	121

IV: A Survey of Latin Poetry

Livius Andronicus	129
Naevius	133
Ennius	136
Plautus	144
Lucretius	148
Vergil	153
Horace	167
Propertius	174
Ovid	181

V: Horace

Introduction to Horace's Odes	191
An Introduction to Lyric Meters	193
Horace: Odes	200

Appendix

Selected Rhetorical Terms	235
A Few Roman Emperors	246
A Time Line for Reference	247
List of Arrowed Words	249



Part I

*Catullus:
Selected Poems*



An Introduction to Quantitative Rhythm

Accentual or qualitative rhythm is based on a sequence of stressed and unstressed syllables.

By brooks too broad for leaping
The light-foot lads are laid.
And rose-lipt girls are sleeping
In fields where roses fade.

(A.E. Housman)

The Saturnian rhythm in Latin is believed by many scholars to have been accentual, although they dispute the exact nature of its scheme.

Ennius is the first writer of epic we know of to have abandoned the assumed native qualitative rhythmic system in Latin and to have substituted for it a quantitative one modeled on that in Greek. This quantitative rhythm later became the norm for classical Latin poetry. It is based on a sequence of syllables which are *temporally* long or short, that is, a long syllable takes more time to pronounce than a short one. By analogy, one might say that a long syllable equals a half note while the short syllable equals a quarter note. On the most basic level, this rhythmic scheme admits of no stress, but in practice the first syllable of each foot does receive a *slight* accent which is called *ictus* (*ictus*, *-ūs*, *m.*, blow, beat).

To scan or construct a schematic representation of a line of verse, determine the quantitative length of each syllable in the line. In doing so, disregard division into words and consider the entire line as one cluster of sounds. The rules for syllabification and for determining the length of syllables are:

Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant after a vowel goes with the following syllable:

mu/tam ta/men

When a vowel or diphthong is followed by two or more consonants, the first consonant goes with the first syllable, the remainder with the next syllable:

for/tu/na ad/lo/que/rer

A syllable can be long in one of two ways:

1. **length by nature** If the syllable contains a long vowel or diphthong, it is said to be long by nature.
2. **length by position** If the syllable contains a vowel which is followed by two consonants, it is said to be long by position. *x* (=ks) is said to be a double consonant. *qu* (=kw) function as one sound cluster; the *u* is not a separate syllable. The combination *qu* does not make for length by position. Exception: When the two consonants following a vowel are a mute (*p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *c/k*, *g*) followed by a liquid (*l* or *r*), the poet has the license to regard the syllable as either long or short.

According to this scheme, the following verses are scanned as:

- - | - - - - | - - | - - - - | - -
Musae quae pedibus magnum pulsatis Olympum.

(Ennius 1)

- - - - | - - - - | - -
Ille mi par esse deo videtur

(Catullus 51.1)

- - | - - | - - | - - | - - | - -
Egnatius, quod candidos habet dentes

(Catullus 39.1)

Note that the symbol – (a macron) is used for long syllables, ~ (a breve) is used for short syllables, and | is used for the division into feet.

Occasionally, **elision**, or the full or partial suppression of a final syllable, occurs in the scansion and reading of poetry. Elision is found in the following instances:

1. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word which begins with a vowel or diphthong:

- - - - - - -
Vivamus, mea Lesbia, atque amemus

(Catullus 5.1)

Note that the quantity of the full syllable formed by elision is determined by the length (natural or positional) of the second of the two original syllables.

2. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word which begins with a vowel preceded by *h*:

- - - - - - -
Adeste, hendecasyllabi, quot estis

(Catullus 42.1)

3. when a word ending in a vowel followed by *m* is followed by a word which begins with a vowel or a vowel preceded by *h*:

- - - - - - -
si tecum attuleris bonam atque magnam

(Catullus 13.3)

There is some dispute as to whether elision meant the total omission in pronunciation of the first of the two syllables or a more rapid combination of the two sounds in order to fit into the reduced temporal allotment. Readers may choose which of these interpretations to follow.

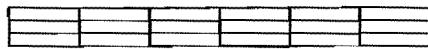
Caesura. A caesura is an internal pause in a line of verse. It occurs whenever a word ends within a foot.

Diaeresis. A diaeresis is also a pause within a line, but it occurs at the end of, not within, a metrical foot. When the end of a word and the end of a foot coincide, the consequent pause is called diaeresis.

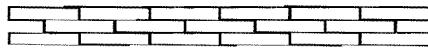
Distinction between Caesura and Diaeresis. Since the diaeresis occurs when a word and a foot end at the same time, it is a more disjunctive break or pause than the caesura, where the word spans the pause between the feet. As a consequence, the diaeresis is not found so frequently as the caesura. A line constructed with several caesurae runs a lesser risk of falling apart into totally separate units than one with several diaereses, since the overlapping and lack of coincidence of pauses at the ends of words and at the ends of feet make for a more unified, cohesive structure.

The difference between diaeresis and caesura as elements of verse building may be seen by comparing the two diagrams below. The first, which represents structure by diaeresis, is in danger of falling apart into sections; the second, because of the overlapping structure, is far more cohesive and secure.

Structure by diaeresis:



Structure by caesura:



The Dactylic Hexameter. Epic poetry is written in dactylic hexameters, which means that a verse (line) is hypothetically composed of six (Greek *hex*) feet or metra (Greek *metron*, “unit”) of dactyls (---). In practice, the sixth foot is always composed of only two syllables (either -- or -), and a spondee (--) may be substituted for any of the dactyls except in the fifth foot, which must (almost) always be a dactyl. A schematic representation of a line of dactylic hexameter looks like this:

--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | - x

Caesura in the Dactylic Hexameter. Every time a word ends within a foot, a caesura occurs. When a caesura appears after a short syllable, it is called feminine or weak; when it appears after a long syllable, it is called masculine or strong. Thus, every line of verse will have as many caesurae and/or diaereses as it has words. However, each well-constructed hexameter line has a *principal* caesura, which is always masculine. It occurs most frequently after the first long syllable in the third foot. If a word does not end in that position, then the principal caesura occurs after the first long syllable in the fourth foot, and this is usually balanced by another masculine caesura after the first long syllable of the second foot. These required pauses, either the third foot caesura or the second-fourth foot caesura, prevent the line from breaking into two or more equal parts and thus create aesthetic balance. The following examples illustrate (|| indicates the principal caesura):

- ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - || ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - -
pellitur e medio sapientia, vi geritur res

(Ennius 263)

- ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - || - | - - | - ~ ~ | - -
O miseras hominum mentes, o pectora caeca!

(Lucretius II.14)

- ~ ~ | - || - ~ | - || ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - -
Hoc, moneo, vitate malum: sua quemque moretur

(Propertius I.1.35)

Occasionally, the required breaks or pauses do not occur in a line of dactylic hexameters. In such cases, the poet is seeking some special effect or is working out a peculiar metrical problem.

Further metrical observations appear in *An Introduction to Lyric Meters* on pages 193-199, preceding the selections from Horace.

Catullus

Gaius Valerius Catullus (84–54 B.C.) was born at Verona, but as a young man he came to live in Rome, where he became associated with several other young poets. These *poētae novī* were very much influenced by the Greek lyric poets such as Sappho, Alcaeus, and Archilochus as well as by the Hellenistic poet Callimachus. Reacting against long epic and didactic models in earlier Latin poetry, the *neotericis*¹ chose to write shorter, personal lyrics, of which the 116 poems of Catullus are the best surviving examples.

Interspersed through the collection are a number of love poems to and about a woman the poet names Lesbia, often thought to be Clodia, wife of Metellus Celer and sister of Publius Clodius Pulcher, a political enemy of Cicero. Catullus addresses other poems to male friends and fellow poets on a variety of topics, political, personal, and artistic. The poems of Catullus appear at first to be intense and direct expressions of feeling or immediate experience. Closer examination, however, reveals an elaborate underlying structure and polish. Above all, Catullan poetry strives for learned wit, elegance, and simplicity. Catullus' preoccupation with refinement, both in manners and in his art, is reflected in the favored adjectives *venustus* ("charming") and *urbānus* ("sophisticated").

Before Catullus, the Latin language lacked a separate poetic diction, particularly for erotic and humorous expression. Catullus greatly expanded and enlivened Latin's vocabulary with new compounds, obscenities, clever coinages, an almost precious use of diminutives and comparatives, and the infusion of new meanings into old prose words. Later Latin poets, including Propertius, Ovid, Vergil, and Horace, acknowledge their debt to and admiration of pioneering Catullus.

1. Cicero described Catullus and his fellow poets with the Greek word *νεώτεροι*, "the new school."

A Note on the Meters in the Selections from Catullus

The poems of Catullus exhibit a great diversity of rhythmic schemes. For convenience in reading the poems that follow, the schemes are presented here. (For fuller treatment, see *An Introduction to Lyric Meters*, pages 193-199.) In these schemes, an "x" indicates that the syllable may be short (-) or long (-).

Poems 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 12, 13, 14, 15, 32, 41, 42, 43, 45, 46, 49, 53:

Phalaean hendecasyllable = x x - - - - - - - - x

Cui dono lepidum novum libellum
arida modo pumice expolitum? (1.1-2)

Poems 11, 51:

Sapphic strophe = - - - | x - - - - - - x
 - - - | x - - - - - - x
 - - - | x - - - - - - x
 - - - - x

Furi et Aureli, comites Catulli,
sive in extremos penetrabit Indos,
litus ut longe resonante Eoa
tunditur unda (11.1-4)

Poems 8, 31, 37, 39:

Choliambic or "limping iambs" = x - - - x - - - - - x

Miser Catulle, desinas ineptire,
et quod vides perisse perditum ducas. (8.1-2)

Poems 69, 70, 72, 73, 75, 76, 83, 84, 85, 92, 101:

Elegiac couplet = - √√ | - √√ | - √√ | - √√ | - √√ | - x
 - √√ | - √√ | - || - √√ | - √√ | x

Noli admirari quare tibi femina nulla,
Rufe, velit tenerum supposuisse femur (69.1-2)

Catullus

I

Cui dōnō lepidum novum libellum
 āridā modo pūmice expolītum?
 Cornēlī, tibi; namque tū solēbās
 meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās
 iam tum, cum¹ ausus es ūnus Ītalōrum² 5
 omne aevum tribus explicāre cartīs
 doctīs, Iuppiter, et labōriōsīs.
 Quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī
 quālecumque; quod, <ō> patrōna virgō,
 plūs ūnō maneat³ perenne saeclō. 10

- aevum**, -i, n., period of time, age, generation
aliquis, **aliquid** (indef. pron.), someone, something
āridus, -a, -um, dry
audeō, **audēre**, **ausus sum**, dare
c(h)arta, -ae, f., leaf (of papyrus); book
Cornēlius, -i, m., Cornelius Nepos, addressee of the poem, a writer of history and biography
doctus, -a, -um, learned
explicō (1), unfold, reveal, explain
expoliō, **expolire**, **expolivi**, **expolitus**, smooth, polish, finish
Itali, -ōrum, m. pl., Italians
labōriōsus, -a, -um, full of labor, elaborate
lepidus, -a, -um, pleasant, charming, elegant
libellus, -i, m., little book, manuscript
maneō, **manēre**, **mānsi**, **mānsus**, remain

- modo** (adv.), just now
namque (conj.), for in fact
nūgæ, -ārum, f. pl., trifles, nonsense
patrōna, -ae, f., protectress, patroness
perennis, -e, everlasting
pūmex, **pūmicis**, f., pumice-stone
putō (1), think
quāliscumque, **quālecumque** (indef. adj.), of whatever sort
quārē (adv.), wherefore
quisquis, **quidquid** (*quicquid*) (indef. pron.), whoever, whatever
saec(u)lum, -i, n., age, generation
soleō, **solēre**, **solitus sum**, be accustomed
trēs, **tria** (numerical adj.), three
tum (adv.), then, at that time
virgō, **virginis**, f., maiden, virgin

1. **cum**, *here*, conj. + indic., when
 2. The first *I-* of *Itali* often scans *long* in poetry.

3. **maneat**, a subjunctive used independently to express a wish. Translate: "May ... remain."

Catullus

III

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,
 et quantum est hominum venustiōrum:
 passer mortuus est meae puellae,
 passer, dēliciae meae puellae,
 quem plūs illa oculis suīs amābat. 5
 Nam mellitūs erat suamque nōrat¹
 ipsam tam bene quam puella mātrem,
 nec sēsē ā gremiō illius² movēbat,
 sed circumsiliēns modo hūc modo illūc
 ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat; 10
 qui nunc it per iter tenebricōsum
 illud, unde negant redīre quemquam.
 At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae
 Orcī, quae omnia bella dēvorātis:
 tam bellum mihi passerem abstulistis. 15
 Ō factum male!³ Ō miselle passer!
 Tuā nunc operā meae puellae
 flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.

at (conj.), but

bellus, -a, -um, pretty, charming, lovely

circumsiliō, **circumsilire**, —, —, leap about, hop

Cupīdō, **Cupīdinis**, m., Cupid, god of love, son of Venus

dēliciae, -ārum, f. pl., delight, darling, sweetheart, beloved

dēvorō (1), swallow up, gulp down, devour greedily

domina, -ae, f., mistress

fleō, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētus**, weep (for)

gremium, -i, n., bosom, lap

lūgeō, **lūgēre**, **lūxi**, **lūctus**, mourn, grieve, lament

mellitus, -a, -um, honeyed, honey-sweet

misellus, -a, -um, wretched, pitiable

ocellus, -i, m., (little) eye

opera, -ae, f., work, service, attention; (abl.) fault

Orcus, -i, m., Orcus, the underworld; the god of the infernal regions, Orcus or Pluto

passer, **passeris**, m., sparrow

pīpiō (1), chirp, cheep, peep

sēsē = **sē**

rubeō, **rubēre**, —, —, be red

tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., darkness; infernal regions

tenebricōsus, -a, -um, full of shadows, gloomy

turgidulus, -a, -um, swollen

ūsque (adv.), continuously, without interruption

Venus, **Veneris**, f., Venus, goddess of love

venustus, -a, -um, charming, pleasing

1. **nōrat** = **nōverat**

2. The second *-i-* of *illius* often scans short in poetry.

3. Here, elision does not occur between the final *-e* of *male* and *Ō*. When conditions for elision are present but no elision occurs, this is called *hiatus*.

Catullus

V

Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum
omnēs ūnius¹ aestimēmus assis!²
Sōlēs occidere et redīre possunt:
nōbīs, cum semel occidit brevis lūx, 5
nox est perpetua ūna dormienda.
Dā³ mī bāsia mīlle, deinde centum,
dein mīlle altera, dein secunda centum,
deinde ūsque altera mīlle, deinde centum.
Dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerimus,⁴ 10
conturbābimus illa, nē sciāmus,
aut nē quis malus invidēre possit,
cum tantum sciat esse bāsiōrum.

aestimō (1), estimate, reckon
as, assis, -ium, m., as (a small denomination of
 Roman money)
bāsium, -i, n., kiss
brevis, -e, brief, short
centum (indecl. numerical adj.), one hundred
conturbō (1), confuse, disorder, disturb
cum (conj. + indic.), when; (conj. + subj.), since,
 although
deinde or dein (adv.), then, next, afterwards
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītus, sleep
invideō [*in* + *videō*], look askance at; begrudge,
 envy

1. The *-i* of *ūnius* often scans *short* in poetry.
2. **assis**, genitive of indefinite value, at the
 value of an as

Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, Catullus' poetic name for
 his beloved
mī = *mīhi*
mīlle (indecl. numerical adj.), a thousand
 mīlia, mīlium, n. pl. subst., thousands
occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsus, fall, set; die
perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, continuous
redeō, redīre, redīl, redditus, go back, return
secundus, -a, -um, following, second
semel (adv.), once, a single time; once and for
 all
sevērus, -a, -um, stern, severe
ūsque (adv.), continuously, without interruption

3. The *-a* of the 2nd sing. present imperative
 active of *dō* is long.
4. The *-i* of *fēcerimus* here scans *long*.

Catullus

VII

Quaeris quot mihi bāsiātiōnēs
 tuae, Lesbia, sint satis superque.
 Quam magnus numerus Libyssae harēnae
 läserpīciferis iacet Cyrēnīs
 örāclum Iovis inter aestuōsī
 et Battī veteris sacrum sepulcrum, 5
 aut quam sīdera multa, cum tacet nox,
 furtīvōs hominum vident amōrēs,
 tam tē bāsia multa bāsiāre
 vēsānō satis et super Catullō est, 10
 quae nec pernumerāre cūriōsī
 possint nec mala fascināre lingua.

aestuōsus, -a, -um, full of heat, burning, very hot
bāsiātiō, -ōnis, f., a Catullan coinage for kiss
bāsiō (1), kiss
bāsium, -ī, n., kiss
Battus, -ī, m., Battus, legendary founder of Cyrene
Catullus, -ī, m., Catullus
cum (conj.+indic.), when
cūriōsus, -a, -um, full of concern; inquisitive, curious
Cyrēnae, -ārum, f., Cyrene, a city in northeastern Africa, the birthplace of Callimachus, the Alexandrian poet
fascinō (1), bewitch, enchant
furtīvus, -a, -um, stolen; secret, clandestine
harēna, -ae, f., sand

iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacui**, —, lie
läserpīcifer, -fera, -ferum, bearing or producing assafoetida or silphium, a medicinal plant
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, Catullus' poetic name for his beloved
Libyssus, -a, -um, Libyan
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language
numerus, -ī, m., number
örāc(u)lum, -ī, n., oracle, place where an oracle is given
pernumerō (1), count out, reckon up
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum**, sacred
sepulchrum, -ī, n., tomb
super (adv.), over, above; more than enough
vēsānus, -a, -um, mad, insane
vetus, **veteris**, old

Catullus

VIII

Miser Catulle, dēsinās ineptīre,
 et quod vidēs perīsse perditum dūcās.
 Fulsēre quondam candidī tibi¹ sōlēs,
 cum ventitābās quō puella dūcēbat
 amāta nōbīs quantum amābitur nūlla. 5
 Ibi illa multa cum iocōsa fiēbant,
 quae tū volēbās nec puella nōlēbat,
 fulsēre vērē candidī tibi¹ sōlēs.
 Nunc iam illa nōn vult: tū quoque inpotē<ns nōlī>,
 nec quae fugit sectāre, nec miser vīve, 10
 sed obstinātā mente perfer, obdūrā.
 Valē, puella. Iam Catullus obdūrat,
 nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam.
 At tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
 Scelestā, vae tē, quae tibi¹ manet vīta? 15
 Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
 Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
 Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
 At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

at (conj.), but	
bāsiō (1), kiss	
bellus , -a, -um, pretty, charming, lovely	
candidus , -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant	
Catullus , -i, m., Catullus	
dēstinō (1), determine, resolve	
doleō, dolēre, dolui , —, feel pain, suffer; grieve, be sorry	
ineptiō, ineptīre , —, —, be silly, play the fool	
inpotēns, -entis , powerless	
invītus , -a, -um, unwilling	
iocōsus , -a, -um, full of jest, merry, humorous	
labellum , -i, n., (little) lip	
mordeō, mordēre, momordī, morsus , bite, nibble	

obdūrō (1), be hardened, hold out, persist, endure
obstinātus , -a, -um, firmly set, determined, resolute
perferō [per+ferō], endure
quondam (adv.), at one time, once, formerly
quoque (adv.), also, too
requirō, requirere, requīsīvī, requīsītus , seek again
scelestus , -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accursed
sector (1), keep following, chase
vae (interj.), alas! woe!
valeō, valēre, valui, valitus , be strong, be able; fare well
ventitō (1), come often, keep coming

1. The final -i of *tibi* often scans long in poetry.

Catullus

IX

Vērānī, omnibus ē meīs amīcīs
 antistāns mihi mīlibus trecentīs
 vēnistīne domum ad tuōs Penātēs
 frātrēsque ūnanimōs anumque mātrem?
 Vēnistī. Ō mihi nūntī beāti! 5
 Vīsam tē incolumem audiamque Hibērum
 nārrantem loca, facta, nātiōnēs,
 ut¹ mōs est tuus, applicānsque collum
 iūcundum ōs oculōsque suāviābor.
 Ō quantum est hominum beātiōrum, 10
 quid mē laetius est beātiusve?

5

10

antistō , antistāre , antistetī , antistātus , stand before
anus , -ūs, <i>f.</i> , old woman
applicō (1), join, fasten; bring near
beātus , -a, -um, happy, blessed, fortunate
collum , -i, <i>n.</i> , neck
Hibērēs , -um, <i>m. pl.</i> , Iberians, Spaniards
incolumis , -e, uninjured, safe, sound
iūcundus , -a, -um, pleasing, delightful, agreeable
mīlia , mīlium , <i>n. pl. subst.</i> , thousands
mōs , mōris , <i>m.</i> , custom
nārrō (1), tell, relate
nātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , race, nation, tribe

nūntius , -i, <i>m.</i> , messenger; message
ōs , ōris , <i>n.</i> , mouth, face
Penātēs , -ium, <i>m. pl.</i> , the Penates, household gods; hearth, home
quantus , -a, -um, how great, how much
suāvior (1), kiss (<i>This is a deponent verb: it has passive forms but active meanings.</i>)
trecenti , -ae, -a (numerical adj.), three hundred
ūnanimus , -a, -um, of one mind or heart; harmonious
-ve (enclitic conj.), or
Vērānius , -i, <i>m.</i> , Veranius, friend of Catullus
visō , visere , visi , visus , go to see, visit; view, behold

1. **ut**, here, conj. + indic., as

Catullus

XI

Fūrī et Aurēlī, comitēs Catullī,
 sīve in extrēmōs penetrābit Indōs,
 lītus ut¹ longē resonante Eōā
 tundit̄ur undā,

sīve in Hyrcānōs Arabasve mollēs,
 seu Sacās sagittiferōsve Parthōs,
 sīve quae septemgeminus colōrat
 aequora Nīlus,

5

sīve trāns altās gradiētur Alpēs
 Caesaris vīsēns monimenta magnī,
 Gallicum Rhēnum, horribile aequor, ulti-
 mōsque Britannōs,

10

- aequor, -oris, n.**, level surface; sea
Alpēs, -ium, f., the Alps
Arabs, Arabis, m., Arab (**Arabas**=acc. pl.)
Aurēlius, -ī, m., Aurelius, friend of Catullus
Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl., inhabitants of Britain, Britons
Caesar, Caesaris, m., Caesar, a *cognōmen* in the *gēns* Julia; Julius Caesar
Catullus, -ī, m., Catullus
colōrō (1), color, tinge, dye
Eōus, -a, -um, of dawn, of morning; eastern
extrēmus, -a, -um, remotest, farthest, utmost
Fūrius, -ī, m., Furius, friend of Catullus
Gallicus, -a, -um, of Gaul, Gallic
horribilis, -e, horrible, terrible
Hyrcānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Hyrcanians on the Caspian Sea
Indī, -ōrum, m. pl., inhabitants of India, Indians
mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft
monimentum (=monumentum), -ī, n., monument, memorial
Nīlus, -ī, m., the Nile river

- Parthī, -ōrum, m. pl.**, Parthians, a Scythian people east of the Caspian Sea and south of the *Hyrcānī*
penetrō (1), penetrate; betake oneself, go
resonō, resonāre, resonāvī, —, resound, re-echo
Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine river
Sacae, -ārum, f. pl., the Sacae, a nomadic people of central Asia
sagittifer, -fera, -ferum, arrow-bearing
septemgeminus, -a, -um, sevenfold; seven-mouthed
sīve or seu (conj.), or if
 sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu or -ve), whether . . . or (if)
tundō, tundere, tutudī, tūnsus or tūsus, pound, beat
ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, most remote, last; end, edge (of)
-ve (enclitic conj.), or
vīsō, vīsere, vīsi, vīsus, go to see, visit; view, behold

1. **ut**, here, adv., where

omnia haec, quaecumque feret voluntās
 caelitum, temptāre simul parātī,
 pauca nūntiāte meae puellae
 nōn bona dicta.

15

Cum suīs vīvat valeatque moechīs
 quōs simul complexa tenet trecentōs,
 nūllum amāns vērē, sed identidem omnium
 ilia rumpēns;

20

nec meum respectet, ut ante, amōrem,
 quī illius¹ culpā cecidit velut prātī
 ultimī flōs, praetereunte postquam
 tāctus arātrō est.

arātrum, -ī, n., plough
caelitēs, -um, m. pl., sky-dwellers, gods
complector, complectī, complexus sum,
 clasp, embrace
flōs, flōris, m., flower, blossom
identidem (adv.), again and again, repeatedly
ilia, -ōrum, n. pl., the abdomen below the ribs;
 groin, balls
moechus, -ī, m., fornicator, adulterer
praetereō [*praeter* (prep.+acc.) beyond+*eō*], go
 by, pass by
prātūm, -ī, n., meadow
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
 (indef. rel. pron. or adj.), whoever, whatever

respectō [*re + spectō*], look back at, regard;
 expect, wait for
rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, break, burst
simul (adv.), at the same time
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, touch
trecentī, -ae, -a (numerical adj.), three hundred
ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, most remote, last;
 end, edge (of)
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitus, be strong, be able;
 fare well
velut (conj.), even as, just as
voluntās, -tātis, f., wish, will, inclination

1. The second *-i-* of *illitus* often scans short in poetry.

Catullus

XII

Marrūcīne Asinī, manū sinistrā
 nōn bellē ūteris: in iocō atque vīnō
 tollis linteā neglegentiōrum.
 Hoc salsum esse putās? Fugit tē, inepte:
 quamvīs sordida rēs et invenusta est.

5

Nōn crēdis mihi? Crēde Polliōnī
 frātri, quī tua furta vel talentō
 mūtārī velit: est enim lepōrum
 differtus puer ac facētiārum.

Quārē aut hendecasyllabōs trecentōs
 exspectā, aut mihi linteum remitte,
 quod mē nōn movet aestimatiōne,
 vērum est mnēmosynum meī sodālis.

10

Nam sūdāria Saetaba ex Hibērīs
 mīsērunt mihi mūnerī Fabullus
 et Vērānius: haec amem necesse est
 ut Vērāniolum meum et Fabullum.

15

aestimatiō, -ōnis, f., value; monetary worth
 aut (conj.), or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or
bellē (adv.), prettily, neatly, becomingly
differtus, -a, -um, stuffed, filled full (+gen.)
exspectō (1), wait for, expect
Fabullus, -i, m., Fabullus, friend of Catullus
facētiae, -ārum, f. pl., wit, drollery, humor
furtum, -i, n., theft, robbery
hendecasyllabi, -ōrum, m. pl., verses of eleven
 syllables, hendecasyllables
Hibērī, -ōrum, m. pl., Iberians, Spaniards
ineptus, -a, -um, silly, inept, foolish
invenustus, -a, -um, ungraceful, inelegant
iocus, -i, m., jest, joke
lepor, -ōris, m., pleasantness, charm
linteum, -i, n., linen cloth, napkin
Marrūcinus Asinius, Marrūcīnī Asinī, m.,
 Marrucinus Asinius, friend of Catullus
mnēmosynum, -i, n., remembrance, token
mūnus, mūneris, n., service, tribute; gift
necessē est (ut) amem, it is necessary that I
 love

Polliō, -ōnis, m., Pollio, brother of Marrucinus
 Asinius
putō (1), think
quamvīs (adv.), as you will, ever so
remittō [re + mittō], send back
Saetabus, -a, -um, of a town in Spain, Spanish
salsus, -a, -um, salty; witty
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, on the left, left
sodālis, sodālis, -ium, m., comrade, com-
 panion
sordidus, -a, -um, dirty; mean, vulgar
sūdārium, -i, n., cloth, napkin
talentum, -i, n., talent (a sum of money)
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, raise, lift up;
 carry away, remove
trecentī, -ae, -a (numerical adj.), three hundred
vel (adv.), even
Vērāniōlus, -i, m., (dear) little Veranius
Vērānius, -i, m., Veranius, friend of Catullus
vērum (conj.), but
vīnum, -i, n., wine

Catullus

XIII

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
 paucīs, sī tibi dī farent, diēbus,
 sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
 cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
 et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs. 5
 Haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
 cēnābis bene; nam tuī Catullī
 plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.
 Sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs
 seu quid¹ suāvius ēlegantiusve est; 10
 nam unguentum dabo,² quod meae puellae
 dōnārunt³ Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,
 quod tū cum⁴ olfaciēs, deōs rogābis
 tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

accipiō, accipere, accēpli, acceptus, receive
afferō, afferre, attuli, allātus, bring toward,
 bring along
apud (prep. + acc.), at, near, among; at the
 house of
arānea, -ae, f., spider; cobweb
cachinnus, -i, m., loud laugh
candidus, -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant
Catullus, -i, m., Catullus
cēna, -ae, f., dinner
cēnō (1), dine
contrā (adv.), in turn
Cupīdō, Cupīdinis, m., Cupid, god of love, son
 of Venus
diēs, diēi, m., day
ēlegāns, -antis, select, tasteful, elegant
ēlegantius (comparative adj. neut. nom. sing.)
Fabullus, -i, m., Fabullus, friend of Catullus
faveō, favēre, fāvi, fautus, be favorable, favor
 (+ dat.)

inquam (defective verb), I say
merus, -a, -um, pure, unmixed
nam (conj.), for
nāsus, -i, m., nose
olfaciō, olfacere, olfēci, olfactus, smell
omnis, -e, every, all
pauci, -ae, -a, few
plēnus, -a, -um, full
rogō (1), ask
sacculus, -i, m., bag, wallet
sal, salis, n., salt; wit
seu (conj.), or if
suāvis, -e, sweet, pleasant
 suāvius (comparative adj. neut. nom. sing.)
tōtus, -a, -um, all, whole
unguentum, -i, n., ointment, perfume
-ve (enclitic conj.), or
Venus, Veneris, f., Venus, goddess of love
venustus, -a, -um, charming, pleasing
vīnum, -i, n., wine

1. **quid**, neut. nom. sing. of *quis*, *quid* (indef. pron.), anyone, anything

2. The final -o of *dabō* here scans short.

3. **dōnārunt** = *dōnāvērunt*

4. **cum**, conj. + indic., when

Catullus

XIV

Ni tē plūs oculis meis amārem,
 iūcundissime Calve, mūnere istō
 ūdissem tē odiō Vatīniānō;
 nam quid fēcī ego quidve sum locūtus
 cūr mē tot male perderēs poētīs? 5
 Istī dī mala multa dent clientī,
 quī tantum tibi mīsit impiōrum.
 Quod sī, ut suspicor, hoc novum ac repertum
 mūnus dat tibi Sulla litterātor,
 nōn est mī male, sed bene ac bēatē,
 quod nōn dispereunt tuī labōrēs. 10
 Dī magnī, horribilem et sacrum libellum!
 Quem tū scilicet ad tuum Catullum
 mīstī,¹ continuō ut diē perīret,
 Sāturnālibus, optimō diērum! 15
 Nōn nōn hoc tibi, false, sīc abībit.
 Nam, sī lūxerit, ad librāriōrum
 currām scrīnia, Caesiōs, Aquīnōs,
 Suffēnum, omnia colligam venēna,
 ac tē hīs suppliciīs remūnerābor. 20
 Vōs hinc intereā valēte, abīte
 illūc, unde malum pedem attulistiſ,
 saeclī incommoda, pessimī poētae!

Aquinus, -ī, m., Aquinus, a Roman poet
bēatē (adv.), happily
Caesius, -ī, m., Caesius, a Roman poet
Calvus, -ī, m., Licinius Calvus, friend of
 Catullus, lawyer and poet
cliēns, -entis, m., client
colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus, gather up
continuus, -a, -um, succeeding, next
dispereō, disperire, disperī, —, perish, be
 wasted
falsus, -a, -um, false
horribilis, -e, horrible, terrible
incommodum, -ī, n., detriment, discomfort,
 misfortune
intereā (adv.), meanwhile
iūcundus, -a, -um, pleasing, delightful, agree-
 able
labor, -ōris, m., work, exertion; trouble, effort
libellus, -ī, m., little book, manuscript
librārius, -ī, m., bookseller
lūceō, lūcere, lūxi, —, dawn, grow light
mī = mihi

mūnus, mūneris, n., service, tribute; gift
nī = nīstī
remūnerō (1), repay, pay back
reperiō, reperiē, rep(p)eri, repertus, find, dis-
 cover
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum**, sacred; accursed
saec(u)lum, -ī, n., age, generation
Sāturnālia, -ium, n. pl., festival of Saturn,
 Saturnalia
scilicet (adv.), obviously, certainly
scrīnium, -ī, n., (book-) case, stall
Suffēnus, -ī, m., Suffenus, a Roman poet
Sulla litterātor, **Sullae litterātōris**, m., Sulla
 the grammarian
supplicium, -ī, n., punishment
suspicor (1), suspect
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitus, be strong, be able;
 fare well
Vatīniānus, -a, -um, of Vatinus, a Roman
 politician
-ve (enclitic conj.), or
venēnum, -ī, n., poison

1. **mīstī** = mīsistī

Catullus

XV

Commendō tibi mē ac meōs amōrēs,
 Aurēlī. Veniam petō pudentem,
 ut, sī quicquam animō tuō cupīstī,
 quod cāustum expeterēs et integellum,
 cōservēs puerum mihi¹ pudīcē,
 nōn dīcō ā populō—nihil verēmur
 istōs, qui in plateā modo hūc modo illūc
 in rē praetereunt suā occupatī—
 vērum ā tē metuō tuōque pēne
 īfestō pueris bonis malīsque. 10
 Quem tū quā² lubet, ut lubet, movētō³
 quantum vīs, ubi erit foris parātum:
 hunc ūnum excipiō, ut putō, pudenter.
 Quod sī tē mala mēns furorque vēcors
 in tantam impulerit, sceleste, culpam,
 ut nostrum īsidiīs caput lacessās, 15
 ā tum tē miserum malīque fāti!
 Quem attractīs pedibus patente portā
 percurrent raphanīque mūgilēsque.

ā (interj.), oh! ah! alas!

attrahō, attrahere, attrāxi, attractus, draw up,
 draw together
Aurēlius, -ī, m., Aurelius, friend of Catullus
caput, capitīs, n., head; life; person
castus, -a, -um, chaste
commendō (1), entrust
cōservō [*con+servō*], save, preserve
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī or cupīfī, cupītus, want,
 desire
excipiō [*ex+capiō*], take out, except, exclude
expetō [*ex+petō*], seek out, desire
foris (adv.), outdoors, outside
furor, -ōris, m., madness
impellō [*in+pellō*], drive on
īfestus, -a, -um, hostile, harmful
integellus, -a, -um, unharmed, untouched
lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessitus, chal-
 lenge, provoke, assail, attack

lubet (=libet), **lubēre**, **lubuit or lubitum est**

(impersonal), it pleases, it is pleasing

mūgilis, mūgilis, m., sea-fish, mullet

occupō (1), seize, occupy

pateō, patēre, patuī, —, lie open

pēnis, pēnis, m., penis

platea, -ae, f., street

praetereō [*praeter* (prep.+acc.) beyond + *eō*], go
 by, pass by

pudēns, -entis, proper, decent, modest

pudīcus, -a, -um, modest, chaste, pure

qui lubet (=libet), **quae lubet**, **quod lubet**

(indef. adj.), any . . . you will, any . . . it pleases

raphanus, -ī, m., radish

scelestus, -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accursed

vēcors, vēcordis, mentally deranged, mad,

demented

vērum (conj.), but

1. The final *-i* of *mihi* often scans long in poetry.

2. **quā**, supply *utā*.

3. **movētō**, 2nd sing. future imperative active

Catullus

XXXI

Paene īsulārum, Sirmiō, īsulārumque
ocelle, quāscumque in liquentibus stagnīs
marīque vāstō fert uterque Neptūnus,
quam tē libenter quamque laetus invīsō, 5
vix mī ipse crēdēns Thūniam atque Bīthūnōs
līquisse campōs et vidēre tē in tūtō.¹
Ō quid solūtis est beātius cūrīs,
cum mēns onus repōnit, ac peregrīnō
labōre fessī vēnimus Larem ad nostrum,
dēsiderātōque acquiēscimus lectō? 10
Hoc est quod unum est prō labōribus tantīs.
Salve, ō venuste Sirmiō, atque erō gaudē
gaudente, vōsque, ō Lȳdiae lacūs undae,
rīdēte quidquid est domī cachinnōrum.

acquiēscō, acquiēscere, acquiēvi. —, come to rest, be at rest
beātus, -a, -um, happy, blessed, fortunate
Bīthūnī, -ōrum, m. pl., Bithynians
cachinnus, -ī, m., loud laugh
dēsiderō (1), long for, miss
erūs, -ī, m., master (of a house)
fessus, -a, -um, weary, exhausted, worn out
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, be glad, be pleased, rejoice
invīsō, invīsere, invīsī, —, go to see, visit; view
labor, -ōris, m., work, exertion; trouble, effort
lacūs, -īs, m., lake
Lār, Laris, m., household god; hearth, home
lectus, -ī, m., bed, couch
libenter (adv.), gladly
linquō, linquere, līqui, —, leave (behind), abandon
liqueō, liquere, —, —, be fluid, be clear
Lȳdius, -a, -um, Lydian, Etruscan
mī = mihi

Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea
ocellus, -ī, m., (little) eye; jewel, prize
onus, oneris, n., load, burden
paene (adv.), almost
peregrinus, -a, -um, strange, foreign
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef. rel. pron. or adj.), whoever, whatever
quisquis, quidquid (*quicquid*) (indef. pron.), whoever, whatever
repōnō [*re + pōnō*], put back; lay aside, put down
Sirmiō, -ōnis, f., Sirmio, a rocky promontory on the south shore of Lake Garda, twenty miles west of Verona
stagnum, -ī, n., lake, pool, pond
Thūnia (Bīthūnia), -ae, f., Bithynia, a Roman province in Asia Minor
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two); both
vāstus, -a, -um, desolate; vast, immense
venustus, -a, -um, charming, pleasing

1. **in tūtō** = in safety, safely

Catullus

XXXII

Amābō,¹ mea dulcis Ipsitilla,
 meae dēliciae, meī lepōrēs,
 iubē ad tē veniam² meridiātum.
 Et sī iusseris, illud adiuvātō,³
 nē quis līminis obseret tabellam,
 neu tibī⁴ lubeat forās abīre,
 sed domī maneās parēsque nōbīs
 novem continuās futūtiōnēs.
 Vērum sī quid agēs, statim iubētō:⁵
 nam prānsus iaceō et satur supīnus
 pertundō tunicamque palliumque.

5

10

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus, help, aid
continuus, -a, -um, continuous, without inter-
 ruption
dēliciae, -ārum, f. pl., delight, darling,
 sweetheart, beloved
forās (adv.), outdoors, outside
futūtiō, -ōnis, f., a Catullan coinage for copula-
 tion; fucking
iaceō, iacēre, iacui, —, lie
Ipsitilla, -ae, f., Ipsitilla
lepor, -ōris, m., pleasantness, charm
līmen, -minis, n., threshold; doorway, entrance
lubet (=libet), lubēre, lubuit or lubitum est
 (impersonal), it pleases, it is pleasing
meridiō (1), take a mid-day nap

neu (conj.), or that . . . not
novem (indecl. numerical adj.), nine
obserō (1), bolt, bar, fasten
pallium, -ī, n., Roman outer garment, cloak
pertundō, pertundere, pertudī, pertūsus,
 thrust through
prandeō, prandēre, prandī, prānsus (*perfect*
passive participle has active meaning),
 breakfast
satur, satura, saturum, full, sated
statim (adv.), immediately
supīnus, -a, -um, bent back, lying on one's back
tabella, -ae, f., small board; door-sill
tunica, -ae, f., Roman undergarment, tunic
vērum (conj.), but

1. **amābō**, *in entreaties*, be so good, please4. The final *-i* of *tibī* often scans *long* in poetry.2. **veniam** = *ut . . . veniam*5. **iubētō**, 2nd sing. future imperative active3. **adiuvātō**, 3rd sing. future imperative active

Catullus

XXXVII

Salāx taberna vōsque contubernālēs,
 ā pilleātis nōna frātribus pīla,
 sōlis putātis esse mentulās vōbīs,
 sōlis licēre, quidquid est puellārum,
 cōnfutuere¹ et putāre cēterōs hircōs? 5
 An,² continenter quod sedētis īnsulī
 centum an ducentī, nōn putātis ausūrum
 mē ūnā ducentōs irrumāre sessōrēs?
 Atqui putāte: namque tōtius³ vōbīs
 frontem tabernae sōpiōnibus scribam.⁴ 10
 Puella nam mī, quae meō sinū fūgit,
 amāta tantum quantum amābitur nūlla,
 prō quā mihi⁵ sunt magna bella pūgnāta,
 cōnsēdit istīc. Hanc bonī beātīque
 omnēs amātis, et quidem, quod indīgnum est, 15
 omnēs pusillī et sēmitāriī moechī;
 tū praeter omnēs ūne dē capillātīs,
 cunīculōsae Celtibēriae filī,
 Egnātī, opāca quem bonum facit barba
 et dēns Hibērā dēfricātus ūrīnā. 20

atqui (conj.), but, and yet
barba, -ae, f., beard
beātus, -a, -um, happy, blessed, fortunate
capillātus, -a, -um, hairy
Celtibēria, -ae, f., Celtiberia, a region in Spain
centum (indecl. numerical adj.), one hundred
cēteri, -ae, -a, other, the rest
cōnfutuō, **cōnfutuere**, —, —, have intercourse (with), fuck
cōnsidō, **cōnsidere**, **cōnsēdi**, **cōncessus**, sit down; settle, take up residence
continenter (adv.), in a row, continuously
contubernālis, **contubernālis**, -ium, m., tent-mate, tavern-mate
cunīculōsus, -a, -um, abounding in rabbits
dēfricō, **dēfricāre**, **dēfricui**, **dēfricātus** or
 dēfrictus, rub hard, brush
dēns, **dentis**, -ium, m., tooth
ducentī, -ae, -a (numerical adj.), two hundred
Egnātius, -i, m., Egnatius
frōns, **frontis**, -ium, m. or f., forehead, brow; front
Hibērus, -a, -um, Spanish
hircus, -i, m., goat
īnsulsus, -a, -um, unsalted, insipid, tasteless

irrumō (1), cause to commit fellatio; screw in the face
istīc (adv.), in that place, there
mentula, -ae, f., penis
mī = *mihi*
moechus, -i, m., fornicator, adulterer
namque (conj.), for in fact
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth
opācus, -a, -um, shady, dark
pīla, -ae, f., column, pillar
pilleātus, -a, -um, wearing a *pilleus*, a felt hat
praeter (prep. + acc.), except, beyond
pusillus, -a, -um, very little, petty, insignificant
quisquis, **quidquid** (**quicquid**) (indef. pron.), whoever, whatever
salāx, **salācis**, fond of leaping; lustful, lecherous
sedeō, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessus**, sit
sēmitārius, -a, -um, belonging to a back-alley sessor, -ōris, m., one who sits or dwells
sinus, -ūs, m., fold; bosom, breast; embrace
sōpiō, -ōnis, f., obscenity (?)
taberna, -ae, f., tavern
ūrina, -ae, f., urine

1. The second syllable of the line, normally long, here scans as two shorts.

2. **an**, here, or can it be that

3. The -i- of *tōtīus* often scans short in poetry.

4. **scribō**, here, write on, inscribe

5. The final -i of *mihi* often scans long in poetry.

Catullus

XXXIX

Egnātius, quod candidōs habet dentēs,
renīdet ūsque quāque. Sī ad reī ventum est
subsellium, cum ḍrātor excitat flētum,
renīdet ille. Sī ad¹ piī rogum filī²
lūgētur, orba cum flet ūnicum māter, 5
renīdet ille. Quicquid est, ubīcumque³ est,
quodcumque agit, renīdet: hunc habet morbum,
neque ēlegantem, ut arbitror, neque urbānum.
Quārē monendus es mihi,⁴ bone Egnātī.
Sī urbānus essēs aut Sabīnus aut Tiburs 10
aut pinguis Umber aut obēsus Etruscus

candidus, -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant
dēns, **dentis**, -ium, m., tooth
Egnātius, -i, m., Egnatius
ēlegāns, -antis, select, tasteful, elegant
Etruscus, -a, -um, Etruscan
excitō (1), arouse, awaken, stir up
fleō, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētus**, weep (for)
fletus, -ūs, m., weeping, tears
lūgeō, **lūgēre**, **lūxi**, **lūctus**, mourn, grieve,
 lament
morbus, -i, m., disease, sickness
obēsus, -a, -um, fat
orbis, -a, -um, bereaved, destitute, deprived
pinguis, -e, fat, greasy
quiccumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**
 (indef. rel. pron. or adj.), whoever, whatever
quisquis, **quidquid** (**quicquid**) (indef. pron.),
 whoever, whatever

renideō, **renidēre**, —, —, smile; sparkle,
 shine
reus, -i, m., defendant
rogus, -i, m., funeral pyre
Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine, of the Sabines, a
 people of Italy
subsellium, -i, n., bench, seat
Tiburs, **Tiburtis**, Tiburtine, of Tibur, a town in
 Latium
ubīcumque (adv.), wherever
Umber, **Umbra**, **Umbrum**, Umbrian, of Umbria,
 a district of Italy
ūnicus, -a, -um, only
urbānus, -a, -um, of the city; refined, cultivated
ūsque quāque (adv.), on every occasion, at all
 times

1. **ad**, here, at, near2. **filī** = *filii*3. The *-i-* of *ubīcumque* here scans long.4. The final *-i* of *mihi* often scans long in poetry.

aut Lānuvīnus āter atque dentātus
 aut Trānspadānus, ut meōs quoque attingam,
 aut quīlubet,¹ quī pūriter lavit dentēs,
 tamen renīdere ūsque quāque tē nōllem; 15
 nam rīsū ineptō rēs ineptior nūlla est.
 Nunc Celtibēr <es>: Celtibēriā in terrā,
 quod quisque minxit, hōc sibi² solet māne
 dentem atque russam dēfricāre gingīvam,
 ut quō iste vester expolītior dēns est, 20
 hōc tē amplius bibisse praedicet lōti.³

15

20

amplior, amplius, more
 āter, ātra, ātrum, black
 attingō, attingere, attigī, attāctus, touch
 (upon), mention
 bibō, bibere, bibī, —, drink
 Celtibēr, -bērī, m., a Celtiberian
 Celtibēria, -ae, f., Celtiberia, a region in Spain
 dēfricō, dēfricāre, dēfricūl, dēfricātus or
 dēfrictus, rub hard, brush
 dēns, dentis, -ium, m., tooth
 dentātus, -a, -um, toothy, having teeth
 expolītus, -a, -um, polished
 gingīva, -ae, f., gum (of the jaw)
 ineptus, -a, -um, silly, inept, foolish
 Lānuvinus, -a, -um, of Lanuvium, a town of
 Latium
 lavō, lavere or lavāre, lāvī, lautus or lōtus,
 wash, bathe

lōtium, -ī, n., urine
 māne (adv.), early in the morning
 meiō, meiere, minxi, mictus or minctus,
 urinate
 praedicō (1), proclaim, preach
 pūriter (adv.), in a pure manner
 quī lubet (=libet), quae lubet, quod lubet
 (indef. adj.), any . . . you will, any . . . it pleases
 quoque (adv.), also, too
 renideō, renidēre, —, —, smile; sparkle,
 shine
 rīsus, -īs, m., laugh, laughter
 russus, -a, -um, red
 Trānspadānus, -a, -um, (dwelling) beyond the
 Po
 ūsque quāque (adv.), on every occasion, at all
 times

1. quīlubet = quī lubet

2. The final -i of *sibi* often scans long in poetry.

3. lōti = lōtīl

Catullus

XLI

Ameāna puella dēfutūta
 tōta mīlia mē decem poposcit,
 ista turpiculō puella nāsō,
 dēcoctōris amīca Formiānī.
 Propinquī, quibus est puella cūrae,
 amīcōs medicōsque convocāte:
 nōn est sāna puella, nec rogāre
 quālis sit solet aes imāginōsum.

5

Ameāna, -ae, f., Ameana
aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; money
decem (indecl. numerical adj.), ten
dēcoctor, -ōris, m., defaulting debtor, ruined
 spendthrift, bankrupt
dēfutūtus, -a, -um, exhausted from fucking
Formiānus, -a, -um, of or from Formiae, a city
 in Campania

imāginōsus, -a, -um, full of images
medicus, -i, m., doctor
mīlia, milium, n. pl. subst., thousands
nāsus, -i, m., nose
propinquus, -a, -um, near; related, kindred;
 (subst.) relative
turpiculus, -a, -um, deformed, ugly, foul

Catullus

XLII

Adeste,¹ hendecasyllabī, quot estis
 omnēs undique, quotquot estis omnēs.
 Iocum mē putat esse moecha turpis,
 et negat mihi vestra redditūram
 pugillāria, sī patī potestis. 5
 Persequāmur eam, et reflāgitēmus.
 Quae sit, quaeritis? Illa, quam vidētis
 turpe² incēdere, mīmīcē ac molestē
 rīdentem catulī ōre Gallicānī.
 Circumsistite eam, et reflāgitāte, 10
 "moecha pūtida, redde cōdicillōs,
 redde, pūtida moecha, cōdicillōs!"
 Nōn assis facis? Ō lutum, lupānar,
 aut sī perditius potes quid esse.
 Sed nōn est tamen hoc satis putandum. 15
 Quod sī nōn aliud potest, rubōrem
 ferreō canis exprimāmus ōre.
 Conclāmāte iterum altiore vōce
 "moecha pūtida, redde cōdicillōs,
 redde, pūtida moecha, cōdicillōs!" 20
 Sed nil prōficiimus, nihil movētur.
 Mūtanda est ratiō modusque nōbīs,
 sī quid prōficere amplius potestis:
 "pudīca et proba, redde cōdicillōs."

amplius (comparative adv.), more, further
canis, canis, *m.* or *f.*, dog
catulus, -i, m., young animal, puppy
circumsistō, circumsistere, circumsteti or
circumstitti, —, surround
cōdicilli, -ōrum, m. pl., writing tablet, notebook
conclāmō [*con* + *clāmō*], shout together
exprimō [*ex* + *premō*], press or squeeze out
ferreus, -a, -um, made of iron; rigid, cruel
Gallicānus, -a, -um, of Gaul, Gallic
hendecasyllabī, -ōrum, m. pl., verses of eleven
 syllables, hendecasyllables
incēdō [*in* + *cēdō*], move, stride
iocus, -i, m., jest, joke
iterum (adv.), again
lupānar, -āris, n., brothel
lutum, -i, n., mud, filth
mīmīcē (adv.), farcically, like a mime

moecha, -ae, f., adulteress; prostitute
molestē (adv.), annoyingly
perditus, -a, -um, lost, desperate, degenerate
persequor [*per* + *sequor*], follow earnestly, pursue
probus, -a, -um, upright, virtuous, honorable
prōficiō [*prō* + *faciō*], accomplish, effect; gain
pudicus, -a, -um, modest, chaste, pure
pugillāria, -ium, n. pl., writing tablets
pūtidus, -a, -um, rotten, stinking
quotquot (indecl. adj.), however many, of whatever number
ratiō, -ōnis, f., account, reason; method, way
reddō, reddere, reddidi, redditus, give back, return; render
reflāgitō (1), demand back
rubor, -ōris, m., blush
undique (adv.), from all sides, on all sides

1. **adeste**, 2nd pl. present imperative of *adsum*2. **turpe**, here, adverb

Catullus

XLIII

Salvē, nec minimō puella nāsō
 nec bellō pede nec nigrīs ocellīs
 nec longīs digitīs nec ūre siccō
 nec sānē nimis ēlegante¹ linguā,
 dēcoctōris amīca Formiānī.
 Tēn² prōvincīa nārrat esse bellam?
 Tēcum Lesbia nostra comparātur?
 Ō saeclum īsapiēns et īfacētum!

5

bellus, -a, -um, pretty, charming, lovely
comparō (1), compare
dēcoctōr, -ōris, m., defaulting debtor, ruined
 spendthrift, bankrupt
digitus, -i, m., finger
ēlegāns, -antis, select, tasteful, elegant
Formiānus, -a, -um, of or from Formiae, a city
 in Campania
īfacētus, -a, -um, not witty, stupid, coarse
īsapiēns, -entis, foolish, tasteless
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, Catullus' poetic name for
 his beloved

lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language
nārrō (1), tell, relate
nāsus, -i, m., nose
niger, **nigra**, **nigrum**, black
nimis (adv.), excessively, too
ocellus, -i, m., (little) eye
saec(u)lum, -i, n., age, generation
salveō, **salvēre**, —, —, be well; hail
sānē (adv.), certainly, to be sure
siccus, -a, -um, dry

1. The ablative singular of third declension adjectives sometimes ends in -e rather than -i.

2. **tēn** = *tēne*

Catullus

XLV

Acmēn Septimius suōs amōrēs
tenēns in gremiō “mea” inquit “Acmē,
nī tē perditē amō atque amāre porrō
omnēs sum assiduē parātus annōs,
quantum quī pote¹ plūrimum perīre.
sōlus in Libyā Indiāque tostā
caesiō veniam obvius leōnī.”
Hoc ut dīxit, Amor sinistrā ut ante
dextrā sternuit approbātiōnem.
At Acmē leviter caput reflectēns
et dulcis puerī ēbriōs ocellōs
illō purpureō ūre suāviāta,
“sic,” inquit “mea vīta Septimille,

5

10

Acmē, **Acmēs**, *f.*, Acmē (**Acmēn**=acc. sing.)
approbātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, approval
assiduē (adv.), continually, constantly
at (conj.), but
caesius, **-a**, **-um** (of eyes only), cutting, sharp;
cat-eyed, gray-eyed
caput, **capitis**, *n.*, head
ēbrius, **-a**, **-um**, drunk, intoxicated
gremium, **-i**, *n.*, bosom, lap
India, **-ae**, *f.*, India, the Far East
inquit (defective verb), he, she, it says
leō, **-ōnis**, *m.* or *f.*, lion
leviter (adv.), lightly
Libya, **-ae**, *f.*, Libya, a province in north Africa
nī = nisi

obvius, **-a**, **-um**, in the way, so as to meet, face
to face with (+dat.)
ocellus, **-i**, *m.*, (little) eye
perditē (adv.), ruinously, recklessly, desperately
porrō (adv.), forward, hereafter, in the future
purpureus, **-a**, **-um**, dark red, crimson, purple
reflectō, **reflectere**, **reflexi**, **reflexus**, bend
back
Septimius, **-i**, *m.*, Septimius
sinister, **sinistra**, **sinistrum**, left
sternuō, **sternuere**, —, —, sneeze
suāvior (1), kiss
torreō, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostus**, parch, roast,
scorch, burn

1. **quī pote** = *is quī potest*

huic ūnī dominō ūsque serviāmus,
 ut multō mihi maior ācriorque
 ignis mollibus ardet in medullīs." 15
 Hoc ut dīxit, Amor sinistrā ut ante
 dextrā sternuit approbātiōnem.
 Nunc ab auspiciō bonō profecti
 mutuīs animīs amant amantur. 20
 Ūnam Septimius misellus Acmēn
 māvult quam Syriās Britanniāsque:
 ūnō in Septimiō fidēlis Acmē
 facit dēliciās libīdinēsque.
 Quis ūllōs hominēs beātiōrēs
 vīdit, quis Venerem auspicātiōrem? 25

Acmē, Acmēs, f., Acmē (**Acmēn**=acc. sing.)
approbātiō, -ōnis, f., approval
auspicātus, -a, -um, favorable, auspicious
auspicium, -i, n., divine sign
beātus, -a, -um, happy, blessed, fortunate
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain
dēliciae, -ārum, f. pl., delight
fidēlis, -e, faithful
libīdō, libīdinis, f., desire, pleasure, passion,
 lust

medulla, -ae, f., bone marrow
mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft
mūtuus, -a, -um, borrowed, lent; reciprocal,
 mutual, shared
Septimius, -i, m., Septimius
serviō, servire, servīvī or serviī, servītus,
 serve, be a slave to (+dat.)
Syria, -ae, f., Syria
ūsque (adv.), continuously
Venus, Veneris, f., Venus, goddess of love

Catullus

XLVI

Iam vēr ēgelidōs refert tepōrēs,
 iam caelī furor aequinoctiālis
 iūcundīs Zephyrī silēscit aurīs.
 Linquantur Phrygiī, Catulle, campī
 Nicaeaeque ager ūber aestuōsae:
 ad clārās Asiae volēmus urbēs. 5
 Iam mēns praetrepidāns avet vagārī,
 iam laetī studiō pedēs vigēscunt.
 Ō dulcēs comitum valēte coetūs,
 longē quōs simul ā domō profectōs
 dīversae variē viae reportant. 10

aequinoctiālis , -e, equinoctial, of the equinox	silēscō , silēscere , —, —, become still, fall silent, grow calm
aestuōsus , -a, -um, full of heat, burning, very hot	simul (adv.), at the same time
aveō , avēre , —, —, be eager	tepor , -ōris, m., warmth, lukewarmness
coetus , -ūs, m., gathering	über , ūberis, rich, fertile
dīversus , -a, -um, different	vagor (1), wander
ēgelidus , -a, -um, tepid, lukewarm	valeō , valēre , valui , valitus , be strong, be able; fare well
furor , -ōris, m., madness	variē (adv.), variously, differently
iūcundus , -a, -um, pleasing, delightful, agreeable	vēr , vēris, n., spring
linquō , linquere , līqui , —, leave (behind), abandon	vigēscō , vigēscere , vigui , —, come alive, be vigorous
Nicaea , -ae, f., Nicaea, a city in Bithynia	volō (1), fly
Phrygius , -a, -um, Phrygian, Trojan	Zephyrus , -ī, m., Zephyr, the West Wind
praetrepidō (1), tremble in anticipation	

XLIX

Disertissime Rōmulī nepōtūm,
 quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,
 quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,
 grātiās tibi maximās Catullus
 agit pessimus omnium poēta,
 tantō pessimus omnium poēta,
 quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus. 5

Catullus , -ī, m., Catullus	patrōnus , -ī, m., patron, defender
disertus , -a, -um, well-spoken, eloquent	Rōmulus , -ī, m., Romulus, legendary founder and first king of Rome
grātia , -ae, f., favor; gratitude, thanks	Marcus Tullius , Marci Tullii , m., Marcus Tullius, <i>praenomen</i> and <i>nomen</i> of Cicero
grātiās agere , thank, give thanks to (+dat.)	
nepōs , nepōtis , m., grandson, descendant	

Catullus

LI

Ille mī pār esse deō vidētur,
 ille, sī fās est, superāre dīvōs,
 quī sedēns adversus identidem tē
 spectat et audit

dulce¹ rīdentem, miserō quod omnīs
 ēripit sēnsūs mihi; nam simul tē,
 Lesbia, aspexī, nihil est super mī

5

lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artūs
 flamma dēmānat, sonitū suōpte
 tintinant aurēs, geminā teguntur
 lūmina² nocte.

10

Ōtium, Catulle, tibi³ molestum est;
 ōtiō exsultās nimiumque gestīs;
 ōtium et rēgēs prius et beātās
 perdidit urbēs.

15

adversus, -a, -um, opposite, facing; opposed
artūs, **artuum**, *m. pl.*, joints; limbs
aspiciō, **aspicere**, **aspexī**, **aspectus**, look
 toward, look at
auris, **auris**, -iūm, *f.*, ear
beātus, -a, -um, happy, blessed, fortunate
Catullus, -i, *m.*, Catullus
dēmānō, **dēmānare**, —, —, flow down, trickle
 down
dīvus, -a, -um, divine, godlike
ēripiō, **ēripere**, **ēripui**, **ēreptus**, tear away,
 snatch away
exsultō (1), revel, rejoice, exult; indulge
fās (indecl.), *n.*, (what is divinely) right
geminus, -a, -um, twin, double
gestiō, **gestire**, **gestivī or gestiī**, —, pursue
 eagerly
identidem (adv.), again and again, repeatedly

Lesbia, -ae, *f.*, Lesbia, Catullus' poetic name for
 his beloved
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language
mī = *mihi*
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, displeasing
nimium (adv.), too, too much, excessively
ōtium, -i, *n.*, leisure, idleness
pār, **paris**, equal
rīdeō, **ridēre**, **rīsi**, **rīsus**, laugh (at)
sedeō, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessus**, sit
simul (conj.), as soon as
sonitus, -iūs, *m.*, sound, noise
suōpte = intensive form of *suō*
super (adv.), over, remaining
tenuis, -e, slender, fine
tintinō, **tintināre**, —, —, ring
torpeō, **torpēre**, —, —, be stiff, be numb

1. **dulce**, here, adverb3. The final -i of *tibi* often scans long in poetry.2. **lūmina**, here and frequently in poetry, eyes

Catullus

LIII

Risi nescio¹ quem modo ē corōnā²
 quī, cum mīrificē Vatīniāna
 meus crīmina Calvus explicāsset,³
 admirāns ait haec manūsque tollēns,
 "dī magnī, salapūtium disertum."

5

Calvus, -ī, m., Licinius Calvus, friend of Catullus, lawyer and poet
crīmen, -minis, n., charge; crime
disertus, -a, -um, well-spoken, eloquent
explicō (1), unfold, reveal, explain
mīrificē (adv.), wonderfully

nescio quis, **nescio quid** (indef. pron.), someone, something
salapūtium, -ī, n., manikin, tiny little man
tollō, tollere, sustulī, **sublātus**, raise, lift up
Vatīniānus, -a, -um, of Vatinus, a Roman politician

1. The final -o of *nesciō* here scans short, as it usually does in the indefinite pronoun *nescio quis*, *nescio quid*.

2. **corōnā**, *here*, circle of spectators or listeners

3. **explicāsset** = *explicāvisset*

LXIX

Nōlī admirārī quārē tibi fēmina nūlla,
 Rūfe, velit tenerum supposuisse femur,
 nōn sī illam rārae labefactēs mūnere vestis
 aut perlūcidulī dēliciīs lapidis.
 Laedit tē quaedam mala fābula, quā tibi fertur
 valle sub ālārum trux habitāre caper.
 Hunc metuunt omnēs, neque mīrum: nam mala valdē est
 bestia, nec quīcum¹ bella puella cubet.
 Quārē aut crūdēlem nāsōrum interface pestem,
 aut admirārī dēsine cūr fugiunt.

5

10

āla, -ae, f., wing; *here*, armpit
bellus, -a, -um, pretty, charming, lovely
bestia, -ae, f., beast, animal
caper, caprī, m., billy goat
cubō, cubāre, cubū, **cubitus**, lie down, sleep
dēliciae, -ārum, f. pl., delight, darling, sweetheart, beloved
fābula, -ae, f., story; talk, conversation
femur, **femoris**, n., thigh
habitō (1), live
labefactō (1), cause to totter, weaken
laedō, laedere, **laesi**, laesus, hurt, wound, injure
lapis, **lapidis**, f., stone
mīrus, -a, -um, remarkable, surprising, strange

mūnus, **mūneris**, n., service, tribute; gift
nāsus, -ī, m., nose
perlūcidus, -a, -um, transparent, translucent
pestis, **pestis**, -ium, f., plague, destruction, ruin
rārus, -a, -um, loose-knit
Rūfus, -ī, m., Rufus
suppōnō [sub + pōnō], put under, set under, join
tener, **tenera**, **tenerum**, tender, soft, delicate, young
trux, **trucis**, wild, rough, fierce, ferocious
valdē (adv.), exceedingly, very
vallis, **vallis**, -ium, f., valley
vestis, **vestis**, -ium, f., clothing, garment

1. **quīcum** = *quācum*

Catullus

LXX

Nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mālle
 quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.
 Dīcit; sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī
 in ventō et rapidā scribēre oportet aquā.

mulier, mulieris, f., woman
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus, marry (+dat.)
 (used of a woman marrying)
oportet, oportēre, oportuit (impersonal verb),
 it is necessary, it is proper

rapidus, -a, -um, tearing away, consuming;
 rushing, rapid

LXXII

Dīcēbās quondam sōlum tē nōsse¹ Catullum,
 Lesbia, nec prae mē velle tenēre Iovem.
 Dilēxi tum tē nōn tantum² ut vulgus amīcam,
 sed pater ut gnātōs³ dīlit et generōs.
 Nunc tē cognōvī: quārē etsī impēnsius ūror,
 multō mī tamen es vīlior et levior. 5
 Qui⁴ potis est, inquis? Quod amantem iniūria tālis
 cōgit amāre magis, sed bene velle minus.

Catullus, -i, m., Catullus
cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus, drive together;
 compel
dilīgō, dilīgere, dilēxi, dilēctus, single out;
 value, esteem, love
etsī (conj.), even if, although
gener, generi, m., son-in-law
impēnsus, -a, -um, heavy; costly
iniūria, -ae, f., injury, injustice
inquis (defective verb), you say
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, Catullus' poetic name for
 his beloved

levis, -e, light, not weighed down; slight, trivial
 mī = mihi
potis (indecl. adj.), possible
prae (prep. + abl.), before, in front of
quondam (adv.), at one time, once, formerly
tālis, -e, such, of such a sort
tum (adv.), then, at that time
ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus, burn, scorch, inflame,
 consume; sting
vīlis, -e, worthless, cheap
vulgus, -i, n., the multitude, the public; crowd,
 mob

1. **nōsse** = nōvisse

3. **gnātus** = nātus

2. **tantum**, here, adv., so much

4. **qui**, here, adv., how

Catullus

LXXIII

Dēsine dē quōquam quicquam bene velle merērī
aut aliquem fierī posse putāre pium.
Omnia sunt ingrāta, nihil fēcisse benignē
<prōdest,> immō etiam taedet obestque magis;
ut mihi, quem nēmō gravius nec acerbius urget 5
quam modo quī mē ūnum atque ūnicum amīcum habuit.

benignē (adv.), kindly, generously
benignē facere, do a kindness
immō etiam (adv.), nay, even; no, rather
ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful; thankless; displeasing, unpleasant

mereor, merērī, meritus sum, earn, gain, merit
obsum [ob + sum], be a hindrance, be a nuisance; work against
ūnicus, -a, -um, only
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, press; weigh down

LXXV

Hūc est mēns dēducta tuā mea, Lesbia, culpā
atque ita sē officiō perdidit ipsa suō
ut iam nec bene velle queat tibi, sī optima fiās,
nec dēsistere amāre, omnia sī faciās.

dēdūcō [dē + dūcō], lead down; bring down
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, Catullus' poetic name for his beloved

officiū, -i, n., service, duty, function
queō, quīre, quīvī or quīī, —, be able

Catullus

LXXVI

Sīqua¹ recordantī benefacta priōra voluptās
 est hominī, cum sē cōgitat esse pium,
 nec sānctam violāsse fidem, nec foedere in ūllō
 dīvum² ad fallendōs nūmine abūsum hominēs,
 multa parāta manent in longā aetāte, Catulle, 5
 ex hōc ingrātō gaudia amōre tibi.
 Nam quaecumque hominēs bene cuiquam aut dīcere possunt
 aut facere, haec ā tē dictaque factaque sunt;
 omnia quae ingrātae periērunt crēdita³ mentī.
 Quārē cūr tū tē iam amplius excrucīēs? 10
 Quīn tū animō offīrmās atque istinc tēque redūcis,
 et dīs invītīs dēsinis esse miser?
 Difficile est longum subitō dēpōnere amōrem.
 Difficile est, vērum hoc quā⁴ lubet efficiās.

abūtor [ab + ūtor], abuse (+abl.)
amplius (comparative adv.), more, further
benefactum, -ī, n., good deed
Catullus, -ī, m., Catullus
dīvus, -a, -um, divine, godlike
excruciō (1), torture
fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus, deceive
ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful; thankless; dis-
 pleasing, unpleasant
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling
istinc (adv.), from there, thence
offīrmō (1), hold fast, persist, persevere

prior, prius, earlier, previous, former
qui lubet (=libet), **quae lubet**, **quod lubet**
 (indef. adj.), any . . . you will, any . . . it pleases
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
 (indef. rel. pron. or adj.), whoever, whatever
quīn (adv.), in fact, indeed; *in questions*, why
 . . . not?
recordor (1), think over, remember, recall
sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, venerable
subitō (adv.), suddenly
vērum (conj.), but
voluptās, -tātis, f., pleasure, enjoyment

1. **sīqua** = *sī qua*2. **dīvum** = *dīvōrum*3. **crēdō**, *here*, entrust4. **quā**, supply *vitā*

Una salūs haec est, hoc est tibi pervincendum, 15
 hoc faciās, sīve id nōn pote sīve pote.
 Ō dī, sī vestrum est miserērī, aut sī quibus umquam
 extrēmam iam ipsā in morte tulistis opem,¹
 mē miserum aspicite et, sī vītam pūriter ēgī, 20
 ēripite hanc pestem perniciemque mihi,
 quae, mihi subrēpēns īmōs ut torpor in artūs
 expulit ex omni pectore laetitiās.
 Nōn iam illud quaerō, contrā mē ut dīligat illa,
 aut, quod nōn potis est, esse pudīca velit:
 ipse valēre optō et taetrum hunc dēpōnere morbum. 25
 Ō dī, reddite mī hoc prō pietāte meā.

artūs, artuum, m. pl., joints; limbs
aspiciō, aspicere, aspexi, aspectus, look
 toward, look at
diligō, diligere, dilēxi, dilēctus, single out;
 value, esteem, love
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus, tear away,
 snatch away
extrēmus, -a, -um, remotest, farthest, utmost
īmus, -a, -um, lowest, deepest; bottom of
laetitia, -ae, f., happiness, gladness, joy
mī = mihi
morbus, -i, m., disease, sickness
perniciēs, -ei, f., destruction, ruin, disaster
pervincō [per + vincō], conquer completely;
 bring about
pestis, pestis, -ium, f., plague, destruction,
 ruin

pietās, -tātis, f., dutifulness, devotion, loyalty
pote or potis (indecl. adj.), possible
pudīcus, -a, -um, modest, chaste, pure
pūriter (adv.), in a pure manner
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus, give back,
 return; render
sīve (conj.), or if
sīve . . . sīve, whether . . . or (if)
subrēpō, subrēpere, subrēpsi, subreptus,
 creep under, steal into
taeter, taetra, taetrum, foul
torpor, -ōris, m., numbness, sluggishness
valeō, valēre, valui, valitus, be strong, be able;
 fare well

1. **ops**, here, aid

Catullus

LXXXIII

Lesbia mī praesente virō mala plūrima dīcit:
 haec illī fatuō maxima laetitia est.
 Mūle, nihil sentīs? Sī nostrī oblīta tacēret,
 sāna esset; nunc quod gannit et obloquitur,
 nōn sōlum meminit, sed, quae multō ācrior est rēs, 5
 īrāta est. Hoc est, ūritur et loquitur.

fatuus, -a, -um, foolish, silly, insipid
ganniō, **gannire**, —, —, yelp; grumble
laetitia, -ae, f., happiness, gladness, joy
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, Catullus' poetic name for
 his beloved
mī = *mihi*

mūlus, -ī, m., mule, ass
obloquor [*ob + loquor*], speak against, con-
 tradict; rail at, reproach
praesēns, -entis, present
ūrō, **ūrere**, **ussī**, **ustus**, burn, scorch, inflame,
 consume; sting

LXXXIV

"Chommoda" dīcēbat, sī quandō "commoda" vellet
 dīcere, et "īnsidiās" Arrius "hīnsidiās."
 Et tum mīrificē spērābat sē esse locūtum,
 cum quantum poterat dīixerat "hīnsidiās."
 Crēdō, sīc māter, sīc liber avunculus eius, 5
 sīc māternus avus dīixerat atque avia.
 Hōc missō in Syriam requiērant omnibus aurēs:
 audībant¹ eadem haec lēniter et leviter,
 nec sibi postilla metuēbant tālia verba,
 cum subitō affertur nūntius horribilis: 10
 Iōniōs flūctūs, postquam illūc Arrius īset,
 iam nōn Iōniōs esse sed Hīoniōs.

Arrius, -ī, m., Arrius
auris, **auris**, -ium, f., ear
avia, -ae, f., grandmother
avunculus, -ī, m., (maternal) uncle
avus, -ī, m., grandfather
commodum, -ī, n., convenience, advantage
flūctus, -ūs, m., wave, billow
horribilis, -e, horrible, terrible
Iōnius, -a, -um, Ionian
lēniter (adv.), gently, kindly

leviter (adv.), lightly
māternus, -a, -um, maternal
mīrificē (adv.), wonderfully
postilla (adv.), afterwards
quandō = *aliquandō* (adv.), at some time or
 other, at any time, ever
requiēscō, **requiēscere**, **requiēvi**, **requiētus**,
 rest, find relief
subitō (adv.), suddenly
Syria, -ae, f., Syria

1. **audibant** = *audiēbant*

Catullus

LXXXV

Ōdī et amō. Quārē id faciam fortasse requīris?
 Nescio,¹ sed fierī sentiō et excrucior.

excruciō (1), torture
fīō, fierī, factus sum, be done, be made; happen, become

fortasse (adv.), perhaps
requīrō, requirere, requīsīvī, requisītus, seek again, ask, inquire

1. The final -o of *nesciō* here scans short.

XCII

Lesbia mī dīcit semper male nec tacet umquam
 dē mē: Lesbia mē dispeream nisī amat.
 Quō signō? Quia sunt totidem mea: dēprecor illam
 assiduē, vērum dispeream nisī amō.

assiduē (adv.), continually, constantly
dēprecor (1), ward off by prayer; deprecate, abuse
dispereō, disperire, disperīi, —, perish
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, Catullus' poetic name for his beloved

mī = *mihi*
totidem (indecl. numerical adj.), just as many, just the same
vērum (conj.), but

Catullus

CI

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora vectus
 adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad īferiās,
 ut tē postrēmō dōnārem mūnere mortis
 et mūtam nēquīquam adloquerer cinerem.

Quandoquidem fortūna mihi¹ tētē abstulit ipsum,

5

heu miser indīgnē frāter adēmpte mihi,
 nunc tamen intereā haec, prīscō quae mōre parentum
 trādita sunt trīstī mūnere ad īferiās,
 accipe frāternō multum mānantia flētū
 atque in perpetuum, frāter, avē atque valē.

10

adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptus, take away
adloquor, adloqui, adlocūtus sum, speak to,
 address
adveniō [*ad+veniō*], arrive at
aequor, -oris, n., level surface; sea
aveō, avēre, —, —, hail
cinis, cineris, m. or f., ashes; funeral ashes
flētus, -ūs, m., weeping, tears
fortūna, -ae, f., fortune, chance
frāternus, -a, -um, of a brother, brotherly
heu (interj. of grief or pain), ah!, oh!, alas!
indīgnus, -a, -um, unworthy
īferiae, -ārum, f. pl., sacrifices in honor of the
 dead, obsequies, funeral rites
intereā (adv.), meanwhile
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive adj.), -self, very

mānō (1), trickle, drip; stream, flow
mūnus, mūneris, n., service, tribute; gift
mūtus, -a, -um, silent
nēquīquam (adv.), in vain
parēns, -entis, m. or f., parent
perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, continuous
 in perpetuum, for all time, forever
postrēmō (adv.), finally, at last
postrēmus, -a, -um, last
prīscus, -a, -um, of former times, old, ancient
quandoquidem (conj.), since, in as much as
tētē = tē
trīstis, -e, sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitus, be strong, be able;
 fare well
vehō, vehere, vēxi, vectus, carry, convey

1. The final *-i* of *mihi* often scans long in poetry.

Part II

Cicero:

Oratio in Catilinam Prima

Sallust:

Selections from the Bellum Catilinae

Cicero: The First Oration Against Catiline

Marcus Tullius Cicero was consul in Rome in 63 B.C. During his term of office, a conspiracy was organized by Lucius Sergius Catiline, a man who had at an earlier time been charged with misgovernment of his province, who at another time was said to have plotted along with others to kill the current consuls (the so-called first Catilinarian conspiracy), and who was defeated twice in his own bid for the consulship (once by Cicero). In his last attempt for this office, he had appealed to a wide audience of malcontents, and when he was defeated, he organized the conspiracy (the so-called second) which, to this day, is known by his name. He went to the northern part of Italy to the people who thought that they were not getting their fair share in the government. We don't know what Catiline promised them, but he did arrange that on a certain day his followers would kill all of the Roman magistrates including the consuls and that the new regime would take over the state.

Cicero, one of the consuls, was informed of this plot; he took steps to foil the uprising and revealed them to the senate when Catiline himself was present. The senate met in the temple of Jupiter Stator, a building especially secure and near the home of Cicero. Since he could not reveal the source of his information, had no direct proof of Catiline's treachery, and feared that he would not have the support of the senators, Cicero had to play upon the emotions of his audience so that they would take the action which he wanted. Catiline responded to Cicero's speech and the consul delivered a second oration against Catiline to the senate. Catiline fled from Rome and Cicero composed two more orations against him (one delivered before the people in the forum and the last to the senate). The orations, as we have them, are not the speeches which Cicero actually delivered; they are the reworked versions, written after the fact, and published three years later. After Catiline fled from Rome, Cicero sent an army against his forces in the north. Catiline himself was killed in battle. The ringleaders of the conspiracy in Rome had already been arrested and put to death without a trial, an offense for which, several years later, Cicero was sent into exile.

In the speech that follows, Cicero uses many rhetorical figures in an attempt to involve his audience, to indict by implication, to appeal to Roman virtues, to arouse emotions, and to convince his audience that the conspirator must leave the city; rhetorical questions, tricolonnic structure, prosopopoeia, paronomasia, asyndeton all abound. (For a selected list of rhetorical figures, see the Appendix.)

Cicero, *Orātiō in¹ Catilīnam Prīma*

1. Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam² furor iste tuus³ nōs ēlūdet? Quem ad finem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? Nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palāti,⁴ nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populi, nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnitissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ūra vultūsque mōvērunt? Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? Cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs? Quid proximā,⁵ quid superiōre⁶ nocte ēgeris, ubi fueris, quōs convocāveris, quid cōnsili cēperis,⁷ quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris?

2. O tempora! O mōrēs! Senātūs haec intellegit, cōsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Immō vērō etiam in senātūm venit, fit pūblici cōnsili particeps, notat et dēsignat oculis ad⁸ caedem ūnum quemque nostrum. Nōs autem, fortēs virī, satis facere reī pūblicae vidēmur sī istiūs furōrem ac tēla vītēmus. Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, dūcī iussū cōsulīs iam prīdem oportēbat; in tē cōferrī⁹ pestem quam tū in nōs māchināris.

abūtor [ab + ūtor], abuse (+abl.)	→pateō, patēre, patuī, —, lie open, be evident
→caedēs, caedis, -iūm, f., slaughter	→pestis, pestis, -iūm, f., plague, destruction, ruin
→Catilīna, -ae, m., Catiline	→praesidium, -i, n., guard, garrison
concurrus, -iūs, m., gathering	→prīdem (adv.), for a long time
→coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy	→iam prīdem, for a long time already, long since
cōnstringō, cōnstringere, cōnstrinxī, cōn-	→quam (adv.), how
strictus, restrain	→senātūs, -iūs, m., senate
dēsignō (1), point out	→sēsē = sē
effrēnātūs, -a, -um, unbridled, unrestrained	→tandem (adv.), in questions and commands, pray; I ask you
ēlūdō, ēlūdere, ēlūsi, ēlūsus, mock	→tēlūm, -i, n., weapon
→furō, -ōris, m., madness	→ūsque (adv.), continuously; all the way (to)
ignōrō (1), not know, be unaware (of)	quō ūsque, up to what point, how far
immō vērō (conj.), but no, on the contrary; but,	vigilia, -ae, f., night watch, sentinel
more precisely	→vītō (1), avoid
māchinor (1), plot	→vultus, -iūs, m., face, looks, expression
nocturnus, -a, -um, at night, nocturnal	
notō (1), mark, observe	
Palātiūm, -i, n., the Palatine Hill, one of the	
seven hills of Rome	
particeps, participis, m., participant, sharer (+gen.)	

-
- 1. *in* (+acc.), here and frequently, against
 - 2. *etiam*, in indignant questions, really
 - 3. *tuus* emphasizes *iste*.
 - 4. *Palāti* = *Palāttī*.
 - Second declension nouns ending in *-ius* or *-iūm* often contract *-i-* at the end of the stem with *-i* of the genitive singular ending: *-iī* → *-i*.
 - 5. *proximus*, *-a*, *-um*, here, last
 - 6. *superior*, *superius*, here and frequently, previous, preceding; earlier
 - 7. *capiō*, here, adopt, form
 - 8. *ad*, here and frequently, for (the purpose of)
 - 9. *cōferrī* depends upon *oportēbat*; *cōferō*, here, direct, confer.

3. An vērō¹ vir amplissimus, P. Scipiō,² pontifex maximus, Ti. Gracchum² mediocriter labefactantem statum reī pūblicae prīvātus interfecit, Catilīnam, orbem terrae caede atque incendiis vāstāre cupientem, nōs cōsulēs perferēmus? Nam illa nimis antiqua praetereō, quod C. Servilius Ahāla³ Sp. Maelium³ novis rēbus⁴ studentem manū suā occidit. Fuit, fuit ista⁵ quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs ut virī fortēs ācriōribus suppliciis cīvem perniciōsum quam acerbissimum hostem coērcērent. Habēmus senātūs cōsultum in tē, Catilīna, vehemēns et grave; nōn dēest reī pūblicae cōsilium, neque auctōritās huius ordinis; nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē, cōsulēs dēsumus.

4. Dēcrēvit quondam senātūs ut L. Opīmīus⁶ cōsul vidēret⁷ nē quid rēs pūblica dētrimentī caperet. Nox nūlla intercessit; interfēctus est propter quāsdam sēditiōnum suspicōnēs C. Gracchus,⁶ clārissimō patre, avō, maiōribus; occīsus est cum liberīs⁸ M. Fulvius⁶ cōsulāris. Simili senātūs cōsultō C. Mariō et L. Valeriō cōsulibus est permīssa rēs pūblica; num ūnum

- amplus**, -a, -um, large; great, distinguished
- apertē** (adv.), openly
- avus**, -i, m., grandfather
- coērceō**, **coērcēre**, **coērcui**, **coērcitus**, repress
- cōsulāris**, **cōsulāris**, -iūm, m., ex-consul
- cōsultum**, -i, n., decree
- cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupiūl or cupiī**, **cupitūs**, want, desire
- dēcernō**, **dēcernere**, **dēcrēvi**, **dēcrētus**, decree, decide, vote
- dētrimentum**, -i, n., harm
- M. Fulvius**, -i, m., Marcus Fulvius
- C. Gracchus**, -i, m., Gaius Gracchus
- Ti. Gracchus**, -i, m., Tiberius Gracchus
- incendium**, -i, n., fire
- labefactō** (1), cause to totter, weaken
- Sp. Maelius**, -i, m., Spurius Maelius
- C. Marius**, -i, m., Gaius Marius
- mediocriter** (adv.), somewhat
- nīmis** (adv.), excessively, too

- occīdō**, **occīdere**, **occīdī**, **occīsus**, kill, cut down
- L. Opīmīus**, -i, m., Lucius Opimius
- ordō**, -inis, m., order, rank, (social) class, body
- permittō** [per + mittō], entrust
- perniciōsus**, -a, -um, destructive, dangerous
- pontifex**, **pontificis**, m., priest; pontifex
- pontifex maximus**, chief priest
- prīvātus**, -a, -um, private
- quondam** (adv.), at one time, once, formerly
- P. Scipiō**, -ōnis, m., Publius Scipio
- sēditiō**, -ōnis, f., insurrection, sedition, revolt
- C. Servilius Ahāla**, -ae, m., Gaius Servilius Ahala
- status**, -ūs, m., condition, state
- supplicium**, -i, n., punishment
- suspicō**, -ōnis, f., suspicion
- L. Valerius**, -i, m., Lucius Valerius
- vāstō** (1), lay waste, ravage, destroy
- vehemēns**, -entis, strong

1. **an vērō** (conj.), *here*, but can it really be that
2. Publius Scipio joined other senators in murdering Tiberius Gracchus, a tribune of noble family who had incurred the anger of the Senate by failing to secure their approval for his popular reforms.
3. In 440 B.C., according to Roman legend, Gaius Servilius Ahala, at the behest of the patricians, murdered Spurius Maelius, a wealthy plebeian who was supplying the people with corn during a famine. The patricians feared that Maelius was attempting to assume royal power.

4. **rēs novae**, revolution
5. **iste**, *here*, that well-known
6. In 121 B.C., Lucius Opimius, the consul, was given absolute power by the Senate to suppress the revolutionary reforms of Gaius Gracchus, the younger brother of Tiberius. Thousands were killed, including Gatus and his associate Marcus Fulvius.
7. **videō**, *here*, see to it
8. **liberī**, -um or -ōrum, m. pl., children

diem posteā L. Saturnīnum¹ tribūnum plēbis et C. Servīlium praetōrem mors ac reī pūblicae poena remorāta est?

At vērō nōs vīcēsimūm iam diem patimur² hebēscere aciem hōrum auctōritātis. Habēmus enim huiuscē³ modī senātūs cōsultum, vērum inclūsum in tabulīs tamquam in vāgīnā reconditum, quō ex senātūs cōsultō cōfestim tē interfectum esse, Catilīna, convenit. Vīvis, et vīvis nōn ad dēpōnendam, sed ad cōfirmandam audāciam. Cupiō, patrēs cōnscrip̄tū, mē esse clēmentem, cupiō in tantīs reī pūblicae perīculīs mē nōn dissolūtum vidēri, sed iam mē ipse inertiae nēquitiaeque condemnō.

5. Castra sunt in Italiā contrā populum Rōmānum in Etrūriae faucibus collocāta; crēscit in diēs singulōs hostium numerus, eōrum autem castrōrum imperātōrem ducemque hostium intrā moenia atque adeō⁴ in senātū vidētis, intestīnam aliquam cotidiē perniciem reī pūblicae mōlientem. Sī tē iam, Catilīna, comprehendī, sī interfici iusserō, crēdō, erit verendum mihi nē nōn hoc potius omnēs bonī⁵ sērius ā mē quam quisquam crūdēlius factum esse dīcat.

aciēs, -ēi, f., sharp edge	inertia, -ae, f., inactivity, laziness
→at (conj.), but	intestīnus, -a, -um, internal
at vērō, introducing a change of subject, but now	→intrā (prep.+acc.), within
→castra, -ōrum, n. pl., military camp	mōlīor, mōlīrī, mōlītus sum, plan
clēmēns, -ēntis, merciful	nēquitia, -ae, f., worthlessness, negligence
collocō (1), situate	→perniciēs, -ēi, f., destruction, ruin, disaster
comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī,	posteā (adv.), afterwards, after this
comprehēnsus, arrest	potius (comparative adv.), rather
condemnō (1), condemn	→praetor, -ōris, m., praetor, a public official; judge
cōfestim (adv.), immediately	recondō, recondere, recondidī, reconditus, hide
cōfirmō (1), strengthen, confirm	remoror (1), keep (a person) waiting, detain
cōnscribō [con+scribō], enroll	L. Sāturnīnus, -i, m., Lucius Saturninus
→patrēs cōnscrip̄tū, senators	sērō (adv.), late, too late
convenit, convenire, convēnit (impersonal), it is fitting	C. Servīlius, -i, m., Gaius Servilius
→crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, grow, increase	singulī, -ae, -a, one at a time
dissolūtus, -a, -um, lax, remiss, negligent	in diēs singulōs, day by day
Etrūria, -ae, f., Etruria, a district north of Rome	tabula, -ae, f., board; writing tablet; here, official document
faucēs, faucium, f. pl., throat, jaws; pass, entrance	tribūnus, -i, m., tribune, a public official
hebēscō, hebēscere, —, —, become dull	vāgīna, -ae, f., sheath
includō, includere, inclusī, inclusus, confine, enclose	→vērum (conj.), but
	vīcēsimūs, -a, -um, twentieth

1. In 100 B.C., when Gaius Marius and Lucius Valerius were consuls, Lucius Saturninus and Gaius Servilius Glauca, with the silent support of Marius, attempted to secure the consulship for Glauca by murdering his rival. When the plot failed, Marius turned on his co-conspirators, and they were killed.
 →2. The present tense, when accompanied by

some expression of time duration, is often used to denote action that has been going on for some time and is still going on. Translate: "we have been allowing."

3. huiuscē, note the emphatic enclitic -ce.

4. adeō, here, even

5. With omnēs bonī, understand dīcant factum esse.

Vērum ego hoc, quod iam p̄īdem factum esse oportuit, certā dē causā¹ nōndum addūcor ut faciam. Tum dēnique interficiēre, cum iam nēmō tam improbus, tam perditus, tam tuī similis invenīrī poterit, quī id nōn iūre factum esse fateātur.

6. Quamdiū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vīvēs, et vīvēs ita ut vīvis, multīs meīs et firmīs praesidiīs obsessus, nē commovēre tē contrā rem pūblicam possīs. Multōrum tē etiam oculī et aurēs nōn sentientem, sīcut adhūc fēcērunt, speculābuntur atque custōdient.

Etenim quid est, Catilīna, quod iam amplius exspectēs, sī neque nox tenebrīs obscūrāre coetūs nefāriōs, nec p̄īvāta domus parietibus continēre vōcēs coniūratiōnis tuae potest, sī illūstrantur, sī ērumpunt omnia? Mūtā iam istam mentem; mihi crēde, oblīvīscere caedis atque incendiōrum. Tenēris undique; lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia omnia; quae iam mēcum licet recognōscās.

7. Meministīne mē ante diem XII Kalendās² Novembrīs dīcere³ in senātū fore in armīs certō diē, quī diēs futūrus esset ante diem VI Kalendās Novembrīs, C. Manlium,⁴ audāciae satellitem atque administrum tuae? Num mē fefellit, Catilīna, nōn modo rēs tanta, tam atrōx tamque incrēdibilis, vērum—id quod

- **addūcō** [*ad + dūcō*], influence
- **adhūc** (adv.), up to this time
- administer**, -*strī*, *m.*, assistant; tool
- amplius** (comparative adv.), more, further
- atrōx**, *atrōcis*, cruel, harsh, horrible
- auris**, *auris*, -*ium*, *f.*, ear
- coetus**, -*ūs*, *m.*, gathering
- **commoveō** [*com + moveō*], stir up, set in motion
- **contineō** [*con + teneō*], hold in, enclose; hold back
- custōdiō**, **custōdire**, **custōdīvī or custōdiī**, **custōdītus**, guard, protect
- ērumpō**, **ērumpere**, **ērūpī**, **ēruptus**, break out, burst forth
- **etenim** (conj.), and indeed, in fact
- fallō**, **fallere**, **fefelli**, **falsus**, deceive, escape the notice of
- firmus**, -*a*, -*um*, reliable
- **illūstrō** (1), make clear, illuminate
- **improbos**, -*a*, -*um*, wicked, immoral; shameless, wanton

1. **certā dē causā**, for a definite reason
2. The Kalends were the first day of the Roman month. Dates were given as so many days before the Kalends, Nones, or Ides. The Nones were the seventh day of March, May, July, and October, the fifth of other months. The Ides were the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of other months.

- **Kalendae**, -*ārum*, *f. pl.*, Kalends, first of the month
- C. Manlius**, -*ī*, *m.*, Gaius Manlius
- **nefārius**, -*a*, -*um*, unspeakable, wicked
- **nōndum** (adv.), not yet
- **November**, -*bris*, -*bre*, of November
- obscūrō (1), make obscure, cover up
- obsidēō**, **obsidēre**, **obsēdī**, **obsessus**, besiege; surround
- pariēs**, **parietis**, *m.*, wall (of a house)
- **perditus**, -*a*, -*um*, lost, desperate, degenerate
- quamdiū (conj.), as long as
- recognōscō [*re + cognōscō*], review, go over
- satelles**, **satellitis**, *m. or f.*, accomplice
- sīcut (conj.), just as
- speculator** (1), examine, observe, watch closely
- tenebrae**, -*ārum*, *f. pl.*, shadows, darkness
- **undique** (adv.), from all sides, on all sides

3. The present infinitive in indirect statement here vividly represents an action in progress that is actually already completed. Translate: "Do you remember that I said . . . ?"
4. Gaius Manlius, a former military commander under the dictator Sulla, was Catiline's second-in-command and in charge of the troops in Etruria.

multō magis est admīrandum—diēs? Dīxi ego īdem¹ in senātū caedem tē optimātium contulisse² in ante diem v Kalendās Novembrīs, tum cum multī prīcipēs cīvitātis Rōmā nōn tam³ sui⁴ cōservandī quam tuōrum cōnsiliōrum reprimendōrum causā profūgērunt. Num īfītiārī potes tē illō ipsō diē, meīs praesidiīs, meā dīlīgentiā circumclūsum, commovēre tē contrā rem pūblicam nōn potuisse, cum tū discessū cēterōrum nostrā tamen qui⁵ remānsissēmus caede tē contentum esse dīcēbās?

8. Quid? Cum tē Praeneste Kalendīs ipsīs Novembribus occupātūrum nocturnō impetū esse cōfīderēs, sēnsistīne illam colōniām meō iussū meīs praesidiīs, custōdiīs, vigiliīs esse mūnītam? Nihil agīs, nihil mōlīris, nihil cōgītās, quod nōn ego nōn modo audiam, sed etiā videam plānēque sentiam.

Recognōsce tandem mēcum noctem illam superiōrem; iam intellegēs multō mē vigilāre ācrius ad salūtem quam tē ad perniciēm reī pūblicae. Dīcō tē priōre nocte vēnisse inter falcāriōs—nōn agam⁶ obscūrē—in M. Laecae domum; convēnisse eōdem complūrīs eiusdem āmentiae scelerisque sociōs. Num negāre audēs? Quid tacēs? Convincam sī negās. Videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam qui tēcum ūnā fuērunt.

9. O dī immortālēs! Ubinam gentium sumus? In quā urbe vīvīmus? Quā rem pūblicam habēmus? Hīc, hīc sunt in nostrō numerō, patrēs cōscriptī, in

āmentia, -ae, f. , madness	nocturnus, -a, -um , at night, nocturnal
→ cēterī, -ae, -a , other, the rest	obscurē (adv.), secretly, in riddles
circumclūdō, circumclūdere, circumclūsī, circumclūsus, hem in	occupō (1), seize, occupy
colōnia, -ae, f. , colony	optimātēs, -ium, m. pl. , the optimates, the aristocrats
→ complūrēs, -a or -ia , several, very many	plānē (adv.), clearly
cōfidō, cōfidere, cōfīsus sum , trust, be confident	Praeneste, Praenestis, n. or f. , Praeneste, a town in Italy, southeast of Rome
cōservō [con+servō], save, preserve	→ prīncipēs, prīncipis , first, foremost, chief; (subst.), leading man
contentus, -a, -um , satisfied	prior, prius , earlier, previous, former
convincō [con+vincō], prove wrong	profugiō [prō+fugīō], flee, run away, escape
custōdia, -ae, f. , sentinel	recognōscō [re+cognōscō], review, go over
discessus, -ūs, m. , departure	reprimō [re+premō], check, suppress
→ eōdem (adv.), to the same place	ubinam (adv.), where
falcārius, -i, m. , scythe-maker	ubinam gentium , where in the world
impetus, -ūs, m. , attack	vigilia, -ae, f. , night watch, sentinel
infītior (1), deny	→ vigilō (1), remain awake; watch for
M. Laeca, -ae, m. , Marcus Laeca	
mōlīor, mōlīrī, mōlītus sum , plan	

1. **īdem**, here, used with the emphatic pronoun *ego*, also, the same

2. **cōferō**, here, assign (an action or event to a particular date)

3. **tam**, here, so much

4. **sui**, here, treated as singular (as indicated

by the ending of *cōservandī*) even though it has a plural referent

5. The antecedent of *qui* is the "us" implied in *nostrā*.

6. **agō**, here, argue

hōc orbis terrae sāctissimō gravissimōque cōnsiliō,¹ quī dē nostrō² omnium interitū, quī dē huius urbis atque adeō³ dē orbis terrārum exitiō cōgitent. Hōs ego videō cōnsul et dē rē pūblicā sententiam rogō et, quōs ferrō trucidārī oportēbat, eōs nōndum vōce vulnerō! Fuistī igitur apud Laecam illā nocte, Catilīna; distribuistī partīs Italiae; statuistī quō quemque proficisci placēret; dēlēgistī quōs Rōmae relinquerēs, quōs tēcum ēdūcerēs; discrīpsistī urbis partīs ad incendia; cōfirmāstī tē ipsum iam esse exitūrum; dīxistī paulum tibi esse etiam nunc morae, quod ego vīverem. Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē istā cūrā liberārent et sēsē illā ipsā nocte paulō ante lūcem mē in meō lectulō interfectūrōs esse pollicērentur.

10. Haec ego omnia vixdum etiam coetū vestrō dīmissō comperi; domum meam maiōribus praesidiīs mūnīvī atque firmāvī; exclūsi eōs quōs tū ad mē salūtātum māne mīserās, cum illī ipsī vēnissent quōs ego iam multīs ac summīs virīs ad mē id temporis ventūrōs esse praedīxeram.

Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge quō coepistī; ēgredere aliquandō ex urbe; patent portae: proficīscere. Nimiū diū tē imperātōrem tua illa Manliāna castra dēsiderant. Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnīs tuōs; sī minus,⁴ quam plūrimōs; pūrgā urbem. Magnō mē metū līberābis, modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit. Nōbīscum versārī iam diūtius nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam.

- aliquandō** (adv.), at some time or other; *in commands and purposes*, now at last
- coetus**, -ūs, *m.*, gathering
- comperiō**, **comperire**, **comperi**, **compertus**, find out, learn
- cōfirmō** (1), strengthen, confirm; declare
- dēsiderō** (1), long for, miss
- dīmittō** [*dis + mittō*], dismiss, break up
- discrībō** [*dis + scribō*], mark out
- distribuō**, **distribuere**, **distribuī**, **distribūtus**, distribute
- eques**, **equitis**, *m.*, knight, horseman
- exclūdō**, **exclūdere**, **exclūsi**, **exclūsus**, exclude, shut out
- exitium**, **ī**, *n.*, destruction, ruin
- firmō** (1), strengthen
- interitus**, -ūs, *m.*, destruction, death
- M. Laeca, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Laeca

- māne** (adv.), early in the morning
- Manliānus**, -a, -um, of Manlius
- mūrus**, **ī**, *m.*, (city) wall
- nimiū** (adv.), too, too much, excessively
- pergō**, **pergere**, **perrēxi**, **perrēctus**, continue, proceed
- praedīcō** [*prae + dīcō*], foretell, predict
- pūrgō** (1), clean, cleanse
- reperiō**, **reperire**, **rep(p)erī**, **repertus**, find, discover
- salūtō** (1), greet
- sānctus**, -a, -um, sacred, venerable
- sinō**, **sinere**, **sīvī or sīī**, **situs**, allow
- statuō**, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtus**, establish; decide
- trucidō** (1), slaughter, execute
- vēsor** (1), stay
- vixdum** (adv.), scarcely (yet)

1. **cōsiliū**, *here*, council

2. The possessive adjective is sometimes used instead of a subjective genitive, and *here omnīum* modifies in sense the "us" of *nostrō*.

3. **adeō**, *here*, even

4. **sī minus**, *here*, if not

11. Magna dīs immortālibus habenda est atque huic ipsī Iovī Statōrī, antiquissimō custōdī huius urbis, grātia, quod hanc tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque īfestam reī pūblicae pestem totiēns iam effūgimus. Nōn est saepius in¹ ūnō homine summa salūs perīclitanda reī pūblicae. Quamdiū mihi cōsuli dēsignātō, Catilīna, īsidiātus es, nōn pūblicō mē praeſidiō, sed prīvātā dīligențiā dēfendī. Cum proximīs² comitiīs cōsulāribus mē cōnsulem in Campō et competītōrēs tuōs interficere voluistī, compressī cōnātūs tuōs nefāriōs amīcōrum praeſidiō et cōpiīs, nūllō tumultū pūblicē concitātō; dēnique, quotiēnscumque mē petīstī, per mē tibi obſtitī quamquam vidēbam perniciēm meam cum magnā calamitātē reī pūblicae esse coniūnctam.

12. Nunc iam³ apertē rem pūblicam ūniversam petis, templa deōrum immortālium, tēcta urbis, vītam omnium cīvium, Italiam tōtam ad exitium et vāſtitātem vocās. Quārē, quoniam id, quod est prīmum et quod huius imperī disciplīnaeque maiōrum proprium est, facere nōndum audeō, faciam id, quod est ad⁴ sevēritātem lēnius et ad⁴ commūnem salūtem ūtilius. Nam sī tē interfici iusserō, residēbit in rē pūblicā reliqua coniūrātōrum manus; sīn tū, quod tē iam dūdum hortor, exieris, exhauriētur ex urbe tuōrum comitum magna et perniciōsa sentīna reī pūblicae.

- calamitās, -tātis, f.**, disaster, misfortune, injury
Campus, -i, m., the Campus Martius, an open area in Rome
comitia cōsulāria, comitiōrum cōsulārium, n. pl., election of consuls
→commūnis, -e, common, shared; held in common
competitor, -oris, m., competitor, rival
comprimō [com+premō], check, restrain; crush
cōnātus, -ūs, m., attempt
concitō (1), stir up, rouse
→coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., conspirators
→cōsul dēsignātus, cōsulis dēsignātī, m., consul-elect
disciplīna, -ae, f., training, custom
dūdum (adv.), some time ago, before
Iam dūdum, for a long time now, long since
effugiō [ex+fugiō], escape
exhauriō, exhaustīre, exhausī, exhaustus, drain dry
→grātia, -ae, f., favor; gratitude, thanks

- horribilis, -e**, horrible, terrible
→īfestus, -a, -um, hostile, harmful
→īsidiōr (1), lie in wait for, plot against (+dat.)
Iuppiter Stator, Iovis Statōris, m., Jupiter the Stayer, protector of Rome
lēnis, -e, gentle, kind
perīclitor (1), put in peril, endanger
proprius, -a, -um, characteristic
quamdiū (conj.), as long as
quotiēnscumque (conj.), however often, as often as
resideō, residēre, resēdī, —, be left, remain
sentīna, -ae, f., bilge-water; cesspool; dregs, scum
→sevēritās, -tātis, f., sternness, strictness
→sīn (conj.), but if
taeter, taetra, taetrum, foul
totiēns (adv.), so often
tumultus, -ūs, m., commotion, uproar
ūniversus, -a, -um, entire
vāſtitās, -tātis, f., devastation

1. *in*, here, in the case of

was previously the case)

2. *proximus*, here, last

4. *ad*, here, with regard to, with a view to

3. *nunc iam*, now at last (in contrast to what

13. Quid est, Catilīna? Num dubitās id mē imperante facere, quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās? Exīre ex urbe iubet cōsul hostem. Interrogās mē num in exsilium; nōn iubeō, sed, sī mē cōnsulis, suādeō.

Quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit, in quā nēmō est, extrā istam coniūrātiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn ḍerit? Quae nota domesticae turpitūdinis nōn inūsta vītae tuae est? Quod prīvātārum rērum dēdecus nōn haeret in fāmā? Quae libīdō ab oculīs, quod facinus ā manibus umquam tuīs, quod flāgitium ā tōtō corpore āfuit? Cui tū adulēscēntulō, quem corruptēlārum illecebrīs irrētīssēs, nōn aut ad audāciam ferrum aut ad libīdinēm facem praetulisti?¹

14. Quid vērō?² Nūper cum morte superiōris uxōris novīs nūptiīs domum vacuēfēcissēs, nōnne etiam aliō incrēibilī scelere hoc scelus cumulāstī? Quod ego praetermittō et facile patior silērī nē in hāc cīvitāte tantī facinoris immānitās aut exstitisse aut nōn vindicāta esse videātur. Praetermittō ruīnās fortūnārum tuārum, quās omnīs impendēre tibi proximīs Idibus sentiēs; ad illa veniō, quae nōn ad prīvātam ignōminiam vitiōrum tuōrum, nōn ad domesticam tuam

cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului, cōsultus, ask advice of, consult	inūrō, inūrere, inussī, inūstus, burn in, imprint upon
corruptēla, -ae, f., corruption, seduction	irrētiō, irrētire, irrētiō or -ii, irrētitus, trap
cumulō (1), crown	→libīdō, libīdinis, f., desire, pleasure, passion, lust
dēdecus, dēdecoris, n., shame, disgrace	nota, -ae, f., mark, sign
dēlectō (1), delight, please, charm	nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl., marriage, wedding
domesticus, -a, -um, personal, domestic	praetermittō [praeter, beyond + mittō], pass over, omit
→exsilium, -i, n., exile	sileō, silēre, siluī, —, be silent; not speak of, leave unmentioned
existō, existere, extitī, extitus, exist, arise, appear	sponte, abl. of *spōns, spontis, f., usually used with a possessive adj., of one's own accord, voluntarily
extrā (prep. + acc.), outside	suādeō, suādere, suāsī, suāsus, persuade, urge, advise
→facinus, facinoris, n., deed; crime	→turpitūdō, -tūdinis, f., moral turpitude, disgrace
fax, facis, f., torch	uxor, -ōris, f., wife
→flāgitium, -i, n., shame, outrage, disgrace	vacuēfaciō [vacuus, -a, -um, empty + faciō], make empty
haerēō, haerēre, haesi, haesus, stick, cling	→vindicō (1), avenge, punish
Idūs, Iduum, f. pl., Ides (the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October and the thirteenth of every other month)	→vitium, -i, n., vice, fault
ignōminia, -ae, f., dishonor, disgrace	
illecebra, -ae, f., attraction, allurement	
immānitās, -tātis, f., enormity	
→impendeō, impendēre, —, —, hang over, threaten (+ dat.)	
interrogō [inter + rogō], ask	

1. *praeferō*, here in a syllepsis, means both "offer" (*ferrum*) and "carry in front" (*facem*).

2. *quid vērō* is always followed by a question; *vērō* adds a sense of protest or disbelief.

difficultatem ac turpitudinem, sed ad summam rem publicam atque ad omnium nostrum vitam salutemque pertinent.

15. Potestne tibi haec lux, Catilina, aut huius caeli spiritus esse iucundus, cum sciens esse horum neminem qui nesciat te pridiem Kalendas Ianuarias Lepidum et Tullum consulibus stetisse in Comitiis cum telo, manum consulum et principum civitatis interficiendorum causam paravisse, sceleri ac furori tuo non mentem¹ aliquam aut timorem tuum, sed fortunam populi Romani obstitisse? Ac iam illa omittitur (neque enim² sunt aut obscura aut non multa commissa postea); quotiens tu me designatum,³ quotiens consulem interficere conatus es! Quot ego tuas petitiones ita coniectas ut vitari posse non vidarentur parva quadam declinacione et, ut aiunt, corpore effugi! Nihil agis, nihil assequeris neque tamen⁴ conari ac velle desistis.

16. Quotiens tibi iam extorta est ista sica de manibus, quotiens excidit casus aliquo et elapsa est! Quae quidem quibus abs te initia sacris ac devota sit nescio, quod eam necesse putas esse in consulis corpore defigere.

Nunc verum⁵ quae tua est ista vita? Sic enim iam tecum loquar non ut odio permotus esse videar, quoniam debeo, sed ut misericordia, quae tibi nulla debetur. Venisti paulum ante in senatum. Quis te ex hac tantum frequentia, tot ex tuis amicis ac necessariis salvavit? Si hoc post⁶ hominum memoriam contigit nemini, vocis

→abs = ab

assechor [ad+sequor], obtain

Comitium, -i, n., the Comitium, place where the assembly met

commissum, -i, n., misdeed, crime

conicio, conicere, conieci, coniectus, throw, hurl; direct

contingō, contingere, contigi, contactus, happen, befall (+dat.)

declinatio, -onis, f., swerving, swerve

defigō, defigere, defixi, defixus, fix, plant

devoveō, devovere, devovi, devotus, dedicate

difficultas, -tatis, f., trouble, difficulty

effugio [ex+fugiō], escape

excido [ex+cadō], fall out, drop, slip

extorqueō, extorquere, extorsi, extortus, twist out

frequentia, -ae, f., crowd

Ianuarius, -a, -um, of January

initio (1), consecrate

iucundus, -a, -um, pleasing, delightful, agreeable

Lepidus, -i, m., Lepidus

misericordia, -ae, f., pity

necessarius, -i, m., kinsman

obscurus, -a, -um, obscure

omittō [ob+mittō], omit

pertineō, [per+teneō], pertain

petitiō, -onis, f., attack, thrust

postea (adv.), afterwards, after this

pridiē (prep. + acc.), on the day before

→quotiens (adv.), how many times, how often; as many times as, as often as

sacra, -orum, n. pl., sacred rites

salutō (1), greet

sica, -ae, f., curved dagger

spiritus, -us, m., breath, breeze

Tullus, -i, m., Tullus

1. mens, here, thought, intention

→2. neque enim, for . . . not

3. designatum, sc., consulem

4. neque tamen, and yet . . . not

5. nunc verō, now in truth; verō is used to emphasize or draw attention.

6. post, here, since

exspectās contumēliam, cum sīs gravissimō iūdiciō taciturnitatis oppressus? Quid, quod¹ adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, quod omnēs cōsulārēs, quī tibi² persaepe ad caedem cōstitūtī fuērunt,³ simul atque assēdistī, partem istam subselliōrum nūdam atque inānem reliquērunt, quō tandem animō tibi ferendum putās?

17. Servī mehercule meī sī mē istō pactō metuerent, ut tē metuunt omnēs cīvēs tuī, domum meam relinquendam putārem; tū tibi urbem nōn arbitrāris? Et sī mē meīs cīvibus iniūriā suspectum tam graviter atque offēnsum vidērem, carēre mē aspectū cīvium quam īfestī omnium oculīs cōspicī māllem; tū cum cōscientiā scelerum tuōrum agnōscās odium omnium iūstum et iam diū tibi dēbitum, dubitās, quōrum mentēs sēnsūsque vulnerās, eōrum aspectum praeſentiamque vītāre? Sī tē parentēs timērent atque ōdissent tuī neque eōs ullā ratiōne plācāre possēs, ut opīnor, ab eōrum oculīs aliquō concēderēs. Nunc tē patria, quae commūnis est parēns omnium nostrum, ōdit ac metuit et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisī dē parricīdiō suō cōgitāre; huius tū neque auctōritātem verēbere nec iūdiciū sequēre nec vim pertimēscēs?

18. Quae tēcum, Catilīna, sīc agit⁴ et quōdam modō tacita loquitur: "Nūllum iam aliquot annī facinus exstitit nisī per tē, nūllum flāgitium sine tē; tibi ūni

adventus, -ūs, m., arrival	→iūstus, -a, -um, just, fair, right; well-founded
agnōscō, agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitus, recognize	mehercule (interj.), by Hercules, assuredly, indeed
aliquō (adv.), somewhere, to some place	nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked, nude
aliquot (indecl. adj.), several	offēnsus, -a, -um, offensive
aspectus, -ūs, m., sight	opīnor (1), suppose, imagine, think
assidō, assidere, assēdī, —, sit down	pactum, -ī, n., stipulation; way, manner
concēdō [con+cēdō], go away	parricīdiūm, -ī, n., murder
→cōscientia, -ae, f., consciousness, awareness	plācō (1), appease, calm
cōspicīō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus,	praeſentia, -ae, f., presence
catch sight of, perceive, observe	→ratiō, -ōnis, f., account, reason; method, way
contumēlia, -ae, f., abuse, insult	subsellium, -ī, n., bench, seat
existō, existere, exstītī, exstītus, exist, arise,	suspectus, -a, -um, mistrusted, suspected
appear	→tacitus, -a, -um, silent
inānis, -e, empty	taciturnitās, -tātis, f., silence
→iniūria, -ae, f., injury, injustice	vacuēfacīō [vacuus, -a, -um, empty + faciō], make empty
iniūriā (abl. sing. as adv.), unjustifiably,	
unjustly	
→iūdicō (1), judge, form an opinion	

1. **quid, quod**, what about the fact that
2. Dative of agent. The dative of agent is often used with passive verbs in the indicative

(especially with the perfect tenses).
3. **cōstitūtī fuērunt** = **cōstitūtī sunt**
4. **agō**, here, plead (one's case)

multōrum cīvium necēs, tibi vexātiō dīreptiōque sociōrum impūnīta fuit ac lībera; tū nōn sōlum ad neglegendās lēgēs et quaestiōnēs, vērum etiam ad ēvertendās perfringendāsque valuistī. Superiōra illa, quamquam ferenda nōn fuērunt, tamen, ut potuī, tulī; nunc vērō mē tōtam esse in metū propter ūnum tē; quicquid increpuerit, Catilīnam timērī; nūllum vidērī contrā mē cōnsilium inīrī posse, quod ā tuō scelere abhorreat, nōn est ferendum. Quam ob rem discēde atque hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī est vērus, nē opprimar, sīn falsus, ut tandem aliquandō timēre dēsinam."

19. Haec sī tēcum, ita ut dīxī, patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat, etiamsī vim adhibēre nōn possit? Quid, quod¹ tū tē ipse in custōdiam dedistī, quod vītandaे suspiciōnis causā ad² M'. Lepidum tē habitāre velle dīxistī? Ā quō nōn receptus³ etiam ad mē venīre ausus es atque ut domī meae tē asservārem rogāstī. Cum ā mē quoque id respōnsum tulissēs, mē nūllō modō posse īsdem parietibus tūtō esse tēcum, quī magnō in periculō essem, quod īsdem moenibus continērēmur, ad Q. Metellum praetōrem vēnistī. Ā quō repudiātus ad sodālem tuum, virum optimum, M. Metellum, dēmigrāstī; quem tū vidēlicet et ad custōdiendum dīligentissimum et ad suspicandum sagācissimum et ad vindicandum fortissimum fore putāstī. Sed quam longē vidētur ā carcere atque ā

- abhorreō, abhorrē, abhorriū, —,** shrink from, differ from; be inconsistent with (+ā+abl.)
adhibeō [ad+habeō], hold out, stretch out; apply
asservō [ad+servō], watch over, guard
cacer, carceris, m., prison
custōdiō, custōdire, custōdīvī or custōdiī, custōditūs, guard, protect
dēmigrō (1), depart, go away
diligēns, -entis, conscientious, diligent
dīreptiō, -ōnis, f., plundering
→ēripiō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus, tear away, snatch away, take away
etiamsī (conj.), even if
ēvertō [ē+vertō], overturn
→falsus, -a, -um, false
habitō (1), live
impetrō (1), gain one's request
impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished
increpō, increpāre, increpuī, increpitus, make a noise
ineō [in+eō], enter upon, undertake
M'. Lepidus, -ī, m., Manlius Lepidus, consul in 66 B.C.

- M. Metellus, -ī, m.,** Marcus Metellus
Q. Metellus, -ī, m., Quintus Metellus, consul in 60 B.C.
nex, necis, f., murder
pariēs, parietis, m., wall (of a house)
perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfractus, break into pieces
quaestiō, -ōnis, f., (judicial) inquiry; investigation
quisquis, quidquid (quicquid) (indef. pron.), whoever, whatever
→quoque (adv.), also, too
repudiō (1), reject, refuse
respōnsum, -ī, n., answer, reply
sagāx, sagācis, sharp, keen
sodālis, sodālis, -ium, m., comrade, companion; accomplice
suspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion
suspicor (1), suspect
tūtō (adv.), safely
→valeō, valēre, valui, valitus, be strong, be able; fare well
vexātiō, -ōnis, f., distress, harassment
vidēlicet (adv.), of course, obviously

1. **quid, quod,** what about the fact that
 2. **ad, here,** at the house of

3. **recipiō, here,** receive

vinculīs abesse dēbēre, qui sē ipse iam dīgnū custōdiā iūdicārit!

20. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, dubitās, sī ēmorī aequō animō nōn potes, abīre in aliquās terrās et vītam istam multīs suppliciīs iūstīs dēbitīsque ēreptam fugae sōlitūdinīque mandāre?

"Refer," inquis, "ad senātūm"; id enim postulās et, sī hic ordō placēre dēcrēverit tē ire in exsilium, obtemperātūrum tē esse dīcis. Nōn referam, id quod abhorret ā meīs mōribus, et tamen faciam ut intellegās quid hī dē tē sentiant. Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna, līberā rem pūblicam metū; in exsilium, sī hanc vōcem exspectās, proficīscere. Quid est, Catilīna? Ecquid¹ attendis, ecquid¹ animadvertis hōrum silentium? Patiuntur, tacent. Quid exspectās auctōritātem loquentium, quōrum voluntātem tacitōrum perspicis?

21. At sī hoc idem huic adulēscētī optimō, P. Sestīō, sī fortissimō virō, M. Marcellō, dīxissem, iam mihi cōnsulī hōc ipsō in templō senātūs iūre optimō vim et manūs intulisset. Dē tē autem, Catilīna, cum quiēscunt, probant; cum patiuntur, dēcernunt; cum tacent, clāmant; neque hī sōlum, quōrum tibi auctōritās est vidēlicet cāra, vīta vīlissima, sed etiam illī equitēs Rōmānī, honestissimī atque optimī virī, cēterīque fortissimī cīvēs, qui circumstant senātūm, quōrum tū et frequentiam vidēre et studia perspicere et vōcēs paulō ante exaudīre potuistī. Quōrum ego vix² abs tē iam diū manūs ac tēla contineō, eōsdem facile addūcam ut tē haec, quae vāstāre iam prīdem studēs, relinquētē ūsque ad portās prōsequantur.

abhorreō, abhorreī, abhorruī, —. shrink from, differ from; be inconsistent with (+ā+abl.)
addūcō [ad+dūcō], influence
aequus, -a, -um, level, equal; fair; calm, composed
attendō, attendere, attendī, attentus, pay attention
custōdia, -ae, f., custody
ecquis, ecquid (indef. pron.), anyone, anything
ēmorior [ē+morior], die
exaudiō [ex+audiō], hear clearly
frequentia, -ae, f., crowd
inquis (defective verb), you say
mandō (1), entrust, commit
M. Marcellus, -i, m., Marcus Marcellus, consul in 51 B.C., enemy of Caesar

obtemperō (1), obey
perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, observe, perceive
postulō (1), demand
probō (1), pronounce judgment, approve
prōsequor [prō+sequor], escort
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus, keep quiet
P. Sestius, -i, m., Publius Sestius, quaestor in 63 B.C.
→silentium, -i, n., silence
sōlitūdō, -tūdinis, f., solitude
vidēlicet (adv.), of course, obviously
vīlis, -e, worthless, cheap
vinculum, -i, n., chain, fetter
voluntās, -tātis, f., wish, will, inclination

1. **ecquid**, adverbial accusative, at all

2. **vix**, here and frequently, with difficulty

22. Quamquam¹ quid loquor? Tē ut² ūlla rēs frangat, tū ut umquam tē corrigās, tū ut ūllam fugam meditēre, tū ut ūllum exsilium cōgitēs? Utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortālēs duint! Tametsī videō, sī meā vōce perterritus īre in exsilium animum indūxeris,³ quanta tempestās invidiae⁴ nōbīs, sī minus⁵ in⁶ praesēns tempus recentī memoriā scelerum tuōrum, at⁷ in⁶ posteritātem impendeat. Sed est tantī dum modo ista sit privāta calamitās et ā reī pūblicae perīculīs sēiungātur. Sed tū ut vitiīs tuīs commoveāre, ut lēgum poenās pertimēscās, ut temporibus⁸ reī pūblicae cēdās, nōn est postulandum. Neque enim is⁹ es, Catilīna, ut tē aut pudor umquam ā turpitūdine aut metus ā perīculō aut ratiō ā furōre revocārit.

23. Quam ob rem, ut saepe iam dīxī, proficiscere ac, sī mihi inimīcō, ut praedicās, tuō cōnflāre vīs invidiam, rēctā perge in exsilium; vix feram sermōnēs hominum sī id fēceris; vix mōlem istīus invidiae, sī in exsilium iussū cōnsulis ieris, sustinēbō. Sīn autem servīre meae laudī et glōriae māvīs, ēgredere cum importūnā scelerātōrum manū, cōnfer tē ad Manlium, concitā perditōs cīvēs, sēcerne tē ā bonīs, infer patriae bellum, exsultā impiō latrōciniō, ut ā mē nōn electus ad aliēnōs sed invitātus ad tuōs īsse videāris.

24. Quamquam quid ego tē invitē, ā quō iam sciam esse praemissōs, qui

calamitās, -tātis, f., disaster, misfortune, injury	→ posteritās, -tātis, f., later generations
concitō (1), stir up, rouse	postulō (1), demand
→ cōnflō (1), kindle, inflame; assemble, acquire	praēdicō (1), proclaim, preach
corrigō, corrigere, corrēxi, corrēctus, straighten out	praesēns, -entis, present
dūnt = archaic form of dent	→ pudor, -ōris, m., shame, decency, modesty
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēci, ēiectus, throw out	recēns, -entis, recent, fresh, new
exsultō (1), revel, rejoice, exult; indulge	rēctus, -a, -um, straight
frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctus, break, shatter, crush	rēctā (viā), immediately, directly
importūnus, -a, -um, troublesome	scelerātus, -a, -um, wicked, criminal
invitō (1), invite	sēcernō, sēcernere, sēcrēvi, sēcrētus, separate
→ latrōcinium, -i, n., criminality	sēiungō [sē + tungō], separate
→ Manlius, -i, m., Gaius Manlius	sermō, -ōnis, m., conversation
→ meditor (1), consider; intend; devise	serviō, servire, servivi or servii, servitus, serve, be a slave to (+dat.)
mōlēs, mōlis, -iūm, f., burden	tametsī (conj.), and yet, all the same
pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus, continue, proceed	

-
- 1. **quamquam**, with a question introducing an independent clause, and yet
2. **Ut** here introduces an indignant question rejecting a supposition as preposterous or untrue. Translate: "can it be that . . ."
3. **animum indūcere**, persuade oneself, resolve, determine
- 4. **invidia**, here and frequently, ill-will, resentment
5. **sī minus**, here, if not
6. **in**, here, for
7. **at**, here, introducing a qualification, yet, at least
8. **tempus**, here, need
9. **is**, here, such, of such a sort

tibi ad¹ Forum Aurēlium praestōlarentur armātī, cui² iam sciam pactam et cōnstitūtam cum Manliō diem, ā quō etiam aquilam illam argenteam, quam tibi ac tuīs omnibus cōfidō perniciōsam ac fūnestam futūram, cui domī tuae sacrārium scelerum cōnstitūtum fuit,³ sciam esse praemissam? Tū ut⁴ illā carēre diūtius possīs, quam venerārī ad caedem proficiscēns solēbās, ā cuius altāribus saepe istam impiam dexteram⁵ ad necem cīvium trānstulisti?

25. Ibis tandem aliquandō quō tē iam p̄idem ista tua cupiditās effrēnāta ac furiōsa rapiēbat; neque enim tibi haec rēs affert dolōrem, sed quandam incrēdibilem voluptātem. Ad hanc tē āmentiam nātūra peperit, voluntās exercuit, fortūna servāvit. Numquam tū nōn modo ōtium, sed nē bellum quidem nisi nefārium concupistī. Nactus es ex perditīs atque ab omnī nōn modo fortūnā, vērum etiam spē dērelictīs cōflātam improbōrum manum.

26. Hīc tū quā⁶ laetitiā perfruēre, quibus gaudiis exsultābis, quantā in voluptāte bacchābere, cum in tantō numerō tuōrum neque audiēs virum bonum quemquam neque vidēbis! Ad huius vītae studium⁷ meditātī illī sunt,⁸ qui feruntur, labōrēs tuī: iacēre humī nōn sōlum ad obsidendum stuprum, vērum etiam ad facinus obeundum, vigilāre nōn sōlum īsidiāntem somnō marītōrum,

altāria, -ium, n. pl. , altar	iaceō, iacēre, iacui , —, lie
āmentia, -ae, f. , madness	→ labor, -ōris, m. , work, exertion; trouble, effort
aquila, -ae, f. , eagle	maritus, -i, m. , husband, married man
argenteus, -a, -um , made of silver, silver	nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum , obtain
armō (1), arm	nex, necis, f. , murder
bacchor (1), revel	obeō [ob+eō] , engage in
concupisō, concupiscere, concupīvi , concupitus, desire, long for, covet	→ obsidēō, obsidēre, obsēdi, obsessus , lie in wait for
cōfidō, cōfidere, cōfisus sum , trust, be confident	→ ōtium, -i, n. , leisure, idleness
→ cupiditās, -tatis, f. , desire, greed	→ pactus, -a, -um , agreed upon
dērelinquō [dē+relinquō], abandon, forsake	→ pariō, parere, peperi, partus , give birth (to), bear, produce; acquire
effrēnātus, -a, -um , unbridled, unrestrained	perfruor, perfrui, perfructus sum , enjoy fully (+abl.)
→ exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus , keep busy, occupy; exercise, train	praestōlor (1), wait for (+dat.)
exsultō (1), revel, rejoice, exult; indulge	→ rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptus , seize, carry off, snatch; impel
fortūna, -ae, f. , fortune, chance	sacrārium, -i, n. , shrine
Forum Aurēlium, -i, n. , Forum Aurelium, a small city near Rome	→ stuprum, -i, n. , debauchery; prey
funestus, -a, -um , deadly	veneror (1), worship
furiōsus, -a, -um , mad, raging	voluntās, -tatis, f. , wish, will, inclination
humus, -i, f. , ground; humī = locative	voluptās, -tatis, f. , pleasure, enjoyment

1. **ad**, here, at, near

2. Dative of agent. See page 51, note 2.

3. **cōnstitūtum fuit** = **cōnstitūtum est**

4. See page 54, note 2.

5. **dexteram** = *dextram*

6. Note the use of interrogative adjectives **quā**, **quibus**, and **quantā** in exclamations.

7. **studium**, here and frequently, pursuit

8. **Meditor**, although a deponent verb, here has a passive meaning.

vērum etiam bonīs ōtiōsōrum. Habēs ubi ostentēs¹ tuam illam praeclāram patientiam famis, frīgoris, inopiae rērum omnium, quibus tē brevī tempore cōflectum esse² sentiēs.

27. Tantum prōfēcī cum tē ā cōsulātū reppulī ut exsul potius temptāre quam cōnsul vexāre rem pūblicam possēs, atque ut id, quod esset ā tē scelerātē susceptum, latrōcinium potius quam bellum nōminārētur.

Nunc, ut ā mē, patrēs cōscriptī, quandam prope iūstam patriae querimōniam dētester ac dēprecer, percipite, quaeſō, dīligenter quae dīcam, et ea penitus animīs vestrīs mentibusque mandāte. Etenim, sī mēcum patria, quae mihi vītā meā multō est cārior, sī cūcta Italia, sī omnis rēs pūblica loquātur: "M. Tullī, quid agis? Tūne eum, quem esse hostem comperistī, quem ducem bellī futūrum vidēs, quem exspectārī imperātōrem in castrīs hostium sentīs, auctōrem sceleris, prīcipem coniūrātiōnis, ēvocātōrem servōrum et cīvium perditōrum, exīre patiēre, ut abs tē nōn ēmissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videātur? Nōnne hunc in vincula dūci, nōn³ ad mortem rapī, nōn summō suppliciō mactārī imperābis?

28. Quid tandem tē impedit? Mōsne maiōrum? At persaepe etiam prīvātī in hāc rē pūblicā perniciōsōs cīvēs morte multārunt. An lēgēs, quae dē cīvium Rōmānōrum suppliciō rogātae sunt?⁴ At numquam in hāc urbe quī ā rē pūblicā dēfēcērunt cīvium iūra tenuērunt. An invidiam posteritātis timēs? Praeclāram

- brevis**, -e, brief, short
- cōsulātus**, -ūs, m., consulship
- cūctus**, -a, -um, all
- dēficiō** [dē + faciō], revolt
- dēprecōr** (1), ward off by prayer
- dētestor** (1), avert
- dīligēns**, -entis, conscientious, diligent
- ēvocātor**, -ōris, m., recruiter
- exsul**, **exsulis**, m. or f., exile
- famēs**, **famis**, f., hunger
- frīgus**, **frīgoris**, n., cold, coldness, chill
- immittō** [in + mittō], send against
- inopia**, -ae, f., lack of resources, poverty; lack
- mactō** (1), punish, afflict; sacrifice, kill
- mandō** (1), entrust, commit
- multō** (1), punish
- nōminō** (1), name
- ostentō** (1), show off

- ōtiōsus**, -a, -um, at leisure, peaceable
- penitus** (adv.), deep within, thoroughly, wholly
- percipiō** [per + capiō], perceive, take in
- potius** (comparative adv.), rather
- praeclārūs**, -a, -um, splendid; famous
- prōficiō** [prō + faciō], accomplish, effect; gain
- prope** (adv.), nearly, almost
- quaesō**, I ask you, please
- querimōnia**, -ae, f., complaint, grievance
- repellō**, **repellere**, **repulī**, **repulsus**, push back, drive back, repel
- scelerātē** (adv.), wickedly, criminally
- suscipiō** [sub + capiō], undertake
- M. Tullius**, -ī, m., Marcus Tullius, *praenomen* and *nomen* of Cicero
- vexō** (1), trouble, disturb, harass
- vinculum**, -ī, n., chain, fetter

1. **ubi ostentēs**, literally, where you may show = an opportunity to show

mark a three-part question expecting an affirmative reply.

2. **cōficiō**, here, destroy

4. **rogō**, here, introduce, enact

3. Note the sequence **nōnne** . . . **nōn** . . . **nōn** to

vērō populō Rōmānō refers grātiā, quī tē, hominem per tē cognitum, nūllā commendātiōne maiōrum, tam mātūrē ad summum imperium per omnīs honōrum gradūs extulit,¹ sī propter invidiam aut alicuius periculī metum salūtem cīvium tuōrum neglegis.

29. Sed, sī quis² est invidiae metus, num est vehementius sevēritātis ac fortitūdinis invidia quam inertiae ac nēquitiae pertimēscenda? An, cum bellō vāstābitur Italia, vexābuntur urbēs, tēcta ardēbunt, tum tē nōn exīstīmās invidiae incendiō cōflāgrātūrum?"

Hīs ego sāctissimīs reī pūblicae vōcibus et eōrum hominum, quī hoc idem sentiunt, mentibus pauca respondēbō. Ego sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārem, patrēs cōscrīptī, Catilīnam morte multārī, ūnius ūsūram hōrae gladiātōrī istī ad vivendum nōn dedissem. Etenim sī summi virī et clārissimī cīvēs Sāturnīnī et Gracchōrum et Flacci et superiōrum complūrium sanguine nōn modo sē nōn contāminārunt, sed etiam honestārunt, certē verendum mihi nōn erat nē quid hōc parricīdā cīvium interfectō invidiae mihi in posteritātem redundāret. Quod si ea mihi maximē impendēret, tamen hōc animō fuī semper ut invidiam virtūte partam glōriam, nōn invidiam, putārem.

30. Quamquam³ nōnnūllī sunt in hōc ordine, quī aut ea quae imminent nōn videant aut ea quae vident dissimulent; quī spēm Catilīnae mollibus sententiīs aluērunt coniūrātiōnemque nāscētēm nōn crēdēndō corrōborāvērunt; quōrum

alō, alere, aluī, altus or alitus, nourish, support; increase	immīneō, immīnēre, —, —, overhang, threaten
commendātiō, -ōnis, f. , commendation	inertia, -ae, f. , inactivity, laziness
complūrēs, -a or -ia, several, very many	mātūrē (adv.), early, speedily
cōflāgrō (1), burn, be consumed	→ mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft
contāminō (1), defile, pollute	multō (1), punish
corrōborō (1), strengthen	nēquitia, -ae, f. , worthlessness, negligence
dissimulō (1), disguise, conceal	nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some
→ exīstīmō [ex+aestīmō], think, reckon	parricīda, -ae, m. or f. , murderer
Flaccus, -i, m. , Flaccus	redundō (1), pour over, overflow, redound upon
fortitūdō, -tūdinis, f. , firmness, resolution	sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, venerable
gladiātor, -ōris, m. , gladiator; <i>as a term of reproach</i> , thug	sanguis, sanguinis, m. , blood
Gracchi, -ōrum, m. pl. , the Gracchi	Sāturnīnus, -i, m. , Saturninus
gradus, -ūs, m. , step	ūsūra, -ae, f. , use, enjoyment
honestō (1), honor	→ vehementer (adv.), exceedingly, strongly

1. **efferō**, here, raise (a person) in rank or status

2. **quis**, indefinite pronoun used adjectivally

3. **quamquam**, introducing a main clause, it cannot be denied that, admittedly

auctōritātē multī nōn sōlum improbī, vērum etiam imperitī, sī in hunc animadvertissem,¹ crūdēliter et rēgiē factum esse dicerent. Nunc intellegō, sī iste, quō intendit, in Manliāna castra pervēnerit, nēminem tam stultum fore quī nōn videat coniūratiōnem esse factam, nēminem tam improbum quī nōn fateātur. Hōc autem ūnō interfectō, intellegō hanc reī pūblicae pestem paulisper reprimī, nōn in perpetuum comprimī posse. Quodsi sē ēiēcerit sēcumque suōs ēdūxerit et eōdem cēterōs undique collēctōs naufragōs aggregārit, exstinguētur atque dēlebitur nōn modo haec tam adulta reī pūblicae pestis, vērum etiam stirps ac sēmen malōrum omnium.

31. Etenim iam diū, patrēs cōscripti, in hīs periculīs cōniūratiōnis īnsidiīsque versāmur, sed nescio quō² pactō omnium scelerum ac veteris furoris et audāciae mātūritās in nostrī cōsulātūs tempus ērūpit. Quodsi ex tantō latrōciniō iste ūnus tollētur, vidēbimur fortasse ad³ breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse relevātī, periculum autem residēbit et erit inclūsum penitus in vēnīs atque in visceribus reī pūblicae. Ut saepe hominēs aegrī morbō gravī, cum aestū febrīque iactantur, sī aquam gelidam bibērunt, prīmō relevārī videntur, deinde

adultus, -a, -um , mature	naufragus, -a, -um , shipwrecked, ruined
aeger, aegra, aegrum , sick, weak; dejected	pactum, -i, n. , stipulation; way, manner
aestus, -ūs, m. , heat	paulisper (adv.), for a little while
aggregō (1), collect, bring together	penitus (adv.), deep within, thoroughly, wholly
bibō, bibere, bibī, — , drink	perpetuus, -a, -um , perpetual, continuous in perpetuum, for all time, forever
colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus , gather, collect, assemble	→ prīmō (adv.), at first
comprimō [com+premō], check, restrain; crush	redundō (1), pour over, overflow, redound upon
→ deinde (adv.), then, next, afterwards	rēgiē (adv.), despotically, in the manner of a king
ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus , break out, burst forth	→ relevō (1), lighten, relieve, free
extinguō, extinguere, extinxi, extinctus , annihilate, extinguish, destroy	reprimō [re+premō], check, suppress
febris, febris, -ium (abl. febrī), f., fever	resideō, residēre, resēdi, — , be left, remain
fortasse (adv.), perhaps	sēmen, -minis, n. , seed
gelidus, -a, -um , cold, icy	stirps, stirpis, -ium, f. , root
imperitūs, -a, -um , inexperienced, unskilled	stultus, -a, -um , foolish, stupid
inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsi, inclūsus , confine, enclose	tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus , raise, lift up; carry away, remove
Manliānus, -a, -um , of Manlius	undique (adv.), from all sides, on all sides
mātūritās, -tatis, f. , maturity, ripeness	vēna, -ae, f. , vein
morbus, -i, m. , disease, sickness	versor (1), be involved
	viscera, viscerum, n. pl. , innards, internal organs

1. **animadvertisō**, here, with *in+acc.*, deal with punitively, inflict capital punishment upon

2. **nescio quī, nescio qua, nescio quod** (indef. adj.), some or other (*literally*, I-don't-know-what)

3. **ad**, here, for

multō gravius vehementiusque afflantur, sīc hic morbus, quī est in rē pūblicā, relevātus istīus poenā vehementius reliquīs vīvīs¹ ingravēscet.

32. Quārē sēcēdant improbī, sēcernant sē ā bonīs, ūnum in locum congregentur, mūrō dēnique, quod saepe iam dīxī, sēcernantur ā nōbīs; dēsinant īnsidiārī domī suaē cōnsulī, circumstāre tribūnal praetōris urbānī, obsidēre cum gladiīs Cūriam, malleolōs et facēs ad īflammandam urbem comparāre; sit dēnique īscrīptum in fronte ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat. Polliceor hoc vōbīs, patrēs cōscrīptī, tantam in nōbīs cōsulibus fore diligentiam, tantam in vōbīs auctōritātem, tantam in equitibus Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnibus bonīs cōsēnsiōnem, ut Catilīnae profectiōne omnia patefacta, illūstrāta, oppressa, vindicāta esse videātis.

33. Hisce² öminibus, Catilīna, cum summā reī pūblicae salūte, cum tuā peste ac perniciē cumque eōrum exitiō, quī sē tēcum omnī scelere parricīdiōque iūnxērunt, proficiēscere ad impium bellum ac nefārium. Tū, Iuppiter, qui īsdem quibus haec urbs auspiciīs ā Rōmulō es cōstitūtus, quem Statōrem huius urbis atque imperī vērē nōmināmus, hunc et huius sociōs ā tuīs cēterīsque templīs, ā tēctīs urbīs ac moenībus, ā vītā fortūnīsque cīvium omnīum arcēbis et hominēs bonōrum inimīcōs, hostīs patriae, latrōnēs Italiae scelerum foedere inter sē ac nefāriā societāte coniūnctōs, aeternīs supplicīs vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.

afflictō (1), trouble, distress	
arceō, arcērē, arcui, —, keep at a distance, keep away	
auspiciūm, -ī, n., divine sign; (pl.) auspices	
comparō (1), get together, obtain, gather	
congregō (1), assemble	
cōsēnsiō, -ōnis, f., agreement, harmony	
cūria, -ae, f., senate-house	
fax, facis, f., torch	
febris, febris, -īum (abl. febrī), f., fever	
frōns, frontis, -īum, m. or f., forehead, brow	
gelidus, -a, -um, cold, icy	
īllūstrō (1), make clear, illuminate	
īflammō (1), set on fire	
ingravēscō, ingravēscere, —, —, grow worse, increase	
latrō, -ōnis, m., criminal, thief	
mactō (1), punish, afflict; sacrifice, kill	

malleolus, -ī, m., fiery arrow, firebrand
obsideō, obsidērē, obsēdi, obsēssus, besiege; surround
ōmen, öminis, n., omen
parricīdiūm, -ī, n., murder
patefacīō, patefacere, patefēci, patefactus, lay open, disclose
profeciō, -ōnis, f., setting out, departure
Rōmulus, -ī, m., Romulus, legendary founder and first king of Rome
sēcēdō [sē + cēdō], withdraw
sēcernō, sēcernere, sēcrēvi, sēcrētus, separate
societās, -tatis, f., association, alliance
Stator, -ōris, m., stayer, supporter
tribūnal, -ālis, n., raised platform (of the Roman magistrates)
urbānus, -a, -um, of the city
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living

1. **reliquīs vīvīs**, ablative absolute

2. **hisce**, note the emphatic enclitic -ce.

Sallust

Gaius Sallustius Crispus (86–35 B.C.), born in a small Sabine town, became prominent in Roman politics at a rather early age, but his career is studded with accusations of misgovernment and extortion. At one time, he was removed from the office of senator, and the stories involving his shady dealings during his tenure as proconsul of the newly-formed province of Numidia probably contain some truth. Forced out of political life, Sallust turned to history writing. Two principal works survive, the *Bellum Catilīnae*, which deals with the Catilinarian conspiracy of 63 B.C., and the *Bellum Jugurthīnum*, the theme of which is the struggle between Rome and the African prince Jugurtha in Numidia (112–106 B.C.).

As an historian, Sallust is noteworthy for having abandoned the annalistic method in favor of writing short monographs. In these more narrowly focused works, Sallust concentrates his attention on human nature and motivation. Sallust seems to view the movement of human history as an inevitable decline into vice and corruption. This moralizing tendency may have colored his presentation of the facts, but Sallust's criticism of the late Roman republic retains the power to persuade.

Sallust's prose style appears to constitute a studied response or reaction to the balance and parallelism of Cicero. Sallust seeks to vary his constructions and to imbue his sentences with rapidity, brevity, and point. The longer periodic sentence is abandoned for short, pithy utterances, sharp antitheses, and brief, colorful descriptive phrases.

In strong contrast to Cicero, Sallust deliberately infuses his works with a broad variety of poeticisms, Greekisms, and archaisms. Most notable are spellings that represent either earlier, unassimilated forms or pronunciations both colloquial and archaic. Examples include: *inmoderātus* (= *immoderātus*), *maxumē* (= *maximē*), *dīversus* (= *dīversus*), *colundō* (= *colendō*), *qui* (= *cui*), *relicuus* (= *reliquus*), *ignāvos* (= *ignāvus*). In addition, Sallust's chosen vocabulary earned for him the titles *fūr Catōnis* ("plunderer of Cato") and *novātor verbōrum* ("renovator of words"). For example, where Cicero uses *clāritās* and *cupiditās*, Sallust favors *clāritūdō* and *cupīdō*. The standard word *ignōminia* is replaced by the weighty Sallustian *dēhonestāmentum*. Finally, Sallust arranges his short, paratactic sentences in many colorful and abrupt antitheses that may be considered the hallmark of Sallustian *Latīnitās*. This "pointed style" became an enduring alternative to Ciceronian elegance and strongly influenced both Livy and Tacitus.

Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae*

1. Omnis hominēs qui sēsē student praestāre cēteris animālibus summā ope nītī decet nē vītam silentiō trānseant velutī pecora, quae nātūra prōna atque ventrī oboedientia finxit. Sed nostra omnis vīs in animō et corpore sita est; animi imperiō, corporis servitiō magis ūtimur; alterum nōbīs cum dīs, alterum cum bēluīs commūne est. Quō mihi rēctius vidētur ingenī quam vīrium opibus glōriam quaerere et, quoniam vīta ipsa quā fruimur brevis est, memoriam nostri quam maxumē longam efficere. Nam dīvitiārum et fōrmiae glōria fluxa atque fragilis est, virtūs clāra aeternaque habētur. Sed diū magnum inter mortālis certāmen fuit vīne corporis an virtūte animi rēs mīlitāris magis procēderet. Nam et prius quam incipiās, cōsultō¹ et, ubi cōsulueris, mātūrē factō opus est. Ita utrumque per sē indigēns; alterum alterius auxiliō eget.

2. Igitur initiō rēgēs—nam in terrīs nōmen imperi id pīnum fuit—dīvorsi, pars ingenium, alii corpus exercēbant; etiam tum vīta hominum sine cupiditāte agitābātur;² sua cuique satis placēbant. Posteā vērō quam in Asiā Cȳrus, in Graeciā Lacedaemoniī et Athēniēnsēs coepēre urbīs atque nātiōnēs subigere, lubīdinem dominandī causam bellī habēre, maxumam glōriam in maxumō imperiō putāre, tum dēmum perīculō atque negōtiīs compertum est in bellō

Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian	→initium, -ī, n., beginning
bēlua, -ae, f., wild beast, brute	Lacedaemonius, -ī, m., a Spartan
certāmen, -minis, n., contest, struggle, strife, dispute	mātūrē (adv.), early, speedily
cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului, cōsultus, consider, reflect, deliberate	mīlitāris, -e, pertaining to the military, of war
Cȳrus, -ī, m., Cyrus, a Persian king	→negōtiūm, -ī, n., business; pains, difficulty, trouble
decet, decēre, decuit (impersonal), it is seemly, it is becoming; it is proper	nītor, nītī, nīxus or nīsus sum, rest upon, rely on (+abl.); make an effort, strive
→dēmum (adv.), at length, at last; precisely, only	oboediēns, -entis, obedient, compliant, subject
tum dēmum, only then	pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, herd, flock
→dīvorsus (=dīversus), -a, -um, turned different ways; opposite, separate, different	posteā . . . quam (conj.), after
dominor (1), be lord, hold sway, rule	praestō, praestāre, praestīti, praestitus, stand before, be superior, excel
egeō, egēre, egui, —, be needy, lack, need (+abl.)	prōcēdō [prō+cēdō], move forward, advance; succeed
→fīngō, fīngere, fīnxī, fīctus, form, fashion, make; imagine	prōnus, -a, -um, leaning or bending forward; leaning towards the ground
fluxus, -a, -um, flowing, loose; weak, fleeting, perishable	rēctus, -a, -um, straight; right, proper
fragilis, -e, easily broken, frail	servitium, -ī, n., slavery; enslavement
→fruor, frui, frūctus sum, derive enjoyment from, enjoy, delight in (+abl.)	situs, -a, -um, placed, set, situated
Graecia, -ae, f., Greece	→uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two); both
indigēns, -entis, in want, needy, lacking	→veluti or velut (conj.), even as, just as
	→venter, ventris, m., belly, stomach

1. **cōsultum**, here, deliberation, consideration; plan 2. **agitō**, here, spend, pass

plūrumum ingenium posse.¹ Quod sī rēgum atque imperātōrum animī virtūs in pāce ita ut in bellō valēret, aequābilius atque cōstantius sēsē rēs hūmānae habērent,² neque aliud aliō³ ferrī neque mūtarī ac miscērī omnia cernerēs. Nam imperium facile eis artibus retinētur quibus initio partum est. Vērum ubi prō labōre dēsidia, prō continentia et aequitāte lubidō atque superbia invāsēre, fortūna simul cum mōribus immūtatur. Ita imperium semper ad optumum quemque ā minus bonō trānsfertur. Quae hominēs arant, nāvigator, aedificant, virtūti omnia pārent. Sed multī mortālēs, dēditī ventrī atque somnō, indocti inculūque vītam sīcutī peregrinantēs trānsiēre. Quibus profectō contrā nātūram corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit. Eōrum ego vītam mortemque iuxtā aestumō, quoniam dē utrāque siletur. Vērum enim vērō⁴ is dēmum mihi vivere atque frui animā vidētur qui aliquō negōtiō intentus praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae famam quaerit. Sed in magnā cōpiā rērum aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit.

3. Pulchrum est bene facere reī pūblicae, etiam bene dīcere haud absurdum est; vel pāce vel bellō clārum fierī licet; et qui fēcēre et qui facta aliōrum scripsēre, multī laudantur. Ac mihi quidem, tametsī haudquāquam pār glōria sequitur scriptōrem et auctōrem rērum, tamen in prīmīs⁵ arduum vidētur rēs gestās scribere, prīmū quod facta dictīs exaequanda sunt; dehinc quia

absurdus, -a, -um, discordant; inappropriate
aedificō (1), build, construct, erect
aequābilis, -e, consistent, equable
arduus, -a, -um, steep; difficult, arduous
arō (1), plough, till, cultivate
cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus, distinguish, discern, perceive
cōstāns, -antis, firm, steady, invariable, constant
continentia, -ae, f., restraint, temperance, moderation
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, give up, surrender, deliver; dedicate
dehinc (adv.), from here, thereupon, then
→dēsidia, -ae, f., idleness, inactivity, sloth
exaequō (1), make equal, equal
→haud (adv.), not at all, by no means
haudquāquam (adv.), by no means whatever, not at all
→hūmānus, -a, -um, human

incultus, -a, -um, uncultivated, neglected; without education
→intentus, -a, -um, intent, occupied; earnest, serious
iuxtā (adv.), near, near by; in like manner, equally
nāvigō (1), sail
onus, oneris, n., load, burden; trouble, difficulty
→pār, paris, equal
peregrinor (1), dwell abroad; be an alien; travel abroad
retineō (*re + teneō*), keep, retain
sileō, silēre, siluī, —, be silent; not speak of, leave unmentioned
→simul (adv.), at the same time
→tametsī (conj. + indic. or subj.), notwithstanding that, although
voluptās, -tatis, f., pleasure, enjoyment

1. **possum**, here used absolutely, have power
 2. The idiom *sē habēre* + adverb is best translated by using the verb "be" and the adjectival equivalent of the adverb: "... would be more equable . . ."

3. **aliō**, here, adv., to another place
 4. **vērum enim vērō**, but at the same time
 5. **in prīmīs**, especially, in particular

plērius, quae dēlicita reprehenderis, malivolentiā et invidiā dicta putant; ubi dē magnā virtūte atque glōriā bonōrum memorēs,¹ quae sibi quisque facilia factū putat, aequō animō accipit; suprā ea² velutī ficta prō falsis dūcit. Sed ego adulēscētulus initiō, sicutī plērius, studiō ad rem pūblicam³ lātus sum, ibique mihi multa advorsa fuēre. Nam prō pudōre, prō abstinentiā, prō virtūte, audācia, largitiō, avāritia vigēbant. Quae tametsī animus aspernābātur, īsolēns malārum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia imbēcilla aetās ambitiōne corrupta tenēbātur; ac mē, cum ab reliquōrum malis mōribus dissentīrem, nihilō minus⁴ honōris cupidō eādem quā cēterōs fāmā atque invidiā vexābat.

4. Igitur, ubi animus ex multīs miseriīs atque periculīs requiēvit et mihi reliquā aetātem ā rē pūblicā³ procul habendam dēcrēvī, nōn fuit cōsillium socordiā atque dēsidiā bonum ōtium conterere, neque vērō agrum colundō aut vēnandō, servīlibus officiīs, intentum aetātem agere; sed ā quō inceptō studiōque mē ambitiō mala dētinuerat, eōdem regressus statuī rēs gestās populī Rōmāni carptim, ut quaeque memoriā dīgna vidēbantur, perscrībere; eō magis quod mihi ā spē, metū, partibus⁵ reī pūblicae animus līber erat. Igitur dē Catilīnae coniūratiōne quam vērissumē poterō paucis⁶ absolvam; nam id facinus in pīmīs

absolvō [ab+solvō], release, acquit; *here*, sum up, describe
abstinentia, -ae, f., abstinence; self-restraint, integrity
aequus, -a, -um, level, equal; fair; calm, composed
aspernor (1), disdain, reject, despise
L. Catilina, -ae, m., Lucius Catiline
carptim (adv.), in parts, separately
colō, colere, colui, cultus, till, tend; cultivate
conterō, conterere, contrīvi, contrītus, grind, wear out; consume, spend
→**corrumpō**, corrumpere, corrupi, corruptus, destroy, ruin; corrupt, entice
dēlictum, -i, n., offense, crime
dētineō [dē+teneō], hold back, detain; hinder, prevent
dissentiō [dis+sentiō], differ, disagree
imbēcillus, -a, -um, weak, feeble
→**inceptum**, -i, n., beginning, undertaking; purpose, subject

1. **ubi . . . memorēs**: the conjunction *ubi*, when used in a generalizing sense, introduces a clause whose verb is in the subjunctive.

2. **suprā ea**, a brachylogy for *ea quae suprā ea sunt*

īsolēns, -entis, unaccustomed (to), unfamiliar (with) (+gen.)
largitiō, -onis, f., generosity, largess; bribery
malivolentia, -ae, f., ill-will, dislike, malevolence
→**memorō** (1), mention, recount, tell
officium, -i, n., service, duty, function
→**plērusque**, plēraque, plērumque, a very great part; (pl.), very many, the majority, most
procul (adv.), at a distance, far, far off
reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendi, reprehēnsus, seize, catch; blame, censure
requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvi, requiētus, rest, find relief
socordia, -ae, f., laziness, indolence, inactivity
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, establish; decide
suprā (prep. + acc.), over, above, beyond
vigeō, vigēre, vigui, —, thrive, flourish

3. **rēs pūblica**, *here*, public life

4. **nihilō minus or nihilōminus** (adv.), no less, just as much

5. **par**, *here*, (political) party, faction

→6. **paucis**, sc., verbis

ego memorabile existumō sceleris atque periculi novitāte. Dē cuius hominis mōribus pauca prius explānanda sunt quam initium nārrandī faciam.

5. L. Catilīna, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingeniō malō prāvōque. Huic ab adulēscētiā bella intestīna, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia cīvili grāta fuēre, ibique iuventūtem suam exercuit. Corpus patiēns inediae, algōris, vigiliae, suprā quam cuiquam crēdibile est. Animus audāx, subdolus, varius, cuius reī lubet simulātor ac dissimulātor; aliēnī adpetēns, suī profūsus; ardēns in cupiditatibus; satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum. Vāstus animus inmoderāta, incrēdibilia, nimis alta semper cupiēbat. Hunc post dominatiōnem L. Sullae lubīdō maxuma invāserat reī pūblicae capiundae, neque id quibus modīs adsequerētur, dum sibi rēgnum parāret, quicquam pēnsī habēbat.¹ Agitābātur magis magisque in diēs² animus ferōx inopiā reī familiāris et cōscientiā scelerum, quae utraque eīs artibus auxerat quās suprā memorāvī. Incitābant praetereā corrupti cīvitātis mōrēs, quōs pessuma ac dīvorsa inter sē mala, luxuria atque avāritia, vexābant. Rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur, quoniam dē mōribus cīvitātis tempus admonuit, suprā repete ac paucīs īstitūta maiōrum domī militiaeque, quōmodō rem pūblicam habuerint quantamque relīquerint, ut³

admoneō [ad+moneō], bring to mind, remind, suggest
adpetēns, -entis , desirous (of), greedy (for) (+gen.)
adsequor [ad+sequor], gain, reach, attain
algor, -ōris, m. , cold
→ augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus , increase, grow; strengthen
L. Catilīna, -ae, m. , Lucius Catilīna
discordia, -ac, f. , discord, dissension, strife
dissimulātor, -ōris, m. , dissembler, concealer
→ dominatiō, -ōnis, f. , absolute rule, tyranny
ēloquentia, -ae, f. , eloquence
explānō (1), make plain, make clear, explain
→ familiāris, -e , of or belonging to the household
rēs familiāris , one's private property, estate, patrimony
ferōx, ferōcis , fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
incitō (1), rouse, excite, urge forward
inedia, -ae, f. , lack of food
inmoderātus, -a, -um , without measure, unrestrained, excessive

īstitūtum, -ī, n. , practice, custom; institution
intestīnus, -a, -um , internal
iuventūs, -tūtis, f. , youth, childhood
→ luxuria, -ae, f. , extravagance, excess, luxury
nārrō (1), tell, relate
→ nōbilis, -e , noble, prominent
pēnsum, -ī, n. , weight; importance
→ praetereā (adv.), besides, furthermore, in addition
prāvus, -a, -um , misshapen, twisted, corrupt, perverse
profūsus, -a, -um , generous, lavish
qui lubet (=libet), quae lubet, quod lubet (indef. adj.), any . . . you will, any . . . it pleases
rapīna, -ae, f. , plundering, pillaging
simulātor, -ōris, m. , feigner, pretender
subdolus, -a, -um , somewhat crafty, cunning
L. Sulla, -ae, m. , Lucius Sulla, a Roman dictator
→ suprā (adv.), above, beyond; further, more
varius, -a, -um , varying, changeable
vāstus, -a, -um , desolate; vast, immense
vigilia, -ae, f. , wakefulness

1. neque . . . quicquam pēnsī habēbat, nor did he consider as anything of weight; i.e., nor did he care

2. in diēs, day by day

3. ut, here, adv., how

paulātim immūtāta ex pulcherrumā <atque optumā> pessuma ac flāgitiōsis-
suma facta sit, disserere.

6. Urbem Rōmam, sicutī ego accēpī, condidēre atque habuēre initio Trōiānī,
qui Aenēā¹ duce profugī sēdibus incertīs vagābantur, cumque hīs Aborīginēs,
genus hominum agreste, sine lēgibus, sine imperiō, liberum atque solūtum. Hī
postquam in ūna² moenia convēnēre, disparī genere, dissimilī linguā, alias aliō
mōre vīventēs, incrēdibile memorātū est quam facile coaluerint: <ita brevī³
multitūdō dīversa atque vaga concordiā cīvitās facta erat.> Sed postquam rēs
eōrum cīvibus, mōribus, agrīs aucta satis prospēra satisque pollēns vidēbātur,
sicutī plēraque mortālium habentur,⁴ invidia ex opulentia orta est. Igitur rēgēs
populīque fīnitumī bellō temptārē,⁵ paucī ex amīcīs auxiliō esse; nam cēterī,
metū percūlsī, ā periculīs aberant. At Rōmānī, domī mīlitiaeque intentī festināre,
parāre, alias alium hortārī, hostibus obviam īre, libertātem, patriam parentēsque
armīs tegere. Post, ubi pericula virtūte prōpulerant, sociīs atque amīcīs auxilia
portābant, magisque dandīs quam accipiundīs beneficiīs amīcītiās parābant.
Imperium lēgitumum, nōmen imperiō rēgium habēbant. Dēlēctū, quibus corpus
annīs infirmum, ingenium sapientiā validum erat, reī pūblicae cōsultābant; eī
vel aetāte vel cūrae similitūdine patrēs appellābantur. Post, ubi rēgium
imperium, quod initio cōservandae libertātis⁶ atque augendae reī pūblicae⁶

Aborīginēs, -um, m. pl., the Aborigines, a tribe
in Italy from whom the Romans descended
Aenēā, -ae, m., Aeneas, Trojan son of Venus
and Anchises
agrestis, -e, rustic
appellō (1), name, call
coalēscō, **coalēscere**, **coalui**, **coalitus**, unite
concordia, -ae, f., harmony
condō, **condere**, **condidi**, **conditus**, found,
build
cōnservō [con+servō], save, preserve
cōsultō (1), reflect, consider, take counsel,
deliberate
dispar, **disparis**, unequal, different, dissimilar
dissērō, **dissērere**, **dissērui**, **dissertus**,
examine, discuss, treat
festinō (1), hasten, hurry, be quick
fīnitumus (=fīnitimus), -a, -um, bordering,
neighboring, kindred
flāgitiōsus, -a, -um, shameful, disgraceful,
infamous

lēgitumus (=lēgitimus), -a, -um, lawful,
legitimate
multitūdō, -tūdinis, f., large number, multitude
obviam (adv.), in the way, against, to meet, in
the face of
opulentia, -ae, f., wealth, opulence, affluence
percīllō, **percīllere**, **percūlī**, **percūlus**, beat
down, overturn; strike with consternation
pollēns, -entis, strong, able, powerful, thriving
prōpellō [prō+pellō], drive forth; drive away
prosperus, -a, -um, favorable, fortunate,
prosperous
rēgius, -a, -um, of a king, royal
sēdēs, -ēdis, -ium, f., seat; abode, dwelling
place
Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan
vagor (1), wander
vagus, -a, -um, wandering

1. Aeneas survived the destruction of his home city Troy, and, driven by fate, sailed to Italy to become the eventual ancestor of the Romans.

2. ūna, here, plural to agree with *moenia*

→3. brevī, sc., tempore

4. **habentur**, used instead of sē *habent*; sē
habēre, be, turn out

5. **temptō**, here, put to the test; attack

6. sc., causā

fuerat, in superbiam dominatiōnemque sē convertit, inmūtātō mōre annua imperia bīnōsque imperātōrēs sibi fēcēre; eō modō minumē posse putābant per licentiam īsolēscere animum hūmānum.

7. Sed eā tempestātē¹ coepēre sē quisque extollere magisque ingenium in promptū habēre. Nam rēgibus bonī quam malī suspectiōrēs sunt, semperque eis aliēna virtūs formīdulōsa est. Sed cīvitās incrēdibile memorātū est adeptā² libertāte quantum brevī crēverit; tanta cupidō glōriae incesserat. Iam prīmum³ iuuentūs, simul ac bellī patiēns erat, in castrīs per labōrem ūsū militiam discēbat, magisque in decōrīs armīs et militāribus equīs quam in scortīs atque convīviīs lubidinē habēbant. Igitur tālibus virīs nōn labor īsolitus, nōn locus ūllus asper aut arduus erat, nōn armātus hostis formīdulōsus; virtūs omnia domuerat. Sed glōriae maxumum certāmen inter ipsōs erat; sē quisque hostem ferīre, mūrum ascendere, cōspicī dum tāle facinus faceret, properābat;⁴ eās dīvitiās, eam bonam fāmam magnamque nōbilitātem putābant. Laudis avidī, pecūniae liberālēs erant; glōriam ingentem, dīvitiās honestās volēbant. Memorāre possum⁵ quibus in locīs maxumās hostium cōpiās populus Rōmānus parvā manū fūderit, quās urbīs nātūrā mūnitās pūgnandō cēperit, nī ea rēs longius nōs

→**adipiscor**, **adipisci**, **adeptus sum**, reach,
attain, obtain, get
annuus, -a, -um, of a year, lasting a year,
annual
arduus, -a, -um, steep; difficult, arduous
armō (1), arm
ascendō, **ascendere**, **ascendi**, **ascēnsus**, climb
up, ascend, scale
avidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager, greedy
bīni, -ae, -a, two each, two at a time
certāmen, -minis, n., contest, struggle, strife,
dispute
cōspicīō, **cōspicere**, **cōspexi**, **cōspectus**,
catch sight of, perceive, observe
convīvium, -ī, n., dinner-party, feast, banquet
convertō (=convertō), **convortere**, **convertī**,
convorsus, turn around, reverse; change,
transform
domō, **domāre**, **domui**, **domitus**, tame,
subdue, overcome
equus, -ī, m. or f., horse
extollō, **extollere**, —, —, raise up, elevate

ferīō, **ferīre**, —, —, strike, smite, beat
formīdulōsus, -a, -um, producing fear,
dreadful, terrible
fundō, **fundere**, **fūdi**, **fūsus**, pour, pour out;
overthrow, overcome
→**incēdō** [*in + cēdō*], advance, proceed; stride;
appear
īsolēscō, **īsolēscere**, —, —, grow haughty,
become arrogant
īsolitus, -a, -um, unaccustomed, unfamiliar,
unusual
liberālis, -e, bountiful, generous, liberal
licentia, -ae, f., liberty, license; presumption,
licentiousness
militāris, -e, pertaining to the military, of war
nōbilitās, -tatis, f., nobility, celebrity, renown
nī = *nīsī*
promptus, -a, -um, manifest; at hand, ready
 in promptū, at hand, ready
scortum, -ī, n., harlot, prostitute
suspectus, -a, -um, mistrusted, suspected

1. **tempestās**, here, time

2. **adipiscor**, although a deponent verb, here has a passive meaning.

3. **iam prīmum**, at the beginning, originally

4. **properō**, here, hasten (to bring it about that)
+ acc. + infin.

5. **possum** instead of **possem**; the indicative is often preferred in the apodosis of a contrary to fact conditional sentence when the verb is one of obligation, necessity, possibility, or ability.

ab inceptō traheret.

8. Sed profectō fortūna in omni rē dominātur; ea rēs cūntās ex lubidīne magis quam ex vērō celebrat obscūratque. Athēniēnsium rēs gestae,¹ sicuti ego aestumō, satis ampliae magnificaēque fuēre, vērum aliquantō minōrēs tamen quam fāmā feruntur. Sed quia prōvēnēre ibi scriptōrum magna ingenia, per terrārum orbem Athēniēnsium facta prō maxumis celebrantur. Ita eōrum qui fēcēre virtūs tanta habētūr, quantum eam verbīs potuēre extollere praeclāra ingenia. At populō Rōmānō numquam ea cōpia fuit, quia prūdentissimus quisque maxumē negōtiōsus erat; ingenium nēmō sine corpore exercēbat; optumus quisque facere quam dīcere, sua ab aliīs benefacta laudārī quam ipse aliōrum nārrāre mālēbat.

9. Igitur domī militiaeque² bonī mōrēs colēbantur, concordia maxuma, minima avāritia erat. Iūs bonumque apud eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat. Iurgia, discordiās, simultātēs cum hostibus exercēbant, cīvēs cum cīvibus dē virtūte certābant. In suppliciis³ deōrum magnifici, domī parcī, in⁴ amīcōs fidēlēs erant. Duābus hīs artibus, audāciā in bellō, ubi pāx ēvēnerat aequitāte, sēque remque pūblicam cūrābant. Quārum rērum ego maxuma documenta haec habeō, quod in bellō saepius vindicātum est in eōs qui contrā

- **aequitās, -tatis, f.**, evenness, calmness; equity, fairness
- **aliquantō** (adv.), somewhat, not a little
- Athēniēnsis, -e**, Athenian
- **avāritia, -ae, f.**, greed, avarice
- **celebrō** (1), make famous
- **certō** (1), struggle, contest, strive
- colō, colere, colui, cultus**, till, tend; cultivate
- concordia, -ae, f.**, harmony
- cūntus, -a, -um**, all
- cūrō** (1), care for, look after
- discordia, -ae, f.**, discord, dissension, strife
- documentum, -i, n.**, proof
- dominor** (1), be lord, hold sway, rule
- ēveniō [ē + ventō], come out, result, happen
- exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus, keep busy, occupy; exercise, train
- extollō, extollere, —, —, raise up, elevate; praise
- fidēlis, -e**, faithful
- fortūna, -ae, f.**, fortune, chance
- iurgium, -i, n.**, quarrel

- lubidō (=libidō), lubidinis, f.**, desire, pleasure, passion, lust
- **magnificus, -a, -um**, magnificent, splendid
- **militia, -ae, f.**, military service; warfare; war; soldiery
- nārrō** (1), tell, relate
- negōtiōsus, -a, -um**, busy, occupied, devoted to business
- obscūrō** (1), make obscure, cover up
- parcus, -a, -um**, sparing
- praeclārus, -a, -um**, splendid; famous
- **profectō** (adv.), in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly
- prōveniō [prō + ventō], come forth, appear
- prūdens, -entis**, wise, sensible, clever, discreet
- **sicuti or sicut** (conj.), just as
- simultās, -tatis, f.**, strife, enmity
- **trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus**, draw, drag; lead away; distract
- valeō, valēre, valui, valitus**, be strong, be able; fare well
- vindicō** (1), avenge, punish

→ 1. **rēs gestae**, accomplishments, deeds
→ 2. **domī militiaeque**, locatives, at home and in military service

3. **supplicium, here** (archaic), supplication, prayer
4. **in, here**, towards

imperium in hostem pūgnāverant quīque tardius revocāti proeliō excesserant, quam quī signa¹ relinquere aut pulsī locō cēdere ausī erant; in pāce vērō quod beneficiis magis quam metū imperium agitābant,² et acceptā iniūriā ignoscere quam persequī mālēbant.

10. Sed ubi labōre atque iūstitiā rēs pūblica crēvit, rēgēs magni bellō domitī, nātiōnēs ferae et populī ingentēs vī subāctī, Carthāgō, aemula imperi Rōmānī, ab stirpe interiit, cūncta maria terraeque patēbant, saevīre fortūna ac miscēre³ omnia coepit. Quī labōrēs, pericula, dubiās atque asperās rēs facile tolerāverant, eīs ūtium, dīvitiae, optanda aliās,⁴ onerī miseriaeque fuēre. Igitur prīmō pecūniae, deinde imperi cupīdō crēvit; ea quasi māteriēs omnium malōrum fuēre. Namque avāritia fidem, probitātem cēterāsque artīs bonās subvortit; prō hīs superbiam, crūdēlitātem, deōs neglegere, omnia vēnālia habēre ēdocuit. Ambitiō multōs mortālis falsōs fierī subēgit, aliud clausum in pectore, aliud in lingua promptum habēre, amīcitiās inimīcitiāsque nōn ex rē sed ex commodō aestumāre magisque voltum quam ingenium bonum habēre. Haec prīmō paulātim crēscere, interdum vindicārī; post, ubi contāgiō quasi pestilentia

aemulus , -a, -um, rivaling, vying with (+gen.)	→ mortālis , -e, mortal
aemula , -ae, f., rival	→ namque (conj.), for in fact
→ ambitiō , -ōnis, f., the soliciting of votes; flattery, adulation, favoritism; desire for power, ambition	→ nātiō , -ōnis, f., race, nation, tribe
→ asper , aspera , asperum , harsh, hard; adverse, perilous	onus , oneris , n., load, burden; trouble, difficulty
→ beneficiū , -i, n., favor, benefit, service, kindness	ōtium , -i, n., leisure, idleness
cēterī , -ae, -a, other, the rest	→ paulātim (adv.), little by little, by degrees, gradually
claudō , claudere , clausī , clausus , close	→ persequor [per + sequor], follow earnestly, pursue (with vengeance)
commodū , -i, n., convenience, advantage	pestilentia , -ae, f., plague
contāgiō , -ōnis, f., infection	prīmō (adv.), at first
cūnctus , -a, -um, all	probitās , -tatis, f., integrity, uprightness, honesty
→ cupīdō , cupīdinis , f., desire, passion	→ proelium , -i, n., battle
deinde (adv.), then, next, afterwards	promptus , -a, -um, manifest; at hand, ready
domāre , domui , domitus , tame, subdue, overcome	saeviō , saevīre , saeviī , saevītus , rage, be fierce
falsus , -a, -um, false	stirps , stirpis , -ium, f., root
ferus , -a, -um, wild; savage, fierce	→ subigō , subigere , subēgī , subāctus , drive under, force; subdue, conquer
fortūna , -ae, f., fortune, chance	subvertō (= subvertō) [<i>sub + vertō</i>], turn under, overturn, subvert, destroy
iniūria , -ae, f., injury, injustice	→ superbia , -ae, f., pride; arrogance, haughtiness
intereō [<i>inter + eō</i>], perish, be destroyed, disappear	tardus , -a, -um, slow; late
iūstitia , -ae, f., justice	→ tolerō (1), bear the weight of, endure, withstand
labor , -ōris, m., work, exertion; trouble, effort	vēnālis , -e, for sale
→ lingua , -ae, f., tongue; language	→ vindicō (1), avenge, punish
māteriēs , -ei, f., material; cause	

1. **signum**, here, standard

2. **agitō**, here, manage (continually), exercise

3. **misceō**, here, confuse, disturb

4. **aliās**, here, adv., elsewhere, in other circumstances

invāsit, cīvitās inmūtāta, imperium ex iūstissumō atque optumō crūdēle intolerandumque factum.

11. Sed pīmō magis ambitiō quam avāritia animōs hominum exercēbat, quod tamen vitium propius¹ virtūtem erat. Nam glōriam, honōrem, imperium bonus et ignāvos aequē sibi exoptant; sed ille vērā viā nītitur, huic, quia bonae artēs dēsunt, dolīs atque fallāciīs contendit. Avāritia pecūniae studium habet, quam nēmō sapiēns concupīvit; ea, quasi venēnīs malīs imbūta, corpus animumque virīlem effēminat; semper īfīnīta, īsatiābilis est, neque cōpiā neque inopiā minuitur. Sed, postquam L. Sulla, armīs receptā rē pūblicā, bonīs initiīs malōs ēventūs habuit, rapere omnēs, trahere, domum aliis, aliis agrōs cupere, neque modum neque modestiam victōrēs habēre, foeda crūdēliaque in cīvīs facinora facere. Hūc accēdēbat² quod L. Sulla exercitum quem in Asiā ductāverat, quō sibi fidūm faceret, contrā mōrem maiōrum luxuriōsē nimisque liberāliter habuerat. Loca amoena, voluptāria facile in otiō ferōcīs mīlitum animōs molliverant. Ibi pīmum īsuēvit exercitus populī Rōmānī amāre, pōtāre, signa,³ tabulās pictās, vāsa caelāta mīrāri, ea prīvātim et pūblicē rapere, dēlūbra

aequē (adv.), equally	īsuēscō, īsuēscere, īsuēvi, īsuētus, grow accustomed
amoenus, -a, -um, pleasing (to the senses), beautiful, attractive, charming	intolerandus, -a, -um, unbearable
caelō (1), work in relief, emboss	iūstus, -a, -um, just, fair, right; well-founded
concupiscō, concupiscere, concupīvī, concupītus, desire, long for, covet	liberāliter (adv), generously, lavishly
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, exert oneself, strive, contend	luxuriōsē (adv.), extravagantly, sumptuously
→dēlūbrum, -i, n., shrine	minuō, minuere, minui, minutus, reduce, diminish
dolus, -i, m., deceit, trick, treachery	→modestia, -ae, f., moderation, self-restraint, temperance
ductō (1), be in command of	mollīō, mollīre, mollivī, mollitus, soften, weaken
effēminō (1), make feminine; weaken	nītor, nīti, nīxus or nīsus sum, rest upon, rely on (+abl.); make an effort, strive
ēventus, -ūs, m., outcome, result	pictus, -a, -um, painted, of various colors
exercitus, -ūs, m., army	pōtō (1), drink
fallācia, -ae, f., fraud, deceit	prīvātim (adv.), as an individual; in private, privately
ferōx, ferōcīs, fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant	propior, propius, nearer, closer
fidus, -a, -um, faithful, loyal, trustworthy	L. Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Sulla, a Roman dictator
foedus, -a, -um, foul, filthy, shameful	tabula, -ae, f., board; writing tablet; picture
ignāvos (=ignāvus), -a, -um, lazy; cowardly; worthless	vās, vāsis, n. (pl. =vāsa, -ōrum), dish, vessel
imbuō, imbuere, imbuī, imbūtus, soak, imbue, taint	venēnum, -i, n., poison, drug
īnfinītus, -a, -um, without limit, boundless	voluptārius, -a, -um, giving enjoyment, pleasurable, luxurious
→inmūtō (=immūtō) [in+mūtō], change, alter, transform	
īnsatiābilis, -e, insatiable	

1. *propius*, comparative adj. modifying *vitium*, but also governing the accusative *virtūtem*: nearer to ...

2. *accēdō*, here and frequently, be added

3. *signum*, here, statue, bust

spoliāre, sacra profānaque omnia polluere. Igitur ei mīlitēs, postquam victōriam adeptī sunt, nihil relicuī victis fēcēre. Quippe secundae rēs sapientium animōs fatīgant; nē¹ illi corruptis mōribus victōriae temperārent.²

12. Postquam dīvitiae honōrī esse coepēre et eās glōria, imperium, potentia sequēbātur, hebēscere virtūs, paupertās probrō habērī, innocentia prō malivolentiā dūci coepit. Igitur ex dīvitiis iuventūtem luxuria atque avāritia cum superbiā invāsēre; rapere, cōnsūmēre, sua parvī pendere, alīēna cupere, pudōrem, pudicitiam, dīvīna atque hūmāna prōmiscua, nihil pēnsī neque moderātī habēre. Operae pretium³ est, cum domōs atque vīllās cognōveris in urbium modum⁴ exaedificātās, vīsere templa deōrum quae nostrī maiōrēs, religiōsissimū mortālēs, fēcēre. Vērum illi dēlūbra deōrum pietāte, domōs suās glōriā decorābant; neque victis quicquam praeter iniūriae licentiam ēripiēbant. At hī contrā, ignāvissimū hominēs, per summum scelus omnia ea sociis adimere, quae fortissimū virī victōrēs relīquerant: proinde quasi⁵ iniūriam facere, id dēmum esset imperiō ūti.

13. Nam quid ea memorem quae nisī eīs qui vīdēre nēminī crēdibilia sunt, ā

adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptus, take away, take from
cōnsūmō, cōnsūmēre, cōnsūmpsi, cōnsūmptus, consume, squander, use up
decorō (1), adorn, embellish, beautify, decorate
dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine
exaedificō (1), finish building, erect, build
fatigō (1), weary, harass; wear down, break down
hebēscō, hebēscere, —, —, become dull
ignāvus, -a, -um, lazy; cowardly; worthless
innocentia, -ae, f., blamelessness, innocence, integrity
licentia, -ae, f., liberty, license; presumption, licentiousness
malivolentia, -ae, f., ill-will, dislike, malevolence
moderātum, -i, n., moderation
opera, -ae, f., work, service; effort
pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, weigh; consider, value, esteem
pēnsum, -i, n., weight; importance
pietās, -tatis, f., dutifulness, devotion, loyalty
polluō, polluere, pollui, pollūtus, make foul, pollute, defile

potentia, -ae, f., (illegitimate) power
 → **praeter** (prep. + acc.), except, beyond, besides
proinde (adv.), hence, therefore, accordingly
probrum, -i, n., shameful act, disgrace, dishonor
profānus, -a, -um, not sacred, common; profane, unholy
prōmisscuus, -a, -um, mixed, without distinction, in common
 → **pudicitia, -ae, f.**, modesty, chastity, virtue
quippe (adv.), of course, as you see, obviously, naturally
religiōsus, -a, -um, conscientious, scrupulous; pious, devout
sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred
secundus, -a, -um, following, second; favorable, fortunate
spoliō (1), strip; plunder, pillage
temporō (1), be moderate, forbear, set a limit to (+ dat.)
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus, go to see, visit; view, behold

1. **nē** = *nēdum* (adv.), by no means, much less, still less

2. **temperārent**, past potential subjunctive

3. **operae pretium**, something worth the effort

4. **in modum**, like, on the scale of (+ gen.)

5. **proinde quasi**, just as if (introducing a protasis)

privatīs complūribus subvorsōs montīs, maria cōstrāta esse? Quibus mihi videntur lūdibriō fuisse dīvitiae; quippe quās honestē habēre licēbat abūtī per turpitūdinem properābant. Sed lubidō stuprī, gāneae cēterīque¹ cultūs nōn minor incesserat: virī muliebria patī, mulierēs pudicitiam in prōpatulō habēre; vescendi causā terrā mariquē omnia exquirere, dormīre prius quam somni cupidō esset, nōn famem aut sitim, neque frīgus neque lassitūdinem opperīrī, sed ea omnia luxū antecapere. Haec iuventūtem, ubi familiārēs opēs dēfēcerant, ad facinora incendēbant. Animus inbūtus malīs artibus haud facile lubidinibus carēbat; eō profūsius omnibus modīs quaestuī atque sumptuī dēditus erat.

14. In tantā tamque corruptā cīvitāte Catilīna, id quod factū facillumum erat, omnium flāgitiorum atque facinorum circum sē tamquam stīpātōrum catervās habēbat. Nam quīcumque in pudicūs, adulter, gāneō, manū, ventre, pēne, bona patria lacerāverat, quīque alienū aes grande cōflāverat quō flāgitium aut facinus redimeret, praetereā omnēs undique parricīdae, sacrilegi convictī iūdiciīs aut prō factīs iūdiciū timentēs, ad hoc² quōs manus atque lingua periūriō aut

abūtor [<i>ab + ūtor</i>], abuse (+abl.)	
adulter, adulterī , <i>m.</i> , adulterer, seducer	
aes, aeris , <i>n.</i> , copper, bronze; money	
<aes> alienū, <i>aeris alienī</i>, <i>n.</i>, debt, indebtedness</aes>	
antecapiō [<i>ante + capiō</i>], obtain in advance; anticipate	
caterva, -ae , <i>f.</i> , crowd, throng, band	
cōnsterñō, cōnsterñere, cōnstrāvī, cōnstrātus , cover, spread	
convincō [<i>con + vincō</i>], refute, convict, expose	
cultus, -ūs , <i>m.</i> , culture, refinement; dissipation	
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus , give up, surrender, deliver; dedicate	
dēficiō [<i>dē + faciō</i>], be wanting, fail, disappear, run out	
dormiō, dormire, dormīvī, dormītus , sleep	
exquirō, exquirere, exquisīvī, exquisītus , search out, seek diligently	
famēs, famis , <i>f.</i> , hunger	
frigus, frigoris , <i>n.</i> , cold, coldness, chill	
gānea, -ae , <i>f.</i> , eating-house; gluttonous eating	
gāneō, -ōnis , <i>m.</i> , glutton, debauchee	
grandis, -e , great, large	
inbuō (=imbuō) , <i>inbuere, inbui, inbūtus</i> , soak, imbue, taint	
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus , kindle, inflame; rouse, excite	
inpuđicus (=impudicus) , <i>-a, -um</i> , without modesty, shameless, impudent	

lacerō (1), mangle, mutilate; waste, squander	
lassitūdō, -tūdīnis , <i>f.</i> , faintness, weariness, lassitude	
lūdibrium , <i>-i</i> , <i>n.</i> , mockery, laughing-stock, jest	
luxus, -ūs , <i>m.</i> , excess, indulgence, luxury; opulence	
muliebris, -e , of a woman, womanly, feminine	
mulier, mulieris , <i>f.</i> , woman	
opperīrī, opperīrī, oppertus sum , wait for	
parricida, -ae , <i>m. or f.</i> , murderer	
patrius, -a, -um , of a father, paternal, ancestral	
pēnis, pēnis , <i>m.</i> , penis	
periūrium, -i , <i>n.</i> , false oath, perjury	
profūsus, -a, -um , generous, lavish	
prōpatulūm, -i , <i>n.</i> , an open place in prōpatulō, publicly	
quaestus, -ūs , <i>m.</i> , gain, profit, income	
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef. rel. pron. or adj.), whoever, whatever	
quippe (adv.), of course, as you see, obviously, naturally	
redimō, redimere, redēmī, redēmptus , redeem, buy off, compensate for	
sacrilegus, -a, -um , impious, sacrilegious	
sitis, sitis , <i>f.</i> , thirst (siti = acc. sing.)	
stīpātor, -ōris , <i>m.</i> , attendant, satellite, follower	
subvortō (=subvertō) [sub + vertō], turn under, overturn, subvert, destroy	
sumptus, -ūs , <i>m.</i> , outlay, expense	
vescor, vescī , —, feed upon, eat	

1. The singular of *cēterī* here is archaic.

2. *ad hoc*, here, in addition to this, moreover

sanguine cīvili alēbat, postrēmō omnēs quōs flāgitium, egestās, cōncius animus exagitābat, eī Catilīnae proxumī familiārēsque erant. Quod sī quis etiam ā culpā vacuuus in amīcitiam eius inciderat, cottidiānō ūsū atque illecebrīs facile pār similisque cēterīs efficiēbātur.¹ Sed maxumē adulēscētūm familiāritātēs adpetēbat; eōrum animī mollēs etiam² et fluxī dolīs haud difficulter capiēbantur. Nam ut cuiusque studium ex aetāte flagrābat, aliīs scorta praebēre, aliīs canēs atque equōs mercāri, postrēmō neque sumptuī neque modestiae suae parcere dum illōs obnoxiōs fidōsque sibi faceret. Sciō fuisse nōnnūllōs qui ita exīstumārent iuventūtem, quae domum Catilīnae frequentābat, parum honestē pudīcitiam habuisse; sed ex aliīs rēbus magis quam quod cuiquam id compertum foret³ haec fāma valēbat.

15. Iam prīmū⁴ adulēscēns Catilīna multa nefanda stupra fēcerat, cum virgine nōbīlī, cum sacerdōte Vestae, alia huiuscemodi⁵ contrā iūs fāsque. Postrēmō captus amōre Aurēliae Orestillae, cuius praeter fōrmam nihil umquam bonus laudāvit, quod ea nūbere illī dubitābat, timēns privignum adultā aetāte, prō certō⁶ crēditur necātō filiō vacuam domum scelestīs nūptiīs fēcisse. Quae

adpetō [ad+petō], strive after, court
adultus, -a, -um, mature
alō, alere, alui, altus or alitus, nourish,
 support; increase
Aurēlia Orestilla, -ae, f., Aurelia Orestilla
canis, canis, m. or f., dog
cōncius, -a, -um, sharing knowledge, privy,
 knowing; guilty
cottidiānus, -a, -um, daily
difficulter (adv.), with difficulty, reluctantly
dolus, -i, m., deceit, trick, treachery
→egestās, -tātis, f., indigence, need, want
equus, -i, m. or f., horse
exagitō [ex+agitō], stir up, rouse, torment
familiāritās, -tātis, f., familiarity, intimacy,
 friendship
fās (indecl.), n., (what is divinely) right
flagrō (1), flame, blaze; be inflamed with
 passion, be stirred
fluxus, -a, -um, flowing, loose; weak, fleeting,
 perishable
frequentō (1), visit frequently, frequent
illecebra, -ae, f., attraction, allurement
incidō, incidere, incidi, incāsus, fall into,
 come into by chance

mercor (1), buy, purchase
necō (1), kill, slay
nefandus, -a, -um, unspeakable
nōbīlis, -e, noble, prominent
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus, marry (+dat.)
 (used of a woman marrying)
nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl., marriage, wedding
obnoxius, -a, -um, submissive, obedient,
 obliged
→postrēmō (adv.), finally, at last; in a word
praebēō, praebēre, praebui, praebitus, give,
 grant, furnish, supply
praeter (prep.+acc.), except, beyond, besides
privignus, -i, m., stepson
sacerdōs, -dōtis, m. or f., priest, priestess
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood
scelestus, -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accursed
scortum, -i, n., harlot, prostitute
stuprum, -i, n., debauchery; prey
sumptus, -ūs, m., outlay, expense
vacuus, -a, -um, empty; free
Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta, goddess of the hearth
virgō, virginis, f., maiden, virgin

1. **efficiō**, here, make

2. **etiam**, here, still

3. **compertum foret** = *compertum esset*

4. **Iam prīmū**, in transition to a new topic, to begin with, first of all

5. **huiuscemodi**, of this kind (note emphatic suffix -ce)

6. **prō certō**, as or for a certainty

quidem rēs mihi in p̄imīs¹ vidētur causa fuisse facinoris mātūrandī. Namque animus impūrus, dīs hominibusque īfestus, neque vigiliīs neque quiētibus sēdārī poterat; ita cōscientia mentem excitam vāstābat. Igitur colōs eī exsanguis, foedī oculī, citus modo, modo tardus incessus; prōrsus in faciē voltūque vēcordia inerat.

20. Catilīna, ubi eōs, quōs paulō ante memorāvī, convēnisse videt, tametsī cum singulīs multa saepe ēgerat, tamen in rem² fore crēdēns ūivorsōs appellāre et cohortārī, in abditam partem aedium sēcēdit atque ibi, omnibus arbitrīs procul āmōtīs, ḥrātiōnem huiuscemodi³ habuit:⁴

“Nī virtūs fidēsque vostra satis spectāta mihi⁵ forent,⁶ nēquiām opportūna rēs cecidisset; spēs magna, dominātiō in manibus frūstrā fuissent, neque ego per ignāviam aut vāna ingenia incerta prō certīs captārem. Sed quia multīs et magnīs tempestātibus⁷ vōs cognōvī fortīs fidēsque mihi, eō⁸ animus ausus est maximum atque pulcherrum facinus incipere, simul quia vōbīs eadem quae mihi bona malaque esse intellēxi; nam idem velle atque idem nōlle, ea dēnum firma amīctia est. Sed ego quae mente agitāvī⁹ omnēs iam anteā dīvorsi audīstis. Cēterum mihi in diēs¹⁰ magis animus accenditur, cum cōsiderō quae condiciō

abdō, abdere, abdidi, abdītus, bury, hide
accendō, accendere, accendi, accēnsus, set
 fire to, kindle; arouse, inflame
aedēs, aedis, -ium, f. (sg. and pl.), temple;
 house
āmoveō [ā + moveō], remove, get rid of
anteā (adv.), previously, before
appellō (1), speak to; address
arbiter, arbitrī, m., eyewitness, onlooker
captō (1), try to catch; strive after, pursue
cēterum (conj.), otherwise, besides; on the
 other hand, but yet
citus, -a, -um, swift, fast
cohortor [con + hortor], encourage, exhort
colōs (=color), -ōris, m., color, complexion
condiciō, -ōnis, f., agreement; situation,
 condition
cōsiderō (1), examine; contemplate, consider
excīō or excieō, excīre or exciēre, excīvī or
 excīl, excītus or excītus, rouse, stir up
exsanguis, -e, bloodless, lifeless
faciēs, -ēi, f., appearance, face
firmus, -a, -um, reliable

foedus, -a, -um, foul, filthy, shameful
ignāvia, -ae, f., laziness; cowardice
impūrus, -a, -um, unclean, defiled, impure
incecessus, -ūs, m., gait, walk
īfestus, -a, -um, hostile, harmful
mātūrō (1), ripe, mature
namque (conj.), for in fact
nēquiām (adv.), in vain
nī = nīst
opportūnus, -a, -um, suitable, fit; favorable
procul (adv.), at a distance, far, far off
prōrsus (adv.), utterly, precisely; in short
quiēs, quiētis, f., rest, repose
sēcēdō [sē + cēdō], withdraw
sēdō (1), settle, calm, assuage
singuli, -ae, -a, one at a time
tardus, -a, -um, slow
ūivorsus (=ūiversus), -a, -um, entire; (pl.)
 all together
vānus, -a, -um, empty; useless
vāstō (1), lay waste, ravage, destroy
vēcordia, -ae, f., insanity, illness
vigilia, -ae, f., wakefulness

1. **in p̄imīs**, especially, in particular

2. **in rem**, advantageous, to his purpose

3. **huiuscemodi**, of this kind (note emphatic enclitic *-ce*)

4. **ōrātiōnem habēre**, deliver a speech

5. **mihi**, dative of agent

6. **spectāta . . . forent** = spectāta . . . essent

7. **tempestās, here**, crisis

8. **eō**, for that reason, therefore

9. **agitō, here**, consider, deliberate

10. **in diēs**, day by day

vītae futūra sit nisī nōsmet¹ ipsī vindicāmus² in libertātem. Nam postquam rēs pūblica in paucōrum potentium iūs atque diciōnem concessit, semper illis rēgēs, tetrarchae vectigālēs esse, populī, nātiōnēs stīpendia pendere; cēterī omnēs, strēnuī, bonī, nōbilēs atque ignōbilēs, volgus suimus sine grātiā, sine auctōritāte, eīs obnoxiī quibus, sī rēs pūblica valēret, formidinī essēmus. Itaque omnis grātia, potentia, honōs, dīvitiae apud illōs sunt aut ubi illī volunt; nōbīs relīquēre repulsās, perīcula, iūdicia, egestātem. Quae quō ūsque³ tandem patiēminī, o fortissumī virī? Nōnne ēmorī per virtūtem praestat quam vītam miseram atque inhonestam, ubi aliēnae superbiae lūdibriō fueris, per dēdecus āmittere? Vērum enim vērō,⁴ prō⁵ deum atque hominum fidem, victōria in manū nōbīs est. Viget aetās, animus valet; contrā illīs annīs atque dīvitiīs omnia cōnsenuērunt. Tantum modo⁶ inceptō opus est; cētera rēs expediet. Etenim quis mortālīum, cui virile ingenium est, tolerāre potest illīs dīvitiās superāre⁷ quās profundant in exstruendō marī et montibus coaequandīs, nōbīs rem familiārem etiam ad necessāria dēesse? Illōs bīnās aut amplius domōs continuāre, nōbīs larem familiārem nusquam ūllum esse? Cum tabulās, signa,⁸ toreumata emunt, nova

bīni, -ae, -a, two each, two at a time
coaequō (1), make level, level
concēdō [*con* + *cēdō*], give way, yield; pass
cōsenēscō, **cōsenēscere**, **cōsensuī**, —, grow old, grow weak
continuō (1), make continuous, join
dēdecus, **dēdecoris**, n., shame, disgrace
diciō, -onis, f., authority, sovereignty, sway
ēmorior [ē + morior], die
expediō, **expedire**, **expedīvī or expediī**, **expeditus**, disentangle, let loose; settle, set right, work out
exstruō, **exstruere**, **exstrūxī**, **exstrūctus**, build (up)
formidō, **formidinis**, f. fear
honōs = honor
itaque (conj.), and so, therefore
lār, **laris**, m., household god; hearth, home
lūdibrium, -i, n., mockery, laughing-stock, jest
necessārius, -a, -um, inevitable, necessary
necessāria, -ium, n. pl. necessities (of life)

obnoxius, -a, -um, submissive, obedient, obliged
pendō, **pendere**, **pependī**, **pēnsus**, weigh; pay
potēns, -entis, powerful, influential
potentia, -ae, f., (illegitimate) power
praestō, **praestāre**, **praestītī**, **praestātus**, be preferable, be better
profundō, **profundere**, **profūdī**, **profūsus**, pour forth; squander, waste
repulsa, -ae, f., rejection, denial, defeat
stīpendium, **stīpendīi**, n., tax, tribute
→strēnuus, -a, -um, active, vigorous, energetic
tabula, -ae, f., board; writing tablet; picture
tetrarchae, -ārum, m. pl., rulers of quarters of kingdoms, petty foreign princes
toreuma, **toreumatis**, n., engraving in relief; embossed work
vectigālis, -e, subject to tax or tribute, tributary
vigeō, **vigēre**, **vigui**, —, thrive, flourish
volgus (= *vulgus*), -i, n., the multitude, the public; crowd, mob

1. **nōsmet** = *nōs* + *-met* (enclitic); the enclitic is attached to and intensifies personal and reflexive pronouns.
2. **vindicō**, *here*, deliver, liberate
3. **quō ūsque**, up to what point, how far
4. **vērum enim vērō**, but at the same time
5. **prō**, *interjection emphasizing an exclamation*, by

6. **tantum modo or tantummodo** (adv.), only, just
7. **superō**, *here*, be in excess, exist in abundance
8. **signum**, *here*, statue, bust

dīruunt, alia aedificant, postrēmō omnibus modīs pecūniā trahunt,¹ vexant,² tamen summā lubidīne dīvitias suās vincere nequeunt. At nōbīs est domī inopia, forīs aes aliēnum, mala rēs, spēs multō asperior; dēnique, quid relicū habēmus praeter miseram animam? Quīn³ igitur expergiscimini? Ēn illa, illa quam saepe optāstis, libertās, praetereā dīvitiae, decus, glōria in oculīs sita sunt; fortūna omnia ea victōribus praemia posuit. Rēs, tempus, pericula, egestās, bellī spolia magnifica magis quam ḫrātiō mea vōs hortantur. Vel imperātōre vel mīlite mē ūtiminī; neque animus neque corpus ā vōbīs aberit. Haec ipsa, ut spērō, vōbīscum ūnā cōsul agam nisi forte mē animus fallit et vōs servīre magis quam imperāre parātī estis."

24. Igitur comitiīs habitīs, cōsulēs dēclārantur M. Tullius et C. Antōnius; quod factum prīmō populārīs coniūrātiōnis concusserat. Neque tamen Catilīnae furor minuēbātur, sed in diēs⁴ plūra agitāre, arma per Italiam locīs opportūnīs parāre, pecūniām suā aut amīcōrum fidē sūmptam mūtuam Faesulās ad Manlium quendam portāre, qui posteā pīnceps fuit bellī faciundī. Eā tempestātē⁵ plūrumōs cuiusque generis hominēs adscīvisse sibi dīcitur, mulierēs etiam aliquot, quae prīmō ingentīs sumptūs stuprō corporis tolerāverant, post, ubi aetās tantummodo quaestū neque luxuriaē modum fēcerat, aes aliēnum

adscīscō, adscīscere, adscīvī, adscītus, take (to oneself), associate, admit
aedificō (1), build, construct, erect
aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; money
aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, n., debt, indebtedness
aliquot (indecl. adj.), several
C. Antōnius, -ī, m., Gaius Antonius, consul with Cicero in 63 B.C.
comitia (cōsulāria), comitiōrum (cōsulārium), n. pl., election (of consuls)
conciutō, concutere, concussī, concussus, shake, strike; distress; stir up, arouse
dēclārō (1), make known, announce, declare
decus, decoris, n., grace, beauty; honor, glory; moral dignity
dīruō [*dis+ruō*], demolish, destroy
ēn (interj.), look! behold!
expergiscor, expergisci, experrēctus sum, wake up; rouse oneself
Faesulæ, -ārum, f. pl., Faesulæ, a town in Etruria (modern Fiesole)
fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus, deceive

forīs (adv.), outdoors, outside; away from home
minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus, reduce, diminish
mulier, mulieris, f., woman
mūtuus, -a, -um, borrowed, lent; reciprocal, mutual, shared
nequeō, nequīre, nequīvī, nequītus, be unable
opportūnus, -a, -um, suitable, fit; favorable
populāris, populāris, -ium, m., countryman; associate, accomplice
posteā (adv.), afterwards, after this
quaestus, -ūs, m., gain, profit, income
serviō, servīre, servīvī or servīī, servītus, serve, be a slave
situs, -a, -um, placed, set, situated
spoliū, -ī, n., spoil
sūmō, sūmēre, sūmpsi, sūmptus, take, take up; get, procure
sūmptus, -ūs, m., outlay, expense
tantummodo (adv.), only, merely, just
M. Tullius, -ī, m., Marcus Tullius, *prāenomen* and *nōmen* of Cicero

1. **trahō**, here, dissipate, waste

2. **vexō**, here, ravage, devastate, make inroads on

3. **quīn**, introducing a question, why . . . not

4. **in diēs**, day by day

5. **tempestās**, here, time

grande cōflāverant. Per eās sē Catilīna crēdēbat posse servitia urbāna sollicitāre, urbem incendere, virōs eārum vel adiungere sibi vel interficere.

25. Sed in eīs erat Semprōnia, quae multa saepe virīlis audāciae facinora commiserat.¹ Haec mulier genere atque fōrmā, praetereā virō, līberīs satis fortūnāta fuit; litterīs Graecīs et Latīnīs docta, psallere, saltāre ēlegantius quam necesse est probae, multa alia, quae īstrūmenta luxuriaē sunt. Sed eī cāriōra semper omnia quam decus atque pudīcitia fuit; pecūniae an fāmae minus parceret haud facile discernerēs; lubidō sīc accēnsa ut saepius peteret virōs quam peterētur. Sed ea saepe antehāc fidem prōdiderat, crēditum abiūrāverat, caedis cōnschia fuerat, luxuriā atque inopiā praeceps abierat.² Vērum ingenium eius haud absurdum: posse versūs facere, iocum movēre, sermōne ūtī vel modestō, vel molli, vel procāci; prōrsus multae facētiae multusque lepōs inerat.

53. Postquam Catō adsēdit, cōsulārēs omnēs itemque senātūs magna pars sententiam eius laudant, virtūtem animī ad caelum ferunt; aliī aliōs increpantēs timidōs vocant. Catō clārus atque magnus habētur; senātī³ dēcrētum fit sicutī ille cēnsuerat. Sed mihi multa legentī, multa audientī quae populus Rōmānus domī

abiūrō (1), deny or disclaim on oath; forswear	
absurdus , -a, -um, discordant; uncivilized; uncouth	
accendō , accendere , accendi , accēnsus , set fire to, kindle; arouse, inflame	
adsidō , adsidere , adsedī , —, sit down, resume one's seat	
antehāc (adv.), before this time, previously	
→ M. Catō , Catōnis , m., Marcus Cato	
cēnseō , cēnsēre , cēnsui , cēnsus , think, deem; recommend, propose	
cōnscius , -a, -um, sharing knowledge, privy, knowing	
crēditum , -i, n., loan, trust	
dēcrētum , -i, n., resolution, decree	
discernō , discernere , discrēvi , discrētus , separate, distinguish	
ēlegāns , -antis, select, tasteful, elegant	
facētiae , -ārum, f. pl., wit, drollery, humor	
fortūnātus , -a, -um, fortunate	
grandis , -e, great, large	
incendō , incendere , incendi , incēnsus , kindle, inflame; rouse, excite	
increpō , increpāre , increpūi , increpitus , make a noise, roar; reprove, upbraid	

īstrūmentum , -i, n., tool, equipment	
iocus , -i, m., jest, joke	
iocum movēre , provoke laughter	
→ item (adv.), similarly, in turn, likewise	
Latīnus , -a, -um, Latin	
lepōs , -ōris, m., pleasantness, charm	
modestus , -a, -um, moderate, modest, unassuming	
mulier , mulieris , f., woman	
praeceps , praecipitīs , headlong, impetuous	
probus , -a, -um, upright, virtuous, honorable	
procāx , procācis , impudent; licentious; frivolous	
prōdō , prōdere , prōdidī , prōditus , betray	
prōrsus (adv.), utterly, precisely; in short	
psallō , psallere , psallī , —, play (on) the cithara	
saltō (1), dance	
Semprōnia , -ae, f., Sempronia	
sermō , -ōnis, m., conversation	
servitium , -i, n., slavery; (pl.) slave population	
sollicitō (1), trouble, disturb; stir, rouse	
timidus , -a, -um, fearful, cowardly	
urbānus , -a, -um, of the city	
versus , -ūs, m., line of poetry, verse	

1. **committō** [con+mittō], *here*, perpetrate, commit

2. **abeō**, *here*, go astray

3. The genitive singular of *senātus* is occasionally *senātī*.

militiaeque, mari atque terrā, praeclara facinora fēcit, forte lubuit adtendere quae rēs maxumē tanta negōtia sustinuisse. Sciēbam saepe numerō parvā manū cum magnis legiōnibus hostium contendisse; cognōveram parvīs cōpiīs bella gesta cum opulentīs rēgibus; ad hoc¹ saepe fortūnae violentiam tolerāvisse; fācundiā Graecōs, glōriā bellī Gallōs ante Rōmānōs fuisse. Ac mihi multa agitanti² cōstābat paucōrum cīvium ēgregiam virtūtem cūcta patrāvisse, eōque factum³ utī dīvitās paupertās, multitūdinem paicitās superāret. Sed postquam luxū atque dēsidiā cīvitās corrupta est, rursus rēs pūblica magnitūdine suā imperātorum atque magistrātū vitia sustentābat ac, sīcūfī tēffēta parentum,† multīs tempestātibus⁴ haud sānē quisquam Rōmae virtūte magnus fuit. Sed memoriā meā ingentī virtūte, dīvorsīs mōribus fuēre virī duo, M. Catō et C. Caesar. Quōs quoniam rēs obtulerat, silentiō praeterire nōn fuit cōnsilium quīn⁵ utrīusque nātūram et mōrēs, quantum ingeniō possum, aperīrem.⁶

54. Igitur eīs genus, aetās, ēloquentia, prope⁷ aequālia fuēre; magnitūdō animī pār, item glōria, sed alia aliī. Caesar beneficiīs ac mūnificentiā magnus habēbātur, integritatē vītae Catō. Ille mānsuētūdine et misericordiā clārus factus, huic sevēritās dīgnitātem addiderat. Caesar dandō, sublevandō, Ignōscendō, Catō nihil largiundō glōriam adeptus est. In alterō miserīs perfugium erat, in alterō

addō, addere, addidi, additus, add; confer
adtendō (= attendō), attendere, attendi,
 attendens, pay attention to; consider, note
aequālis, -e, equal
C. Caesar, Caesaris, m., Gaius Julius Caesar
cōstat, cōstāre, cōstitut, it is agreed; it is
 apparent
contendō, contendere, contendi, contentus,
 exert oneself, strive, contend
dīgnitās, -tatis, f., worthiness, dignity, status,
 esteem
effētus, -a, -um, worn out (from childbearing),
 exhausted
ēgregius, -a, -um, outstanding, distinguished
ēloquentia, -ae, f., eloquence
fācundia, -ae, f., eloquence
Gallus, -i, m., inhabitant of Gaul, a Gaul
integritatē, -tatis, f., (moral) uprightness,
 probity, integrity
largior, largiri, largitus sum, give generously,
 bestow, lavish; bribe
legiō, -ōnis, f., legion; large force

Iubet (=libet), Iubēre, Iubuit or Iubitum est
 (impersonal), it pleases, it is pleasing
luxus, -ūs, m., excess, indulgence, luxury;
 opulence
magistrātus, -ūs, m., magistracy; magistrate
magnitūdō, -tūdinis, f., size, greatness,
 magnitude
mānsuētūdō, -tūdinis, f., mildness, clemency
misericordia, -ae, f., pity
mūnificientia, -ae, f., munificence, generosity
opulentus, -a, -um, wealthy; powerful
patrō (1), accomplish, perform
perfugium, -i, n., refuge, sanctuary
praeterēō [praeter + eō], go by, pass by; pass
 over
rurus (adv.), again; on the other hand, by
 contrast
sānē (adv.), certainly, to be sure
sublevō (1), raise up, support
sustentō (1), uphold; endure, bear up against
utī (conj.) = ut
violentia, -ae, f., violence; force

1. See page 71, note 2.

2. **agitō, here**, consider, deliberate

3. **factum, sc., est, it happened**

4. **tempestās, here**, time, occasion

5. **quīn . . . aperīrem, a clause of prevention,**
 without explaining . . .

6. **aperīō, here**, reveal; explain

7. **prope, here and frequently, adv., nearly,**
 almost

malis perniciēs. Illius facilitās, huius cōstantia laudābātur. Postrēmō Caesar in animum indūixerat¹ labōrāre, vigilāre, negōtiis amicōrum intentus sua neglegere, nihil dēnegāre quod dōnō dīgnū esset; sibi magnum imperium, exercitū, bellū novom exoptābat ubi virtūs ēnitēscere posset. At Catōnī studium modestiae, decoris, sed maxumē sevēritatis erat. Nōn dīvitiis cum dīvite neque factiōne cum factiōsō, sed cum strēnuō virtūte, cum modestō pudōre, cum innocentē² abstinentiā certābat. Esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat; ita, quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illum assequēbātur.

60. Sed ubi omnibus rēbus explōrātīs Petreius tubā signum dat, cohortīs paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostiū exercitus. Postquam eō³ ventum est, unde ā ferentāriis proelium committī posset, maxumō clāmōre cum īfestīs signīs concurrunt; pīla omittunt, gladiīs rēs geritur. Veterānī, pristīnae virtūtis memorēs, comminus āriter īstāre; illī haud timidi resistunt: maxumā vī certātur. Intereā Catilīna cum expeditīs in primā aciē vorsārī, labōrantibus⁴ succurrere, integrōs prō sauciīs arcessere, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pūgnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī mīlitis et bonī imperātōris officia simul

abstinentia, -ae, f., abstinence; self-restraint, integrity
aciēs, -ēi, f., battle-array, line of battle
arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītus, call, send for, summon
assequor [ad+sequor], follow after, overtake
Caesar, **Caesaris**, m., Gaius Julius Caesar
clāmor, -ōris, m., shouting
→cohors, cohortis, -iūm, f., company of soldiers, division of the army, cohort
comminus (adv.), in close contact, at close quarters, hand to hand
committō (=committō) [con+mittō], join; enter upon, commence
cōstantia, -ae, f., invariability; consistency; resoluteness
dēnegō (1), deny, refuse
dives, dīvitīs, rich, wealthy
ēnitēscō, ēnitēscere, ēnitūi, —, begin to shine forth; become evident, shine
exercitus, -ūs, m., army
expeditus, -ī, m., light-armed or swiftly-moving soldier
explōrō (1), examine, investigate
facilitās, -tātis, f., facility; affability; indulgence
factiō, -ōnis, f., party, faction, cabal
factiōsus, -a, -um, belonging to a faction, turbulent

ferentārius, -ī, m., light-armed troop
feriō, ferīre, —, —, strike, smite, beat
innocēns, -entis, harmless, innocent, upright
īstō, īstāre, īstītī, —, press (upon), pursue; threaten
integer, integra, integrum, untouched, unhurt; fresh, vigorous
intereā (adv.), meanwhile
modestus, -a, -um, moderate, modest, unassuming
officiūn, -ī, n., service, duty, function
omittō [ob+mittō], let loose
Petreius, -ī, m., Marcus Petreius, military officer in charge of Senatorial legions
pīlum, -ī, n., heavy javelin (of the Roman infantry)
pristīnus, -a, -um, former, earlier, original
prōvideō [prō+videō], see to, give attention to, provide for
resistō, resistere, restītī, —, oppose, resist
saucius, -a, -um, wounded
succurrō [sub+currō], hasten to aid, assist, help
timidus, -a, -um, fearful, cowardly
tuba, -ae, f., (war-)trumpet
veterānus, -a, -um, old, veteran; (subst.) veteran (soldier)
vorsor (=versor) (1), remain, stay

1. **in animum indūcere**, resolve, determine

2. The ablative singular of third declension adjectives sometimes ends in -e rather than -ī.

3. **eō**, here, adv., to that place, thither

4. **labōrō**, here, be hard pressed

exsequēbātur. Petreius, ubi videt Catilīnam contrā ac¹ ratus erat magnā vī tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs hostīs inducit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resistentīs interficit. Deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs adgreditur.² Manlius et Faesulānus in pīmīs pūgnantēs cadunt. Catilīna postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucīs reliquom videt, memor generis atque pristīnae suae dīgnitātis in cōfertissumōs hostīs incurrit ibique pūgnāns cōnfoditur.

61. Sed cōfектō proeliō, tum vērō cernerēs quanta audācia quantaque animī vīs fuisset in exercitū Catilīnae. Nam ferē quem quisque vīvos pūgnandō locum cēperat, eum amissā animā corpore tegēbat. Paucī autem, quōs mediōs cohors praetōria disiēcerat, paulō dīvorsius,³ sed omnēs tamen advorsīs volneribus conciderant. Catilīna vērō longē ā suis inter hostium cadāvera repertus est, paululum etiam spīrāns ferōciamque animī, quam habuerat vīvos, in voltū retinēns. Postrēmō ex omni cōpiā⁴ neque in proeliō neque in fugā quisquam⁵ cīvis ingenuos captus est: ita cūnctī suae hostiumque vītae iuxtā pepercerant. Neque tamen exercitus populī Rōmānī laetam aut incruentam victōriam adeptus erat. Nam strēnuissimus quisque aut occiderat in proeliō aut graviter volnerātus discesserat. Multī autem, quī ē castrīs vīsundī aut spoliandī grātiā prōcesserant,

alibī (adv.), elsewhere
cadāver, cadāveris , n., corpse
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus , distinguish, discern, perceive
concidō, concidere, concidi , —, fall down, collapse; fall lifeless, die
cōfertus, -a, -um , pressed close, crowded, dense
cōfodiō, cōfodere, cōfōdī, cōfossus , dig thoroughly; pierce, transfix
disicō [dis + faciō], disperse, scatter, rout
dīvorsius (comparative adv.), scattered, in different directions
exsequor [ex + sequor], perform, execute, accomplish
Faesulānus, -a, -um , of or belonging to Faesulae, a city in Etruria; (subst.), Faesulan
ferē (adv.), almost, nearly; for the most part
ferōcia, -ae , f., fierceness, wild or untamed spirit
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus , pour, pour out; overthrow, overcome
grātiā (prep. + preceding genitive), for the sake of
incruentus, -a, -um , bloodless

ingenuos (= <i>ingenuus</i>), -a, -um, native; free-born
iuxtā (adv.), near, near by; in like manner, equally
latus, lateris , n., side, flank
paululum (adv.), a little
perturbō (1), throw into disorder, confuse, disturb
Petreius, -i , m., Marcus Petreius, military officer in charge of Senatorial legions
praetōrius, -a, -um , of or belonging to the praetor, praetorian
pristinus, -a, -um , former, earlier, original
reor, rērī, ratus sum , think, judge, imagine
resistō, resistere, restitū , —, oppose, resist
retineō [re + teneō], keep, retain
spīrō (1), breathe
spoliō (1), strip; plunder, pillage
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus , exert oneself, endeavor, contend
utrimque (adv.), from both sides, on both sides
vīsō, vīsere, vīsi, vīsus , go to see, visit; view, behold
vīvos (= <i>vīvus</i>), -a, -um, alive, living
volnus (= <i>vulnus</i>), volneris , n., wound

1. **contrā ac**, here, different from, otherwise than
 2. **aggredior**, here, attack
 3. **paulō dīvorsius**, sc., conciderant, had fallen a little more spread out

4. **cōpia**, here, number; body of men
 5. **quisquam**, indefinite pronoun used adjectively

volventēs hostīlia cadāvera amīcum alii, pars hospitem aut cognātum reperiēbant; fuēre item qui inimicōs suōs cognōscerent. Ita variē per omnem exercitum laetitia, maeror, lūctus atque gaudia agitābantur.¹

cadāver, cadāveris, n., corpse
cognātus, -i, m., kinsman, relative
lūctus, -ūs, m., sorrow
maeror, -ōris, m., mourning, sadness

variē (adv.), variously, diversely, in different ways
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus, roll, roll off, turn

1. **agitō, here**, stir, arouse

Part III

A Survey of Latin Prose

Ennius

Quintus Ennius (239-169 B.C.), born in Rudiae near Brundisium, was a native speaker of Oscan, an Italic dialect. Because he also spoke Greek and Latin, he is reported to have said that he had three hearts. In 204 B.C., he was brought to Rome by the statesman Cato, acquired Roman citizenship, and began a career as both teacher and writer.

Better known as the author of both tragedies and epic, Ennius also translated and adapted several Greek works into Latin, among which was the *Holy History* of Euhemerus, a Hellenistic prose writer. In the *Holy History* Euhemerus rationalized the Greek myths, depicting the gods as originally human heroes and warriors and asserting that the myths were distorted representations of historical events.

This work is one of the earliest surviving examples of Latin literary prose. Ennius' style is notable for his frequent use of simple sentences arranged in parataxis, his continual shifting of subjects, and his almost embarrassing use of personal pronouns to try to lend clarity to the thought. This paratactic style leads to an excessive use of temporal adverbs, which in later Latin will be replaced by a variety of subordinating conjunctions in more complex hypotactic structures. Ennius' prose style is both unaffected and unadorned, though this may well be due to his attempt to remain faithful to his Greek original. In evaluating the worth of this work as an example of the state of early Latin prose, one must bear in mind that it is chiefly a translation.

Ennius, Selections from his translation of the *Holy History* of Euhemerus

Initio primus in terris imperium summum Caelus habuit. Is id regnum una cum fratribus suis sibi instituit atque paravit. Exin Saturnus uxorem duxit Opem. Titan qui maior natu erat postulat ut ipse regnaret. Ibi Vesta mater eorum et sorores Ceres atque Ops suadent Saturno uti de regno ne concedat fratri. Ibi Titan qui facie deterior esset quam Saturnus, idcirco et quod videbat matrem atque sorores suas operam dare uti Saturnus regnaret, concessit ei ut is regnaret. Itaque pactus est cum Saturno uti si quid liberum¹ virile secus ei natum esset, ne quid educaret. Id eius rei causa fecit uti ad suos gnatos regnum rediret. Tum Saturno filius qui primus natus est eum necaverunt. Deinde posterius nati sunt gemini Iuppiter atque Iuno. Tum Iunonem Saturno in conspectum dedere atque Iovem clam abscondunt dantque eum Vestae educandum celantes² Saturnum. Item Neptunum clam Saturno Ops parit eumque clanculum abscondit. Ad³ eundem modum tertio partu Ops parit geminos Plutonem et Glaucom. Pluto Latine est Dis pater, alii Orcum vocant. Ibi filiam Glaucom Saturno ostendunt, at filium Plutonem celant atque abscondunt. Deinde Glauca parva emoritur. Haec, ut scripta sunt, Iovis fratrumque eius stirps atque cognatio; in⁴ hunc modum nobis ex sacra scriptione traditum est.⁵

abscondō, abscondere, abscondī, absconditus, conceal
→ **at** (conj.), but
caelus, -i, m., = *caelum*, -i, n., sky; *here*, personified as sky god; equivalent to Greek *Uranos*
Cerēs, Cereris, f., Ceres, goddess of grain; equivalent to Greek Demeter
clam (adv.), secretly; (prep.) without the knowledge of (+abl.)
clanculum (adv.), secretly
cognātiō, -ōnis, f., family, relations
concēdō [con+cēdō], yield, comply
→ **cōspectus**, -ūs, m., sight, view
→ **deinde** (adv.), then, next, afterwards
dēterior, dēterius, worse
Dis, Dītis, m., Dis; Pluto, god of the underworld; equivalent to Greek Hades
→ **ēducō** (1), bring up, rear
exin (adv.), next, then
faciēs, -ēi, f., appearance, face
geminus, -a, -um, twin, double
Glauca, -ae, f., Glauca
gnātus, -i, m., = *nātus*, -i, m.
idcīrcō (adv.), for that reason, therefore
initium, -i, n., beginning
itaque (conj.), and so, therefore
item (adv.), similarly, in turn, likewise
Latīnē (adv.), in Latin
***nātus, *-ūs, m.**, birth, age (found only in abl. sing.)
necō (1), kill
Neptūnus, -i, m., Neptune, god of the sea, equivalent to Greek Poseidon

opera, -ae, f., work, service, attention
operam dare, make an effort, take pains, pay attention
Ops, Opis, f., Ops, goddess of abundance, wife of Saturn; equivalent to Greek Titan Rhea
Orcus, -i, m., Orcus, the underworld; the god of the infernal regions, Orcus or Pluto
paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum, agree, make a bargain
pariō, parere, peperi, partus, give birth (to), bear, produce
partus, -ūs, m., birth, delivery
Plūtō, -ōnis, m., Pluto, god of the underworld, equivalent to Greek Hades
posterior (comp. adv.), later, at a later time
postulō (1), demand
rēgnō (1), rule
sacer, sacra, sacram, sacred
→ **Sāturnus**, -i, m., Saturn, god of agriculture and once king of heaven; equivalent to Greek Titan Kronos
secus (indecl.), n., sex
stirps, stirpis, -ium, f., root; stock, race
suādeō, suādere, suāsī, suāsus, persuade, urge, advise (+dat.)
tertius, -a, -um, third
Titān, Titānos, m., a Titan; the Titans were the twelve offspring of Heaven (Uranos) and Earth (Gaia). Two Titans, Saturn (Kronos) and Ops (Rhea) were the parents of the Olympian gods.
utī = *ut*
uxor, -ōris, f., wife
Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta, goddess of the hearth; equivalent to Greek Hestia

1. *liberi*, -um or -ōrum, m. pl., children
2. *cēlō*, *here*, conceal from
3. *ad*, *here*, according to

4. *in*, *here*, according to
5. *trādō*, *here*, hand down

Cato

A study of Latin prose style truly begins with Marcius Porcius Cato (234–149 B.C.), a *novus homō*¹ who rose quickly on the social and political ladders to become one of the more prominent and active citizens of his day. In addition to his public service and his voluminous literary activity, Cato is known primarily for his old-fashioned puritanical morality. In fact, Cato's name soon became synonymous with rigid conservatism, purity, and honesty. Perhaps his most famous utterance, "*Carthāgō dēlenda est.*" grew out of an embassy to Carthage in 153 B.C., when he saw the prosperity of Rome's inveterate enemy. After this embassy, Cato appended this admonition to all his speeches.

At a time when Greek was still the language of literature, philosophy, and learning, and was exercising an overwhelming influence, Cato attempted to protect the integrity of Roman culture as he saw it and believed in the potential for Latin to achieve equal literary greatness. As an historian, orator, didactic writer on agriculture, and antiquarian, Cato created a vivid, rugged style that later writers noted and admired for its bold advances in the direction of the fully developed style of Cicero. Cato combined the polished use of rhetorical devices with a keen and unusual immediacy.

The following excerpt is from a speech in which Cato passionately denounces a violent outrage committed against public officials by Quintus Minucius Thermus. This passage illustrates well Cato's own principle of writing and speaking: *rem tenē, verba sequentur*. Anaphora, assonance, asyndeton, rhetorical questions, and other devices all enhance the power of Cato's emotional appeal to his audience's indignation.

1. *Novus homō* was a term applied to a man who was not a member of one of the few aristocratic families that had traditionally governed Rome, but who had nevertheless risen to the highest offices. Cicero was also a *novus homō*.

Cato, Selection from a speech against Quintus Minucius Thermus

Dixit a decemviris parum bene sibi cibaria curata esse. Iussit vestimenta detrahi atque flagro caedi. Decemviros Bruttiani verberavere, videre multi mortales. Quis hanc contumeliam, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitutem ferre potest? Nemo hoc rex ausus est facere; eane fieri bonis, bono genere gnatis, boni consulitis? Ubi societas, ubi fides maiorum? Insignitas iniurias, plagas, verbera, vibices, eos dolores atque carnificinas per dedecus atque maximam contumeliam inspectantibus popularibus suis atque multis mortalibus te facere ausum esse!¹ Sed quantum luctum, quantum gemitum, quid lacrimarum, quantum fletum factum audivi! Servi iniurias nimis aegre ferunt; quid illos, bono genere natos, magna virtute praeditos, opinamini animi habuisse atque habituros, dum vivent?

aegrē (adv.), painfully, reluctantly
Bruttīāni, -ōrum, m., Bruttiani, a group of servants to magistrates
caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesus, beat
carnificina, -ae, f., butchery
cibāria, -ōrum, n. pl., food supplies, provisions
cōsulō, **cōsulere**, **cōsulūi**, **cōsultus**, consider, reflect, deliberate
bonī cōsulere, think well of, take in good part
contumēlia, -ae, f., abuse
cūrō (1), care for, look after
decemviri, -ōrum, m. pl., the decemvirs; a commission of ten magistrates
→**dēdecus**, dēdecoris, n., shame, disgrace
→**dētrahō**, dētrahere, dētrāxi, dētractus, drag down; remove, strip
flagrum, -i, n., whip, lash
fletus, -ūs, m., weeping, tears

gemitus, -ūs, m., groaning
gnāscor = *nāscor*
→**iniūria**, -ae, f., injury, insult; injustice
insignitus, -a, -um, marked, remarkable, notable
inspectō (1), [*in+spectō*], look on, watch
lūctus, -ūs, m., sorrow
mortālis, -e, mortal
nimis (adv.), excessively, too; *here*, very
opīnor (1), suppose, imagine, think
plāga, -ae, f., blow, wound
populāris, **populāris**, -ium, m., compatriot
praeditus, -a, -um, gifted, endowed
societās, -tatis, f., community, fellowship
verber, verberis, n., lash, blow
verberō (1), flog, lash
vestimentum, -i, n., garment, clothing
vibex, vibicis, f., welt

1. **ausum esse** is an infinitive used in an exclamation. Translate: "O, for you to have dared . . ."

Cicero

Marcus Tullius Cicero (106-43 B.C.), lawyer, statesman, philosopher, and would-be poet, is central to any study of Latin prose style. In the works of Cicero, Latin prose reaches its most mature and influential stage. Like Cato, Cicero sought to purify the language of prose by eliminating archaisms, poeticisms, and the choppy parataxis characteristic of both earlier prose writers and everyday speech. Cicero's Latin quickly became the standard against which other authors, even his contemporaries, measured their own writings. Although he was a *novus homō* and had no military experience, Cicero nevertheless enjoyed considerable success in Roman politics, largely because of the very high regard in which his literary and oratorical achievements were held.

The hallmark of Ciceronian Latin is the use of hypotaxis to subordinate in a careful and logical manner a number of related ideas to a single, main point. Cicero cultivated and perfected the periodic sentence, a structure that usually begins with the subject and, after a string of subordinate ideas and statements, ends with the main verb. The Ciceronian period is frequently long, but its clauses and phrases are so carefully and logically balanced that its construction prevents the reader from becoming lost.

In his works on the theory and practice of oratory, Cicero speaks of three main features that should concern the orator: *ēlegantia* ("elegance"), *concinnitās* ("balance"), and *numerus* ("rhythm"). Elegance requires a choice of words and expressions appropriate to the theme and a general aura of decorum that permeates the whole. Balance is achieved by a series of parallel constructions, as well as clauses and phrases of roughly similar length and sound. Cicero recognized the validity of the Greek principle of breaking down utterances into *κῶλα* [cola], "limbs" or, as Cicero translates this into Latin, *membra*. The colonic structure lends harmony and balance to a periodic sentence. Arrangement into cola, in particular in groups of three (tricolon structure) and four, became a very important element in the theories of prose style prevalent in Cicero's day. While considering other poeticisms inappropriate to oratorical prose, Cicero recognized and exploited the effects of rhythm. Many of his periodic sentences, when read aloud, give evidence of Cicero's concern for creating a smooth, rhythmical flow. He often chose to end his periods with distinctive rhythmical sequences that were called *clausulae* ("closings"). Cicero's favorite *clausula* is represented in the sequence *ēsse vīdeātūr*.

The first selection is taken from Cicero's *Prō Archiā*, a speech in defense of the Greek poet Archias in his fight to keep his Roman citizenship. Throughout the speech, Cicero pleads eloquently on behalf of Archias and the value of literature. The nature of the case differs markedly from most of his other endeavors, and the passage that follows provides his defense for embarking on this very important mission. Note in particular the clarity and balance Cicero achieves in the first long periodic sentence.

The second selection is taken from Cicero's *Prō Caeliō*. Marcus Caelius Rufus, born in 82 B.C., came to Rome at the age of 16 and, under the guidance of Cicero, became schooled in a life of politics. Although Caelius soon fell under the influence of Catiline and broke away from Cicero, the estrangement was not irreversible, for Cicero did not believe Caelius to be actively involved in the Catilinarian conspiracy. Caelius developed a relationship with Clodia, the sister

of Cicero's political enemy, Publius Clodius. During their two-year affair, Caelius led a wild life in Rome and Baiae, a thriving seaside resort, until all ended with a bitter quarrel. Clodia, apparently in an attempt to punish her former lover, became involved in a legal case against him. The details of the case are obscure, but Cicero's speech suggests that the charges against Caelius included the theft of gold from Clodia and an attempt to poison her.

As one of his ploys, Cicero, as defense attorney, endeavored to denigrate Clodia's character and so to undermine the basis of the charges. The present selection from the speech, praised and admired by ancient as well as modern critics, includes an extended piece of personification or *prosōpopoeia*. This dramatic rhetorical device allows Cicero, in the character of the long dead Appius Claudius, to attack Clodia's character with impunity. Noteworthy are Cicero's use of rhetorical questions, anaphora, asyndeton, and tricolon structure, and his interspersing of short, pointed phrases with longer, more involved periodic pieces. Finally, Cicero's broad use of antithesis here rhetorically heightens the contrast between the dissolute life style of Clodia and the stern morality of her ancient ancestor, making this an exemplary piece of invective.

Cicero, *Pro A. Licinio Archia* 3-4.1

Sed ne cui vestrum mirum esse videatur me in quaestione legitima et in iudicio publico, cum res agatur¹ apud² praetorem populi Romani, lectissimum virum, et apud² severissimos iudices, tanto conventu hominum ac frequentia, hoc uti genere dicendi, quod non modo a consuetudine iudiciorum verum etiam a forensi sermone abhorreat, quaeso a vobis ut in hac causa³ mihi detis hanc veniam accommodatam huic reo, vobis, quem ad modum⁴ spero, non molestam, ut me pro summo poeta atque eruditissimo homine dicentem hoc concursu hominum litteratissimorum, hac vestra humanitate, hoc denique praetore exercente iudicium, patiamini de studiis⁵ humanitatis ac litterarum⁶ paulo loqui liberius, et in eius modi persona, quae propter otium ac studium⁷ minime in iudiciis periculisque tractata est, uti prope novo quodam et inusitato genere dicendi. Quod si mihi a vobis tribui concedique sentiam, perficiam⁸ profecto ut hunc A. Licinium non modo non segregandum, cum sit civis, a numero civium verum etiam si non esset, putetis asciscendum fuisse.

A. Licinius Archias, A. Liciniī Archiae, m.,	Aulus Licinius Archias
abhorreō, abhorrēre, abhorruī, —,	shrink from, differ from; be inconsistent with (+ā+abl.)
accommodeō (1), fit, suit	
asciscō, asciscere, ascivī, ascitus, accept,	admit (to citizenship)
concēdō [con+cēdō], concede, allow	
concurrus, -ūs, m., gathering, throng	
cōnsuetūdō, -tūdinis, f., custom, usage	
conventus, -ūs, m., assembly	
eruditus, -a, -um, learned	
exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus, keep	busy, occupy; exercise, train
forēnsis, -e, of the forum, public	
frequentia, -ae, f., crowd	
hūmānitās, -tatis, f., refinement, culture	
inūsitātus, -a, -um, unusual	
lēgitimus, -a, -um, lawful, legal	
litterātus, -a, -um, cultured, educated	

mīrus, -a, -um, remarkable, surprising, strange
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, displeasing
ōtium, -i, n., leisure, idleness
persōna, -ae, f., character, personage
praetor, -ōris, m., praetor, a public official; judge
profectō (adv.), in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly
prope (adv.), nearly, almost
quaesō = quaerō
quaestiō, -ōnis, f., (judicial) inquiry; investigation
reus, -i, m., defendant
sēgregō (1), separate, remove
sermō, -ōnis, m., speech
sevērus, -a, -um, stern, severe
tractō (1), touch, handle; treat, discuss, deal with
tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtus, grant, bestow
vērum (conj.), but

1. **rem agere**, conduct a case
2. **apud, here**, in the presence of
3. **causa, here**, case, situation
4. **quem ad modum** = ut

5. **studium, here**, pursuit
6. **litterae, here**, literature
7. **studium, here**, study
8. **perficiō, here**, bring it about

Cicero, *Pro Caelio* 33-34

Sed tamen ex ipsa quaeram prius utrum me secum severe et graviter et prisce agere¹ malit an remisse et leniter et urbane. Si illo austero more ac modo, aliquis mihi ab inferis excitandus est ex barbatis illis, non hac barbula qua ista delectatur, sed illa horrida quam in statuis antiquis atque imaginibus videmus, qui obiurget mulierem et pro me loquatur ne mihi ista forte suscenseat. Exsistat igitur ex hac ipsa familia aliquis ac potissimum Caecus² ille; minimum enim dolorem capiet, qui istam non videbit. Qui profecto, si exstiterit, sic aget¹ ac sic loquetur: "Mulier, quid tibi cum Caelio, quid cum homine adulescentulo, quid cum alieno? Cur aut tam familiaris fuisti ut aurum commodares, aut tam inimica ut venenum timeres? Non patrem tuum videras, non patruum, non avum, non proavum, non abavum, non atavum audieras consules fuisse; non denique modo te Q. Metelli matrimonium tenuisse sciebas, clarissimi ac fortissimi viri patriaeque amantissimi, qui simul ac pedem limine extulerat, omnis prope civis virtute, gloria, dignitate superabat³ Cum ex amplissimo genere in familiam clarissimam nupsisses, cur tibi Caelius tam coniunctus fuit? Cognatus, adfinis, viri tui familiaris? Nihil eorum. Quid igitur fuit nisi quaedam temeritas ac libido? Nonne te, si nostrae imagines viriles non commovebant, ne progenies quidem

- abavus, -i, m.**, great-great-grandfather
adfinis, adfinis, -iūm, m. or f., relation by marriage
amplus, -a, -um, great, distinguished
atavus, -i, m., great-great-great-grandfather
austerus, -a, -um, harsh, stern
avus, -i, m., grandfather
barbātus, -a, -um, bearded
barbula, -ae, f., little beard
Caelius, -i, m., Caelius
cognātus, -i, m., kinsman, relative
commodō (1), lend
→dēlectō (1), delight, please, charm
dignitās, -tātis, f., worthiness, dignity, status, esteem
excitō (1), arouse, awaken, stir up
exsistō, exsistere, exstītī, exstītus, exist, arise, appear
→familiāris, -e, of or belonging to the household; intimate, friendly; (*subst.*), friend, intimate acquaintance
imāgō, imāginis, f., image, appearance; bust
inferus, -a, -um, below
inferi, -ōrum, m. pl., the dead, inhabitants of the lower world
lēniter (adv.), gently, kindly
libidō, libidinis, f., desire, pleasure, passion, lust

1. **agō, here**, plead (one's case)

2. Caecus refers to Appius Claudius the Blind, twice consul and censor in 312 B.C., when he built the first aqueduct to Rome and began

- limen, -minis, n.**, threshold; doorway, entrance
mātrimōniūm, -i, n., marriage
Q. Metellus, -i, m., Quintus Metellus, an illustrious citizen who had held several prominent public offices. He was married to Clodia, who was also his cousin, and some attributed his death to poison at her hands.
→mulier, mulieris, f., woman
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus, marry (+dat.) (used of a woman marrying)
obiūrgō (1), scold, rebuke
patruus, -i, m., uncle
potissimum (adv.), especially, in particular
priscē (adv.), in an old-fashioned way
profectō (adv.), in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly
proavus, -i, m., great-grandfather
prōgeniēs, *prōgeniēl, f., offspring; lineage
prope (adv.), nearly, almost
remissē (adv.), mildly
sevērē (adv.), sternly, severely
suscēnseō, suscēnsēre, suscēnsūl, —, be angry (at), be enraged (at) (+dat.)
temeritās, -tātis, f., rashness, recklessness
urbānē (adv.), politely
venēnum, -i, n., poison

construction of the Appian Way. Late in his life, he convinced the senate to refuse the terms of peace offered by Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.
3. **superō, here**, surpass

mea, Q. illa Claudia, aemulam domesticae laudis in gloria muliebri esse admonebat, non virgo illa Vestalis Claudia quae patrem complexa triumphantem ab inimico tribuno plebei de curru detrahi passa non est? Cur te fraterna vitia potius quam bona paterna et avita et usque a nobis cum¹ in viris tum¹ etiam in feminis repetita moverunt? Ideone ego pacem Pyrrhi diremi, ut tu amorum turpissimorum cotidie foedera ferires, ideo aquam adduxi, ut ea tu inceste uterere, ideo viam munivi,² ut eam tu alienis viris comitata celebrares?"

admoneō [ad + moneō], remind	domesticus , -a, -um, of the house, domestic
addūcō [ad + dūcō], here, bring in	feriō , ferire, —, —, strike
aemulus , -a, -um, rivaling, vying with (+ gen.)	foedus ferire , make a bargain
aemula , -ae, f., rival	frāternus , -a, -um, of a brother, brotherly
avitus , -a, -um, of a grandfather	→ ideō (adv.), for this reason
celebrō (1), crowd, fill, frequent	incestē (adv.), unchastely
Claudia , -ae, f., Claudia, a Vestal Virgin, daughter of Appius Claudius Pulcher. She protected her father from the hostile populace during his public triumph.	muliebris , -e, of a woman, womanly, feminine
Q. Claudia , -ae, f., Quinta Claudia, granddaughter of Appius Claudius, who, suspected of immorality, proved her innocence by performing a difficult and heroic act.	paternus , -a, -um, of a father
comitātus , -a, -um, attended, escorted, accompanied (+ abl.)	plēbēs , plēbēi, f., the common people
complector , complecti, complexus sum , clasp, embrace	potius (comparative adv.), rather
currus , -ūs, m., chariot	Pyrrhus , -i, m., Pyrrhus, king of Epirus
dirimō , dirimere, dirēmī , dirēmptus , destroy, cut off	repetō [re + petō], seek again; repeat

1. **cum** . . . **tum**, not only . . . but also

2. **mūniō**, here, build up.

feriō , ferire, —, —, strike
foedus ferire , make a bargain
frāternus , -a, -um, of a brother, brotherly
→ ideō (adv.), for this reason
incestē (adv.), unchastely
muliebris , -e, of a woman, womanly, feminine
paternus , -a, -um, of a father
plēbēs , plēbēi, f., the common people
potius (comparative adv.), rather
Pyrrhus , -i, m., Pyrrhus, king of Epirus
repetō [re + petō], seek again; repeat
tribūnus , -i, m., tribune, a public official
triumphō (1), celebrate a triumph
→ ūsque (adv.), continuously; all the way (to)
Vestālis , -e, of Vesta, Vestal; pertaining to a priestess of Vesta
virgō , virginis , f., maiden, virgin
→ vitium , -i, n., vice, fault

Livy

Titus Livius (59 B.C.–17 A.D.) was a prominent historian of the Augustan period. His great work is called *Ab Urbe Conditā*, "From the Founding of the City," and it originally consisted of 142 books. Only one quarter has survived, but the contents of almost all the lost books can be ascertained from extant summaries that date from the fourth century A.D.

Livy's work recounts the major events of Roman history from the time when the city was founded (753 B.C., according to legend) down to his own time. The first books cover the period when Rome was ruled by kings. In later books Livy records the major conflicts between Rome and Carthage. Much of Livy's material, particularly in the early books, is based on traditional tales and legends whose historical accuracy can not be established. Livy's narrative is also marked by a significant amount of dramatic and emotional coloring, particularly in relation to his efforts to illustrate and extol the Roman qualities of *virtūs*, *dīgnitās*, and *pietās*. Livy sought to portray Rome's greatness in the making, to present the Roman achievement as resulting from both the deeds of heroic individuals and the forces of powerful destiny. In this regard, Livy's work may well be described as the prose counterpart of Vergil's *Aeneid*.

Livy's mixed prose style shows the influence of both Cicero and Sallust as well as that of Vergil. With Livy the periodic sentence reaches its high point. Long, carefully constructed sentences achieve balance, beauty, and graceful prose rhythm. Shorter, pointed utterances are interspersed, and Livy—like Sallust but unlike Cicero—adds many poetic and archaic words and Greekisms such as the accusative with middle voice verbs. Many dactylic sequences and several full hexameter lines can be discovered in Livy's epic prose. Notable, too, is this stylist's use of the historical infinitive, alliteration, and many words and phrases pointedly reminiscent of Vergil's poetry.

The first of the following passages describes the destruction of Alba Longa and illustrates Livy's inclination to focus on pathos and human suffering in order to give dramatic intensity to his narration of events. The second passage recounts how Rome was saved from an attack of the Gauls by a combination of manly heroism, divine providence, and geese.

Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* I.29

Inter¹ haec iam praemissi Albam erant equites qui multitudinem traducerent Romam. Legiones deinde ductae ad diruendam urbem. Quae ubi intravere portas, non quidem fuit tumultus ille nec pavor, qualis captarum esse urbium solet, cum effractis portis stratisve ariete muris aut arce vi capta clamor hostilis et cursus per urbem armatorum omnia ferro flammaque miscet,² sed silentium triste ac tacita maestitia ita defixit omnium animos ut pre metu oblii quid relinquerent, quid secum ferrent, deficiente consilio rogantesque alii alios nunc in liminibus starent, nunc errabundi domos suas ultimum illud visuri³ pervagarentur. Ut vero iam equitum clamor exire iubentium instabat, iam frigor tectorum quae diruebantur ultimis urbis partibus audiebatur pulvisque ex distantibus locis ortus velut nube inducta omnia inpleverat,⁴ raptim quibus quisque poterat elatis,⁵ cum larem ac penates tectaque in quibus natus quisque educatusque esset relinquentes exirent, iam continens agmen migrantium inpleverat⁴ vias, et conspectus aliorum mutua miseratione integrabat lacrimas, vocesque etiam miserabiles exaudiebantur mulierum, praecipue cum obsessa ab armatis templo augusta praeterirent ac velut captos relinquenter deos. Egressis

→ agmen, -minis, n. , line; throng; train	migrō (1), move, depart
Alba, -ae, f. , Alba Longa, a city in Latium founded by Aeneas' son Ascanius	miserabilis, -e , wretched, pitiable
ariēs, arietis, m. , battering-ram	miseratiō, -onis, f. , compassion, pity
→ armō (1), arm	multitudō, -tūdinis, f. , large number, multitude; population
arx, arcis, f. , citadel	mūrus, -i, m. , (city) wall
augustus, -a, -um , solemn, venerable, august	mūtuus, -a, -um , borrowed, lent; reciprocal, mutual, shared
→ clāmor, -oris, m. , shouting	nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, f. , cloud
continēns, -entis , continual, uninterrupted, unbroken	obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdi, obsessus , besiege, surround
cursus, -ūs, m. , running, march	pavor, -oris, m. , fear
dēficiō [dē+faciō], be wanting, fail	Penātēs, -ium, m. pl. , the Penates, household gods; hearth, home
dēfigō, dēfigere, dēfixī, dēfixus , fix; transfix, paralyze	pervagor (1), rove about
diruō [dis+ruō], demolish, destroy	prae (prep. + abl.), before, in front of; because of
distō, distare, —, — , be distant	praecipiē (adv.), especially
effringō, effringere, effrēgi, effractus , break open	praeterēo [praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond + eō], go by, pass by
eques, equitis, m. , knight, horseman	pulvis, pulveris, m. , dust
errabundus, -a, -um , wandering	raptim (adv.), suddenly, quickly
fragor, -oris, m. , noise, din, crashing	silentium, -i, n. , silence
Instō, instāre, institi, —, press (up)on, pursue; threaten	sternō, sternere, strāvi, strātus , lay out; spread; level, raze
integrō (1), renew	trādūcō [trāns+dūcō], lead across, move
intrō (1), enter	tristis, -e , sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
Lār, Laris, m. , household god; hearth, home	tumultus, -ūs, m. , commotion, uproar
legiō, -ōnis, f. , legion	→ ultimus, -a, -um , farthest, most remote, last
limen, -minis, n. , threshold; doorway, entrance	-ve (enclitic conj.), or
maestitia, -ae, f. , sorrow	

1. *inter*, here, during2. *misceō*, here, confuse, disturb3. The future active participle **visūri** here expresses purpose—a Greekism.4. **implēverat** = *implēverat*5. **raptim quibus quisque poterat elātis** = *raptim eis quae quisque efferre poterat elātis*; the relative pronoun *quae* is attracted into the case of its antecedent *eis*, which then drops out; *efferre* is supplied from *elātis*.

urbe Albanis Romanus passim publica privataque omnia tecta adaequat solo,
unaque hora quadringentorum annorum opus quibus Alba steterat excidio ac
ruinis dedit; templis tamen deum—ita enim edictum¹ ab rege fuerat¹
—temperatum est.

adaequō (1), make level with
Alba, -ae, f., Alba Longa, a city in Latium
founded by Aeneas' son Ascanius
Albānus, -a, -um, Alban, pertaining to Alba
Longa
ēdīcō [ē+dīcō], proclaim, decree

excidium, -i, n., destruction
passim (adv.), everywhere
privātus, -a, -um, private
quadringenti, -ae, -a, four hundred
solum, -i, n., ground, soil, earth
temperō (1), exercise restraint; spare

1. **ēdictum** . . . **fuerat** = **ēdictum** . . . **erat**

Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* V.47

Dum haec Veiis agebantur, interim arx Romae Capitoliumque in ingenti periculo fuit. Namque Galli seu vestigio notato humano qua¹ nuntius a Veiis pervenerat seu sua sponte animadverso ad Carmentis² saxo ascensu aequo, nocte sublustri, cum primo inermem, qui temptaret viam praemisissent, tradentes inde arma ubi quid³ iniqui esset, alterni innixi sublevantesque in vicem et trahentes alii alios prout postularet locus, tanto silentio in summum⁴ evasere ut non custodes solum fallerent, sed ne canes quidem, sollicitum animal ad nocturnos strepitus, excitarent. Anseres non fefellere quibus sacris Iunonis in

aequus, -a, -um, level, equal; favorable
alternus, -a, -um, one after another, in turn
āns̄er, āns̄eris, m. or f., goose
arx, arcis, f., citadel
ascēnsus, -ūs, m., ascent, approach
canis, canis, m. or f., dog
Capitōlium, -i, n., the Capitoline Hill in Rome
Carmentis, Carmentis, f., Carmentis, mother of
Evander, king of Pallanteum and friend of
Aeneas
ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsi, ēvāsus, go forth,
surmount
excitō (1), arouse, awaken, stir up
fallō, fallere, feſelli, falsus, deceive, escape the
notice of
Gallus, -i, m., inhabitant of Gaul, a Gaul
hūmānus, -a, -um, human
inde (adv.), from there; thereupon, then
inermis, -e, unarmed
iniquus, -a, -um, uneven, rough
innitor, inniti, innixus sum, lean on, support
oneself
interim (adv.), meanwhile

namque (conj.), for in fact
nocturnus, -a, -um, at night, nocturnal
notō (1), mark, observe
postulō (1), demand
primō (adv.), at first
prout (conj.), (according) as
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum**, sacred to (+gen.)
seu (conj.), or if
 seu . . . seu, whether . . . or (if)
silentium, -i, n., silence
sollicitus, -a, -um, anxious, attentive
sponte, abl. of *spōns, spōntis, f., usually used
with a possessive adj., of one's own accord,
voluntarily
strepitus, -ūs, m., noise
sublevō (1), raise up
sublūstris, -e, faintly lit, dim
trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus, draw, drag
Vei, Veiōrum, m. pl., Veii, an Etruscan city and
rival of Rome
vestigium, -i, n., footprint, trace, track
***vicis**, vicis, f., change, alternation, turn
 in vicem, in turn, by turns

1. **quā**, here, adv., where

2. **ad Carmentis**, sc., aedēs (aedēs, aedis,
-ium, f. [sing. and pl.], temple; house); **ad**,
here, at, near

3. **quid** = *aliquid*

4. **summum**, -i, n., top, summit

summa inopia cibi tamen abstinebatur. Quae res saluti fuit; namque clangore eorum alarumque crepitū excitus M. Manlius, qui triennio ante consul fuerat, vir bello egregius, armis adreptis, simul ad arma ceteros ciens vadit et, dum ceteri trepidant, Gallūm qui iam in summo¹ constiterat umbone ictum deturbat. Cuius casus prolapsi cum proximos sterneret, trepidantes alios armisque omissis saxa quibus adhaerebant manibus amplexos trucidat. Iamque et alii congregati telis missilibusque saxis proturbare hostes, ruinaque tota prolapsa acies in praeceps deferri. Sedato deinde tumultu reliquum noctis,² quantum turbatis mentibus poterat, cum praeteritum quoque periculum sollicitaret, quieti datum est.

abstineō, abstinēre, abstinūi, abstentus, keep away, refrain, abstain
aciēs, -ei, f., sharp edge; battle-array, line of battle
adhaereō, adhaerēre, adhaesi, adhaesus, cling to
adripiō, adripere, adripui, adreptus, snatch up
āla, -ae, f., wing
amplector, amplexī, amplexus sum, grasp
cēterī, -ae, -a, other, the rest
ciō or cieō, cīre or ciēre, cīvī, citus, rouse, disturb, summon
clangor, -ōris, m., noise, crying, honking
congregō (1), assemble
cōnstō, cōstāre, cōnstitī, cōnstatūs, take up a position, stand
crepitus, -ūs, m., rustling
deinde (adv.), then, next, afterwards
dēturbō (1), dislodge, topple
egregius, -a, -um, outstanding, distinguished
excīō or excieō, excīre or exciēre, excīvī or excīi, excītus or excītus, rouse, stir up
Gallus, -i, m., inhabitant of Gaul, a Gaul
īcīō or īcō, īcere, īcī, ictus, strike, hit

inopia, -ae, f., lack
M. Manlius, -i, m., Marcus Manlius
missile, missilis, -ium, n., missile, projectile
namque (conj.), for in fact
omittō [ob + mittō], let go, lose
praeceps, praecipītis, n., sheer drop, descent in praeceps, headlong
praeteritus, -a, -um, (having) passed by, past
prōlābor [prō + lābor], fall forward, tumble
prōturbō (1), rout, assault
quiēs, quiētis, f., rest, repose
quoque (adv.), also, too
sēdō (1), settle, calm, assuage
simul (adv.), at the same time
sollicitō (1), trouble, disturb
sternō, sternere, strāvi, strātus, lay out, spread; knock down
tēlum, -i, n., weapon
trepidō (1), tremble, panic, be afraid
triennium, -i, n., a period of three years
trucidō (1), slaughter
tumultus, -ūs, m., commotion, uproar
turbō (1), confuse, trouble, disturb
umbō, -ōnis, m., knob, boss
vādō, vādere, —, —, go, rush

1. **summum, -i**, n., top, summit

2. **reliquum noctis** = *reliqua nox*. Livy often

uses a neuter adjective with a qualifying genitive instead of an attributive adjective.

Tacitus

Cornelius Tacitus (55–118 A.D.?) was born in northern Italy during Nero's principate and had a successful public career under the emperors Vespasian, Titus, Domitian, Nerva, and Trajan. He became praetor in 88, *cōsul suffectus* in 97; considerably later, probably in 112 or 113, he was *prōcōnsul* of Asia. Pliny, a contemporary writer, attests to Tacitus' eloquence as a speaker, but in later years the historian seems to have turned more and more of his attention to his increasing literary output. Three short monographs survive: the *Agricola* (*Dē vitā Iūliī Agricolae*), a posthumous life of his father-in-law, who had been a military commander of Britain; the *Germānia* (*Dē origine et sitū Germānōrum*), an ethnological account of the various tribes of Germany; and the *Dialogus dē Ōrātōribus*, a dramatic dialogue on the decline of oratory and the pointlessness of writing tragedy in the late first century A.D. After these, Tacitus turned his attention to the history of the empire. He first wrote the *Historiae*, which begins in 69 A.D., the year of the four emperors, and presumably ended with Domitian's assassination. His *Annālēs* begins with the death of Augustus and breaks off before the death of Nero in 68. These two works survive in incomplete form, but it appears that Tacitus constructed them in units of six books (hexads), with the *Historiae* running to twelve books and the *Annālēs* to eighteen.

In these last two works Tacitus' prose style attains the peak of its expression. Tacitean point and antithesis owe much to the earlier historian Sallust, whom Tacitus admiringly describes as *rērum Rōmānārum flōrentissimus auctor*. Tacitus' vocabulary shares and extends Sallust's tendency to favor archaisms, simple verbs instead of compounds, and weighty abstract nouns. Even more than his predecessor, Tacitus makes use of poetic language and Greekisms. He avoids prepositions and favors harsh juxtapositions that reinforce at the same time as they disrupt normal antithesis. Above all, Tacitus learned from Sallust the value of brevity and the art of *inconcinnitās*. In compressed and often enigmatic Latin, he makes great use of historical infinitives, often drops main verbs, and expands the meanings of many words and phrases. At the same time, Tacitus recalls Livy in his ability to write extended passages that vividly depict the color and pathos of a given scene. However, just as Tacitus steadfastly avoids Ciceronian language and style, so he also avoids Livy's balanced periodic structures. Instead, he often prolongs apparently completed sentences with surprising and unexpected additions. As one scholar of Tacitus says, "The effects to which the Tacitean idiom aspires are no mystery—the writer will be swift and splendid, intense and majestic."¹ It can be fairly said that no prose writer in Latin developed a more distinctive and varied style than that which Tacitus crafted in the *Annālēs*.

The first selection that follows is the opening of the *Annālēs*, in which Tacitus summarizes at breathtaking speed the types of Roman governance from earliest times down to the early Empire as well as the nature of history writing during that period. In the second selection, drawn from the Neronian hexad of the *Annālēs*, Tacitus marshals both brevity and color for his powerful account of the execution of Nero's influential mother, Agrippina.

1. Ronald Syme, *Tacitus* (Oxford, 1958), I, 341.

Tacitus, *Annales* I.1

Urbem Romam a principio reges habuere; libertatem et consulatum L. Brutus instituit. Dictatura ad tempus¹ sumebantur; neque decemviralis potestas ultra biennum, neque tribunorum militum consolare ius diu valuit. Non Cinnae, non Sullae longa dominatio; et Pompei Crassique potentia cito in Caesarem, Lepidi atque Antonii arma in Augustum cessere, qui cuncta discordiis civilibus fessa nomine principis sub imperio accepit. Sed veteris populi Romani prospera vel adversa claris scriptoribus memorata sunt; temporibusque Augusti dicendis non defuere decora ingenia, donec gliscente adulazione deterrentur. Tiberii Gaique et Claudi ac Neronis res florentibus ipsis ob metum falsae, postquam occiderant recentibus odiis compositae sunt. Inde consilium mihi pauca de Augusto et extrema tradere, mox Tiberii principatum et cetera, sine ira et studio, quorum causas procul habeo.

adulatiō, -onis, f. , fawning, servility, flattery	falsus, -a, -um , false
Antōnius, -i, m. , Marcus Antonius (Antony), member of the second triumvirate with Lepidus and Octavian (later Augustus)	fessus, -a, -um , weary, exhausted, worn out
Augustus, -i, m. , Augustus, title taken by Gaius Octavius Caesar	flōreō, flōrēre, flōrūi, — , bloom, blossom; flourish
biennium, -i, n. , period of two years	Gaius, -i, m. , Gaius Claudius Caesar Germanicus, the emperor Caligula
L. Brütus, -i, m. , Lucius Junius Brutus, legendary founder of the Roman republic	gliscō, gliscere, —, — , grow, swell up
Caesar, Caesaris, m. , Gaius Julius Caesar, member of the first triumvirate with Pompey and Crassus	inde (adv.) , from there; thereupon, then
ceteri, -ae, -a , other, the rest	Lepidus, -i, m. , M. Aemilius Lepidus, member of the second triumvirate with Antony and Octavian
Cinna, -ae, m. , Lucius Cornelius Cinna, Roman dictator 87-84 B.C., champion of the popular party and enemy of Sulla	memorō (1) , mention, recount, tell
cito (adv.) , quickly	Nerō, -onis, m. , Nero Claudius Caesar, the emperor Nero
Claudius, -i, m. , Tiberius Claudius Nero Germanicus, the emperor Claudius	Pompēius, -i, m. , Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus (Pompey), member of the first triumvirate with Crassus and Caesar
compōnō [com + pōnō] , place together, compose, write	potentia, -ae, f. , (illegitimate) power
cōsulāris, -e , of or belonging to a consul	potestās, -tatis, f. , (legitimate) power
cōsulāre iūs, cōsulāris iūris, n. , consular right or power sometimes granted to military tribunes	princeps, principis , first, foremost, chief; (subst.), leading man
cōsulātus, -ūs, m. , consulship	principātus, -ūs, m. , office of princeps, rule, principate
Crassus, -i, m. , Marcus Licinius Crassus Dives, member of the first triumvirate with Pompey and Caesar	principium, -i, n. , beginning, origin
cūnctus, -a, -um , all	procul (adv.) , at a distance, far, far off
decemvirālis, -e , pertaining to the <i>decemviri</i> , a commission of ten magistrates	prosperus, -a, -um , favorable, fortunate, prosperous
dictatūra, -ae, f. , dictatorship, emergency office with plenary powers	recēns, -entis , recent, fresh, new
discordia, -ae, f. , discord, dissension, strife	Sulla, -ae, m. , Lucius Cornelius Sulla Felix, Roman dictator 82-79 B.C.
dominātiō, -onis, f. , absolute rule, tyranny	sūmō, sūmēre, sūmpsī, sūmptus , take, take up; assume
extrēmus, -a, -um , remotest, farthest, utmost, last	Tiberius, -i, m. , Tiberius Iulius Caesar Augustus, the emperor Tiberius
	tribūnus, -i, m. , tribune, military commander
	ultrā (prep. + acc.) , beyond
	valeō, valēre, valui, valitus , be strong, be able; have force, be effective

1. **ad tempus**, for the occasion, in emergencies

Tacitus, *Annales* XIV.5, 8

Noctem sideribus inlustrem et placido mari quietam quasi convincendum ad scelus dii praebuere. Nec multum erat progressa navis, duobus e numero familiarium Agrippinam comitantibus, ex quis¹ Crepereius Gallus haud procul gubernaculis adstabat, Acerronia super pedes cubitantis reclinis paenitentiam filii et reciperatam matris gratiam per gaudium² memorabat, cum dato signo ruere tectum loci multo plumbo grave, pressusque Crepereius et statim examinatus est: Agrippina et Acerronia eminentibus lecti parietibus ac forte validioribus quam ut³ oneri cederent protectae sunt. Nec dissolutio navigii sequebatur, turbatis omnibus, et quod plerique ignari etiam consciens impediebant. Visum⁴ dehinc remigibus unum in latus inclinare atque ita navem submergere: sed neque ipsis promptus in⁵ rem subitam consensus, et alii contra nitentes dedere facultatem lenioris in mare iactus. Verum Acerronia, imprudentia dum se Agrippinam esse utque subveniretur matri principis

Acerrōnia, -ae, f., Acerronia, slave of Agrippina
adstō, adstāre, adstiti, —, stand by, stand near
Agrippīna, -ae, f., Agrippina, Nero's mother
comitor (1), accompany
cōnsclus, -a, -um, sharing knowledge, privy knowing
cōnsensus, -ūs, m., agreement
convincō [con+vincō], refute, convict, expose
Crepereius Gallus, -ī, m., Crepereius Gallus, friend of Agrippina
cubitō (1), lie down
dehinc (adv.), from here, thereupon, then
dissolutiō, -ōnis, f., breaking up
ēmineō, ēminēre, ēminuī, —, project, stand out
exanimō (1), deprive of breath (life)
facultas, -tatis, f., means, power; opportunity
familiāris, familiāris, -ium, m. or f., household slave
gubernāculum, -ī, n., helm
haud (adv.), not at all, by no means
iactus, -ūs, m., throwing, fall
ignarus, -a, -um, unaware
imprudentia, -ae, f., imprudence, lack of foresight
inclinō (1), lean
inlūstris, -e, bright, shining
latus, lateris, n., side
→lectus, -ī, m., bed, couch
lēnis, -e, gentle
memorō (1), mention, recount, tell

nāvigm, -ī, n., vessel
nītor, nītī, nīxus or nīsus sum, make an effort, strive
onus, oneris, n., load, burden, weight
paenitentia, -ae, f., remorse, regret
pariēs, parietis, m., wall; *here*, side (of a bed)
placidus, -a, -um, calm, peaceful
plerique, plēraeque, plēraque, very many, the majority, most
plumbum, -ī, n., lead, weight
praebēō, praebēre, praebui, praebitus, give, grant, furnish, supply
prīnceps, prīcipis, m., leading man; *here*, Nero
procūl (adv.), at a distance, far, far off
promptus, -a, -um, ready, quick
prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus, cover over, protect
quiētus, -a, -um, quiet
reciperō (1), obtain again, recover
reclīnis, -e, leaning backwards, reclining
rēmex, rēmigis, m., a rower
→statim (adv.), immediately
subitus, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected
submergō, submergere, submersi, submersus, cause to sink, submerge
subveniō [sub+veniō], come up to help
→super (prep. + acc.), over, above, beyond; (prep. + abl.) above; about, concerning; (adv.) in addition
turbō (1), confuse, trouble, disturb
→vērum (conj.), but

1. *quis* (archaic) = *quibus*2. *per gaudium* = *cum gaudiō*.3. *quam ut* used in conjunction with a preceding comparative introduces a result clause

indicating disproportion. Translate: "too strong to yield . . ."

4. *visum* (sc. est), *here*, it seemed (best)5. *in*, *here*, for

clamitat, contis et remis et quae fors obtulerat navalibus telis conficitur; Agrippina silens eoque minus adgnita (unum tamen vulnus umero exceptit) nando, deinde occursu lenunculorum Lucrinum in lacum vecta villae suae infertur . . .

Interim vulgato Agrippinae periculo, quasi casu evenisset, ut quisque acceperat, decurrere ad litus. Hi molium obiectus, hi proximas scaphas scandere; alii quantum corpus sinebat vadere in mare; quidam manus pretendere; questibus, votis, clamore diversa rogitantium aut incerta respondentium omnis ora compleri; adfluere ingens multitudo cum luminibus, atque ubi in columem esse pernotuit, ut¹ ad gratandum sese expedire, donec aspectu armati et minitantis agminis disiecti sunt. Anicetus villam statione circumdat refractaque ianua obvios servorum abripit, donec ad foris cubiculi veniret; cui pauci adstabant, ceteris terrore inrumpentium exterritis. Cubiculo modicum lumen inerat et ancillarum una, magis ac magis anxia Agrippina quod nemo a filio ac ne Agerinus quidem: aliam fore laetae rei faciem; nunc

abripiō, abripere, abripūī, abreptus, snatch away, drag off	Lucrinus, -a, -um, Lucrine, of the Lucrine lake
adfluō, adfluere, adflūxi, —, flow to, flock together	modicus, -a, -um, moderate
adgnōscō, adgnōscere, adgnōvi, adgnitus, recognize	mōlēs, mōlis, -ium, f., heap, mass; dam, jetty
adstō, adstāre, adstiti, —, stand by, stand near	multitūdō, -tūdinis, f., large number, multitude
Agerinus, -i, m., Agerinus, Agrippina's attendant	nāvālis, -e, of ships, naval
Agrippīna, -ae, f., Agrippina, Nero's mother	nō, nārē, nāvī, —, swim
ancilla, -ae, f., maid, maidservant	obiectus, -ūs, m., projection
Anicētus, -i, m., Anicetus, Nero's henchman	obvius, -a, -um, in the way
anxius, -a, -um, anxious, troubled	occursus, -ūs, m., meeting
aspectus, -ūs, m., sight	ōra, -ae, f., border, boundary; coast, shore
circumdō [circum+dō], surround	pernōtēscō, pernōtēscere, pernōtuī, —, become well known
contus, -i, m., pole (for propelling a boat along)	prōtendō, prōtendere, prōtendi, prōtentus, stretch forward
cubiculum, -i, n., bedroom	questus, -ūs, m., outcry, lamentation
disiciō [dis+iaciō], disperse	refringō, refringere, refrēgi, refractus, break open, break up
→diversus, -a, -um, opposite, separate, different	rēmus, -i, m., oar
ēveniō [ē+veniō], come out, result, happen	scandō, scandere, —, —, climb, climb aboard
excipiō [ex+capiō], take out; receive	scapha, -ae, f., small boat
expediō, expedire, expeditī or expediī, ex-peditus, disentangle; make ready, prepare	sēsē = sē
foris, foris, -ium, f., door	sileō, silēre, silui, —, be silent
grātor (1), congratulate	sinō, sinere, sīvī or sīl, situs, allow
ianua, -ae, f., door	statiō, -ōnis, f., guard, garrison
incolumnis, -e, uninjured, safe, sound	tēlum, -i, n., weapon
inrumpō, inrumpere, inrūpi, inruptus, break in	terror, -ōris, m., terror
interim (adv.), meanwhile	umerus, -i, m., shoulder
lacus, -ūs, m., lake	vādō, vādere, —, —, go, rush
lēnunculus, -i, m., small boat, skiff	vehō, vehere, vēxi, vectus, carry, convey
	vōturn, -i, n., pledge, prayer, vow
	vulgō (1), spread, make known
	vulnus, vulneris, n., wound

1. *ut, here*, as if

solitudinem ac repento strepitus et extremi mali indicia. Abeunte dehinc ancilla "tu quoque me deseris" prolocuta respicit Anicetum trierarcho Herculeio et Obarito centurione classiario comitatum: ac, si ad visendum venisset,¹ refotam nuntiaret,² sin facinus patraturus,³ nihil se de filio credere,² non imperatum parricidium. Circumsistunt lectum percussores et prior trierarchus fusti caput eius adflxit. Iam in⁴ mortem centurioni ferrum destringenti protendens uterum "ventrem feri" exclamavit multisque vulneribus confecta est.

adfligō, adfligere, adflīxi, afflictus, strike	
ancilla, -ae, f., maid, maidservant	
Anicētus, -i, m., Anicetus, Nero's henchman	
→ caput, capitū, n., head	
centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion, captain	
circumsistō, circumsistere, circumsteti or circumstīti, — surround	
classiārius, -a, -um, naval	
centuriō classiārius, captain of a ship	
comitātus, -a, -um, attended, escorted, accompanied (+abl.)	
dehinc (adv.), from here, thereupon, then	
dēserō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsертus, desert, abandon, forsake	
dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrīxi, dēstrictus, draw (a sword)	
→ extrēmus, -a, -um, remotest, farthest, utmost, last	
facinus, facinoris, n., deed; crime	
feriō, ferire, —, —, strike, smite, beat	
fustis, fustis, -ium, m., club (fuste or fustī = abl. sing.)	
Herculeius, -i, m., Herculeius	
indictum, -i, n., evidence, sign	

Obarītus, -i, m., Obaritus	
parricidium, -i, n., murder	
patrō (1), perform	
percussor, -ōris, m., assassin	
prior, prius (comparative adj.), earlier, first	
prōtendō, prōtendere, prōtēndi, prōtentus, stretch forward	
refoveō, refovēre, refōvi, refotus, restore, refresh	
repentinō (adv.), suddenly	
respiciō, respicere, respexi, respectus, look back at; turn attention to	
sīn (conj.), but if	
sōlitūdō, -tūdinis, f., solitude	
strepitus, -ūs, m., noise	
trīrarchus, -i, m., trierarch, commander of a trireme, a galley with three rows of oars on each side	
uterus, -i, m., womb; belly	
venter, ventris, m., belly, stomach	
visō, visere, vīsi, visus, go to see, visit; view, behold	
vulnus, vulneris, n., wound	

1. **vēnisset**, pluperfect subjunctive in the protasis of a conditional sentence subordinated in an indirect command. The direct form would have been "SI ad vīsendum vēniſtī, (mē) refotam nūntiā."

2. **nūntiāret** and **crēdere** are both used in implied indirect discourse: *nūntiāret* in an

indirect command, and *crēdere* in indirect statement: (*imperāvit ut*) . . . *nūntiāret*; (*dixit*) . . . *nihil sē . . . crēdere*.

3. The future active participle **patrātūrus** here expresses purpose—a Greekism.

4. **in, here, for**

Petronius

Although it survives only in fragmentary form, the *Satyricon* is one of the most interesting works of Latin prose from the first century A.D. Its author Petronius (1st cent. A.D.?) has been tentatively identified with an important character in Nero's court to whom Tacitus gives the title *arbiter elegantiae*. Other than Tacitus' description of his forced suicide, little is known about the author. The considerable fragments that remain are drawn from books fifteen and sixteen of what is considered the first major work of prose fiction in western literature. The fragments reveal a highly parodic and complex work, whose episodic structure is held together by the travails and misadventures of Encolpius, a young Italian who may or may not be pursued by the wrath of Priapus, the god of fertility and sexuality. It has often been suggested that Encolpius' adventures and the movement of the *Satyricon* are modelled on Homer's *Odyssey*, but even from the surviving fragments it is clear that the author alluded to a broad variety of Greek and Latin literary works, and the *Satyricon* as it stands is no simple parody.

Since many of Petronius' characters are drawn from the common life of Greek settlements on the southern Italian coast, the *Satyricon* provides a rare sample of the *sermō cottīdiānus* ("daily speech") or *sermō plēbēius* ("common speech") of the first century of the Empire. Thus, the language is often choppy, conversational, and unstudied. A picture of Latin as a living language emerges from the frequent parataxis, the interspersion of Greekisms, and the mistakes of gender and case, often combined with a lack of concern for the rules of syntax and sudden leaps in thought. The vivid vocabulary of Petronius contains hundreds of words not instanced anywhere else in Latin literature. At times Petronius uses a simpler and more controlled style as one character or another entertains a group with his story-telling. Just as scenes shift from discussions of life and death to food to pseudo-intellectual appraisals of Latin epic, so Petronius' style shifts, everywhere enhancing characterization through language.

The first selection that follows is drawn from the beginning of the largest fragment, often called the *Cēna Trimalchiōnis*, "Trimalchio's Banquet." Encolpius and two friends have their first glimpse of the colorful character who hosts the banquet. The second selection describes the exotic presentation of the banquet's main course. The third selection presents Seleucus, one of the dinner guests, as he muses on life and death. In the fourth selection, the tale of the widow of Ephesus, Petronius interweaves comic and sexual motifs with literary parody of Vergil's *Aeneid*.

Petronius, *Satyricon* 27

. . . videmus senem calvum, tunica vestitum russea, inter pueros capillatos ludentem pila. Nec tam¹ pueri nos, quamquam erat operaे pretium,² ad spectaculum duxerant, quam ipse pater familiae, qui soleatus pila prasina exercebat. Nec amplius eam repetebat quae terram contigerat, sed follem plenum habebat servus sufficiebatque ludentibus. Notavimus etiam res novas. Nam duo spadones in diversa parte circuli stabant, quorum alter matellam tenebat argenteam, alter numerabat pilas, non quidem eas quae inter manus lusu expellente vibrabant, sed eas quae in terram decidebant. Cum has ergo miraremur lautitias, accurrit Menelaus et "hic est" inquit "apud quem cubitum ponitis, et quidem iam principium cenae videtis." Etiamnum loquebatur Menelaus, cum Trimalchio digitos concrepuit, ad³ quod signum matellam spado ludenti subiecit. Exonerata ille vesica aquam poposcit ad⁴ manus, digitosque paululum adspersos in capite pueri tersit.

adspergō, adspergere, adspersī, adspersus, sprinkle, splash	Menelāus, -ī, m., Menelaus
amplius (comparative adv.), more, further	notō (1), mark, observe
argenteus, -a, -um , made of silver, silver	numerō (1), count
calvus, -a, -um , bald	opera, -ae, f., work, service; effort
capillātus, -a, -um , having long hair	paullulum (adv.), a little, for a little while
circulus, -ī, m., circle, ring	pila, -ae, f., ball
concrepō, concrepāre, concrepūi, —, make a noise, snap (one's fingers)	plēnus, -a, -um, full
contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus, touch	prasinus, -a, -um, leek-green
cubitum, -ī, n., elbow	→principium, -ī, n., beginning, origin
dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī, —, fall, drop	repetō [re + petō], seek again; seek to recover
digitus, -ī, m., finger	russeus, -a, -um, (brownish-) red
→ergō (adv.), therefore	soleātus, -a, -um, sandaled
etiamnum (adv.), even now, still, yet	spadō, -ōnis, m., eunuch
→exerceō, exercēre, exercūi, exercitus, keep busy, occupy; exercise, train	spectāculum, -ī, n., sight, spectacle
exonerō (1), discharge, unload, relieve	subiciō, subicere, subiēci, subiectus, place underneath or below
follis, follis, -īum, m., bag, sack	sufficiō, sufficere, suffēci, suffectus, supply, provide
inquit (defective verb), he, she, it says	tergeō, tergēre, tersī, tersus, rub, wipe
lautitia, -ae, f., elegance, luxury	Trimalchiō, -ōnis, m., Trimalchio
lūdō, lūdere, lūsi, lūsus, play	tunica, -ae, f., Roman undergarment, tunic
lūsus, -ūs, m., sport, game	vēsīca, -ae, f., bladder
matella, -ae, f., chamber pot	vestiō, vestīre, vestīvi, vestītus, clothe, dress
	vibrō (1), move to and fro; throw back and forth

1. Nec tam . . . quam, and not so much . . . as
2. operaе pretium, something worth the effort

3. ad, here, at
4. ad, here, for

Petronius, *Satyricon* 40

"Sophos"¹ universi clamamus et sublatis² manibus ad cameram iuramus Hipparchum Aratumque³ comparandos illi homines non fuisse, donec⁴ advenerunt ministri ac toralia praeposuerunt toris, in quibus retia erant picta subsessoresque cum venabulis et totus venationis apparatus. Necdum sciebamus quo mitteremus suspiciones nostras, cum extra triclinium clamor sublatus est ingens, et ecce canes Laconici etiam circa mensam discurrere coeperunt. Secutum est hos repositorum, in quo positus erat primae magnitudinis aper, et quidem pilleatus, e cuius dentibus sportellae dependebant duae palmulis textae, altera caryotis altera Thebaicis repleta. Circa autem minores porcelli ex coptoplacentis facti, quasi uberibus imminerent, scrofam esse positam significabant. Et hī quidem apophoreti fuerunt. Ceterum ad scindendum aprum non ille Carpus accessit, qui altilia laceraverat, sed barbatus ingens, fasciis

altilia, -ium, n. pl. , fattened fowls	necdum (adv.), and not yet
aper, apri, m. , wild boar	palmula, -ae, f. , palm (leaf)
apophorētus, -a, -um , to be carried away	pilleātus, -a, -um , wearing a <i>pilleus</i> , a felt hat received by freed slaves
apparātus, -ūs, m. , equipment, apparatus	pingō, pingere, pīnxī, pictus , adorn with colors, paint; embroider; represent
Arātus, -i, m. , Aratus	porcellus, -i, m. , little pig
barbātus, -a, -um , bearded	praepōnō [prae + pōnō], place upon
camera, -ae, f. , vault; vaulted ceiling, arched roof	repleō, replēre, replēvī, replētus , refill; make full, fill up
canis, canis, m. or f. , dog	repositorium, -i, n. , stand, tray, waiter (on which dishes are brought to the table)
Carpus, -i, m. , Carpus (the carver)	rēte, rētis, -um, n. , net, snare (for hunting)
caryōta, -ae, f. , kind of nut-shaped date	scindō, scindere, scidi, scissus , tear, rend, cut, divide
cēterum (adv.) , otherwise, besides; on the other hand	scrōfa, -ae, f. , breeding-sow
→circā (prep. + acc.) , around; (adv.) around, round about, all around	significō (1) , show, indicate; signify
comparō [com + parō], compare	sophōs (adv.) , well done! well said! bravo!
coptoplacenta, -ae, f. , cake or pastry made of pounded material	sportella, -ae, f. , little (fruit-) basket
dēns, dentis, -ium, m. , tooth; <i>here</i> , tusk	subsessor, -ōris, m. , one who lies in wait, waylayer
dēpendeō, dēpendēre, —, —, hang down	suspiciō, -ōnis, f. , suspicion
→ecce (interj.) , lo! behold!	texō, texere, texui, textus , weave
extra (prep. + acc.) , outside	Thēbāicus, -a, -um , Theban; Thēbāica (sc., <i>palma</i>), very dry type of date
fascia, -ae, f. , band, bandage, wrapping	toral, torālis, n. , coverlet (draped over a bed or couch)
Hipparchus, -i, m. , Hipparchus	torus, -i, m. , cushion; couch
immineō, imminēre, —, —, hang on; lean towards; be eager for	triclinium, -i, n. , eating-couch; dining-room
iūrō (1) , swear	über, überis, n. , teat, udder
lacerō (1) , mangle, mutilate; tear to pieces; cut up, carve	ūniversus, -a, -um , entire; (pl.) all together
Lacōnicus, -a, -um , Laconian, Spartan	vēnābulum, -i, n. , hunting-spear
magnitūdō, -tūdinis, f. , size, greatness, magnitude	
minister, ministri, m. , attendant	

1. Trimalchio has just finished giving his own peculiar interpretations of the signs of the zodiac, and his guests now shout their approval.

2. **tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus**, raise, lift up

3. Hipparchus (ca. 190-124 B.C.) was a celebrated astronomer of Nicea; Aratus (ca. 270 B.C.) was a Cilician author of an astronomical poem.

4. **dōnec**, *here*, whereupon

cruralibus alligatus et alicula subornatus polymita, strictoque venatorio cultro latus apri vehementer percussit, ex cuius plaga turdi evolaverunt. Parati aucupes cum harundinibus fuerunt et eos circa triclinium volitantes momento exceperunt. Inde cum suum cuique iussisset referri Trimalchio, adiecit: "Etiam videte quam porcus ille silvaticus lotam comedenter glandem." Statim pueri ad sportellas accesserunt, quae pendebant e dentibus, Thebaicasque et caryotas ad¹ numerum divisere cenantibus.

adiciō, adicere, adiēci, adiectus , add	mōmentum, -i, n. , short time, moment, instant
alicula, -ae, f. , light upper garment; hunting coat	pendeō, pendēre, pependī, — , hang (down), be suspended
alligō (1), bind up, bind round	percutiō, percutere, percussi, percussus , strike, pierce
aper, apri, m. , wild boar	plāga, -ae, f. , blow, wound
auceps, aucupis, m. , bird-catcher, fowler	polymitus, -a, -um , finely-woven, wrought with many threads
caryōta, -ae, f. , kind of nut-shaped date	porcus, -i, m. , male pig, hog
cēnō (1), dine	quam (adv.), how
comedō, comedere or comēsse, comēdī , eat up, consume, devour	silvāticus, -a, -um , of the woods, wild
comēs(s)us or comestus , eat up, consume, devour	sportella, -ae, f. , little (fruit-) basket
crūralis, -e , of or belonging to the legs	stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus , draw, unsheathe
culter, cultrī, m. , knife	subornō (1), furnish, equip, adorn
dēns, dentis, -ium, m. , tooth; <i>here</i> , tusk	Thēbāicus, -a, -um , Theban; Thēbāica (sc., <i>palma</i>), very dry type of date
dividō, dividere, dīvisī, dīvisus , divide, separate	triclinium, -i, n. , eating-couch; dining-room
ēvolō (1), fly out	Trimalchiō, -ōnis, m. , Trimalchio
excipiō [ex + captiō], take out; catch, capture	turdus, -i, m. , thrush
glāns, glandis, f. , acorn	vehementer (adv.), strongly, violently
harundō, harundinis, f. , reed; limed twig for catching birds	vēnātōrius, -a, -um , belonging to a hunter
→ inde (adv.), from there; thereupon, then	volitō (1), fly to and fro, flit about, fly
latus, lateris, n. , side, flank	
lōtus, -a, -um , elegant, splendid, sumptuous	

1. **ad**, *here*, according to

Petronius, *Satyricon* 42

Excepit Seleucus fabulae partem et "ego" inquit "non cotidie lavor; baliscus enim fullo est, aqua dentes habet, et cor nostrum cotidie liqueſcit. Sed cum mulſi pultarium obduxī, frigori laecasin dico. Nec sane lavare potui; fui enim hodie in funus.¹ Homo bellus, tam bonus Chrysanthus animum ebulliit. Modo modo me appellavit. Videor mihi cum illo loqui. Heu, eheu. Utres inflati ambulamus. Minoris quam muscae sumus, muscae tamen aliquam virtutem habent, nos non pluris sumus quam bullae. Et quid si non abstinax fuisset! Quinque dies aquam in os suum non coniecit, non micam panis. Tamen abiit ad plures. Medici illum perdiderunt, immo magis malus fatus; medicus enim nihil aliud est quam animi consolatio. Tamen bene elatus est,² vitali lecto, stragulis bonis. Planctus est optime—manu misit³ aliquot—etiam si maligne illum ploravit uxor. Quid si non illam optime accepisset!⁴ Sed mulier quae mulier milvinum genus. Neminem nihil boni facere oportet; aequē est enim ac si in puteum conicias. Sed antiquus amor cancer est."

abstināx, abstinācis , abstinent	inflō (1), blow; inflate, puff up
aequē (adv.), equally, fairly	laecasin (vulgar imprecation), suck
aequē . . . ac , just as, as much as	lavō, lavere or lavāre, lāvī, lautus or lōtus , wash, bathe
aliquot (indecl. adj.), several	liquēscō, liquēscere , —, —, become liquid, melt, melt away
appellō (1), speak to; address	malignē (adv.), bad-naturedly, grudgingly; little, scantily
baliscus, -ī, m. , bath	medicus, -ī, m. , doctor
bellus, -a, -um , pretty, charming, lovely	mīca, -ae, f. , crumb
bulla, -ae, f. , bubble	milvinus, -a, -um , rapacious
cancer, cancri, m. , crab; cancer	mulsum, -ī, n. , sweetened wine
Chrysanthus, -ī, m. , Chrysanthus	musca, -ae, f. , fly
cōnicō, cōnicere, cōniēcī, cōnectus , throw, hurl	obdūcō [ob+dūcō], drink down, swallow
cōnsolātiō, -ōnis, f. , consolation, comfort	pānis, pānis, *-ium, m. , bread
→ cor, cordis, n. , heart	plangō, plangere, plānxī, plānctus , strike, beat; lament
dēns, dentis, -īum, m. , tooth	plōrō (1), weep for, mourn
ēbulliō, ēbullire, ēbullivī or ēbulliī, — , bubble up	pultārius, -ī, m. , vessel
animam ēbullire , give up the ghost	puteus, -ī, m. , well
eheu (interj.), oh!	sānē (adv.), certainly, to be sure
excipiō [ex+capiō], take out; take up	Seleucus, -ī, m. , Seleucus
fābula, -ae, f. , story; talk, conversation	strāgulum, -ī, n. , spread, covering
fātus, -ī, m. = <i>fātum</i> , -ī, n., destiny, fate	ūter, ūtrīs, m. , bag, skin
frigus, frigoris, n. , cold, coldness, chill	uxor, -ōris, f. , wife
fullō, -ōnis, m. , fuller, clothes cleaner	vītālis, -ē , of or belonging to life
fūnus, fūneris, n. , funeral; funeral procession; death	vītālis lectus , death-bed, funeral couch
heu (interj. of grief or pain), ah!, oh!, alas!	
hodiē (adv.), today	
→ immō (adv.), <i>denying or correcting a previous assertion or question</i> , no, on the contrary	

1. **in funus**, at a funeral (colloquial)2. **efferō**, here, bring out for burial, bury3. **manū mittere**, release a slave from his

master's power, manumit. Slaves were often set free at the master's death.

4. **acciō**, here, treat

Petronius, *Satyricon* 111-112

Matrona quaedam Ephesi tam notae erat pudicitiae ut vicinarum quoque gentium feminas ad spectaculum sui evocaret. Haec ergo cum virum¹ extulisset,² non contenta vulgari more funus passis prosequi crinibus aut nudatum pectus in conspectu frequentiae plangere, in conditorium etiam prosecuta est defunctum, positumque in hypogaeo Graeco more corpus custodire ac flere totis noctibus diebusque³ coepit. Sic afflictantem se ac mortem inedia persequentem non parentes potuerunt abducere, non propinqui; magistratus ultimo repulsi abierunt, complorataque singularis exempli femina ab omnibus quintum iam diem sine alimento trahebat. Assidebat aegrae fidissima ancilla, simulque et lacrimas commodabat lugenti et quotiens defecerat positum in monumento lumen renovabat. Una igitur in tota civitate fabula erat, solum illud affulisse verum pudicitiae amorisque exemplum omnis ordinis homines confitebantur, cum interim imperator provinciae latrones iussit crucibus affigi secundum illam casulam, in qua recens cadaver matrona deflebat. Proxima ergo nocte cum miles,

aeger, **aegra**, **aegrum**, sick, weak; dejected
affigō, **affigere**, **affixī**, **affixus**, fasten, attach,
 affix, pin
afflictō (1), damage, injure; trouble, distress
affulgeō [*ad* + *fulgeō*], shine forth
alimentum, **-i**, *n.*, food, nourishment
ancilla, **-ae**, *f.*, maid, maidservant
assideō, **assidēre**, **assēdi**, **assessus**, sit near
cadāver, **cadāveris**, *n.*, corpse
casula, **-ae**, *f.*, little hut
commodō (1), lend, supply
complorō (1), lament loudly
conditōrium, **-i**, *n.*, tomb
cōspectus, **-ūs**, *m.*, sight, view
contentus, **-a**, **-um**, satisfied
crinis, **crinis**, **-ium**, *m.*, hair, lock
crux, **crucis**, *f.*, cross
custōdiō, **custōdīre**, **custōdīvī** or **custōdiīl**,
 guard, protect
dēficiō [*dē* + *faciō*], fail, be lacking; weaken, fade
dēfleō, **dēflēre**, **dēflēvī**, **dēflētus**, weep for
dēfunctus, **-a**, **-um**, deceased, dead
Ephesus, **-i**, *f.*, Ephesus, a famous commercial
 city of Ionia in Greece
ergō (adv.), therefore
fābula, **-ae**, *f.*, story; talk, conversation
fidus, **-a**, **-um**, faithful, loyal, trustworthy
fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētus**, weep (for)
frequentia, **-ae**, *f.*, crowd
funus, **funeris**, *n.*, funeral; funeral procession;
 death
Graecus, **-a**, **-um**, Greek

hypogaeum, **-i**, *n.*, underground burial vault,
 sepulcher
inedia, **-ae**, *f.*, lack of food; fasting
interim (adv.), meanwhile
latrō, **-ōnis**, *m.*, criminal, thief
lūgeō, **lūgēre**, **lūxi**, **lūctus**, mourn, grieve,
 lament
magistrātus, **-ūs**, *m.*, magistracy; magistrate
mātrōna, **-ae**, *f.*, married woman; matron
monumentum, **-i**, *n.*, monument; tomb
nūdō (1), make naked, uncover, bare
ordō, **ordinis**, *m.*, order, rank, (social) class
passus, **-a**, **-um**, extended, spread out;
 disheveled
plangō, **plangere**, **plānxi**, **plānctus**, strike, beat
propinquus, **-a**, **-um**, near; related, kindred;
 (subst.) relative
prōsequor [*prō* + *sequor*], escort
pudicitia, **-ae**, *f.*, modesty, chastity, virtue
quīntus, **-a**, **-um**, fifth
quotiēns (adv.), how many times; as often as
recēns, **-entis**, recent, fresh, new
renovō (1), restore
secundum (prep.+acc.), beside, next to
simul (adv.), at the same time
singulāris, **-e**, unique, extraordinary, singular
spectāculum, **-i**, *n.*, sight, spectacle
trahō, **trahere**, **trāxi**, **tractus**, draw, drag; use
 up, spend (time)
ultimō (adv.), finally, at last
vīcīnus, **-a**, **-um**, neighboring, nearby
vulgāris, **-e**, ordinary, common

1. *vir*, here, husband2. *efferō*, here, bring out for burial, bury3. *tōtis noctibus diēbusque*, the ablative,

where we should expect the accusative of duration of time, a confusion of cases and syntax typical of vulgar Latin.

qui cruces asservabat ne quis ad¹ sepulturam corpus detraheret, notasset sibi lumen inter monumenta clarius fulgens et gemitum lugentis audisset, vitio gentis humanae concupiit scire quis aut quid faceret. Descendit igitur in conditorium, visaque pulcherrima muliere primo quasi quodam monstro infernisque imaginibus turbatus substitit. Deinde ut et corpus iacentis conspexit et lacrimas consideravit faciemque unguibus sectam, ratus scilicet id quod erat, desiderium extinti non posse feminam pati, attulit in monumentum cenulam suam coepitque hortari lugentem ne perseveraret in dolore supervacuo ac nihil profuturo gemitu pectus diduceret: omnium eundem exitum esse et idem domicilium, et cetera quibus exulceratae mentes ad sanitatem revocantur. At illa ignota² consolatione percussa laceravit vehementius pectus ruptosque crines super corpus iacentis imposuit. Non recessit tamen miles, sed eadem exhortatione temptavit dare mulierculae cibum, donec ancilla vini odore corrupta primum ipsa porrexit ad humanitatem invitantis victam manum, deinde refecta potionē et cibo expugnare dominae pertinaciam coepit et “quid proderit” inquit

asservō [ad + servō], watch over, guard
at (conj.), but
ceterī , -ae, -a, other, the rest
conditōrium , -i, n., tomb
considērō (1), examine; contemplate, consider
consolātiō , -onis, f., consolation, comfort
cōspiciō , cōspicere , cōspexi , cōspectus , catch sight of, perceive, observe
corrumpō , corrumpere , corrūpi , corruptus , destroy, ruin; corrupt, entice
crinis , crinis , -iūm, m., hair, lock
dēscendō , dēscendē , dēscendī , dēscēnsus , climb down, go down
dēsiderium , -i, n., longing, desire
dētrahō , dētrahere , dētraxī , dētractus , pull down, drag down
dīdūcō [dis + dūcō], split, sever, break
domicilium , -i, n., dwelling, abode; final resting place
exitus , -ūs, m., departure; death, end
expūgnō (1), break down, overcome
extinguō , extinguere , extinxī , extinctus , annihilate, extinguish, destroy
exulcerō (1), make sore, inflame
faciēs , -ei, f., appearance, face, form
gemitus , -ūs, m., groaning
hūmānitās , -tatis, f., kindness
hūmānus , -a, -um, human
iaceō , iacēre , iacui , —, lie
imāgō , imāginis , f., image, appearance; ghost
infernus , -a, -um, lower, infernal
inquit (defective verb), he, she, it says
invitō (1), invite

lacerō (1), mutilate, tear
lūgeō , lūgēre , lūxi , lūctus , mourn, grieve, lament
mōnstrum , -i, n., horrible sight, monster
monumentum , -i, n., monument; tomb
mulier , mulieris , f., woman
muliercula , -ae, f., little woman
notō (1), mark, observe
odor , -ōris, m., odor, scent
percutiō , percutere , percussi , percussus , strike; astound
perseverō (1), persist
pertinācia , -ae, f., stubbornness
porrigō , porrigere , porrēxi , porrēctus , stretch out, extend, offer
pōtiō , -onis, f., drink
primō (adv.), at first
reficiō [re + factō], restore, refresh
reor , rērī , ratus sum , think, judge, imagine
rumpō , rumpere , rūpī , ruptus , break, burst; rend, tear
scilicet (adv.), obviously, certainly
secō , secāre , secuī , sectus , cut, scratch
sepultūra , -ae, f., burial
subsistō , subsistere , substī , —, come to a stop, stand still
super (prep. + acc.), over, above, upon
supervacuus , -a, -um, useless, needless
turbō (1), confuse, trouble, disturb
unguis , unguis , -iūm, m., (finger-) nail
vehementer (adv.), violently, strongly
vitium , -i, n., vice, fault

1. *ad*, here, for2. *ignōtus*, -a, -um, here, unknown, strange, unfamiliar

"hoc tibi, si soluta inedia fueris,¹ si te vivam sepelieris, si antequam fata poscant,
indemnatum spiritum effuderis?

id cinerem aut manes credis sentire sepultos?²

Vis tu reviviscere? Vis discusso muliebri errore, quam diu licuerit, lucis
commodis frui? Ipsum te iacentis corpus commonere debet ut vivas." Nemo
invitus audit, cum cogitur vivere. Itaque mulier aliquot dierum abstinentia sicca
passa est frangi pertinaciam suam, nec minus avide replevit se cibo quam ancilla
quae prior victa est. Ceterum scitis quid plerumque soleat temptare humanam
satietatem. Quibus blanditiis impetraverat miles ut matrona vellet vivere, isdem
etiam pudicitiam eius aggressus est.³ Nec deformis aut infacundus iuvenis castae
videbatur, conciliante gratiam ancilla ac subinde dicente:

"placitone etiam pugnabis amori?"⁴

Quid diutius moror? Ne in hanc quidem partem⁵ mulier abstinuit, victorque
miles utrumque persuasit. Iacuerunt ergo una non tantum⁶ illa nocte qua nuptias
fecerunt, sed postero etiam ac tertio die, praeclusis videlicet conditorii foribus,

abstinentia , -ae, f., abstinence
abstineō , abstinēre , abstinūl , abstentus , keep away, refrain, abstain
aliquot (indecl. adj.), several
ancilla , -ae, f., maid, maidservant
avidē (adv.), eagerly, greedily
blanditia , -ae, f., flattery, allurement
castus , -a, -um, chaste
cēterum (conj.), besides; on the other hand, but yet
cinis , cineris , m. or f., ashes; funerary ashes
cōgō , cōgere , coēgl , coāctus , drive together; compel
commodum , -i, n., convenience, advantage
conciliō (1), win over, acquire, gain
conditōrium , -i, n., tomb
dēformis , -e, ugly
discutiō , discutere , discussī , discussus , shatter; disperse, dispel
effundō , effundere , effūdī , effūsus , pour out, squander, waste
ergō (adv.), therefore
error , -ōris, m., error
fatum , -i, n., destiny, fate
foris , foris, -ium, f., door
frangō , frangere , frēgl , frāctus , break, shatter, crush
fruor , frui , frūctus sum , derive enjoyment from, enjoy (+abl.)
grātia , -ae, f., favor; gratitude, thanks
hūmānus , -a, -um, human
iaceō , iacēre , iacuī , —, lie
impetrō (1), gain one's request

indemnātus , -a, -um, unsentenced, uncon- demned
inedia , -ae, f., lack of food; fasting
infācundus , -a, -um, not eloquent
invitus , -a, -um, unwilling
itaque (conj.), and so
mānēs , -iūm, m. pl., shade, ghost
mātrōna , -ae, f., married woman; matron
muliebris , -e, of a woman, womanly, feminine
mulier , mulieris , f., woman
nūptiae , -ārum, f. pl., marriage, wedding
pertinācia , -ae, f., stubbornness
placitus , -a, -um, pleasing
plerumque (adv.), generally, frequently
posterus , -a, -um, next, following
praeclūdō , praeclūdere , praeciūsī , praec- clūsus , shut, close
prior , prius (comparative adj.), earlier
pudicitia , -ae, f., modesty, chastity, virtue
repleō , replēre , replēvī , replētus , refill, replenish
reviviscō , reviviscere , revixī , —, come to life again, be restored to life
satietas , -tātis, f., abundance; satiety
sepeliō , sepelire , sepelīvī , sepultus , bury
siccus , -a, -um, dry, thirsty
spīritus , -ūs, m., breath, life
subinde (adv.), thereupon, immediately after
uterque , utraque , utrumque , each (of two); both
vidēlicet (adv.), of course, obviously
vīvus , -a, -um, alive, living

1. **soluta** . . . **fueris** = **soluta** . . . **eris**; **solvō**,
here, free (from life)

2. The guard adapts Vergil (*Aeneid*, IV.34),
substituting *sentire* for the original *cūrāre*.

3. **aggredior**, *here*, assault, assail

4. The maidservant quotes Vergil's *Aeneid*,
IV.38

5. **in hanc partem**, to this point, in this sense

6. **tantum**, *here and frequently*, adv., only

ut quisquis ex notis ignotisque¹ ad monumentum venisset, putaret exspirasse super corpus viri pudicissimam uxorem. Ceterum delectatus miles et forma mulieris et secreto, quicquid boni per facultates poterat coëmebat et prima statim nocte² in monumentum ferebat. Itaque unius cruciarii parentes ut viderunt laxatam custodiam, detraxere nocte pendentem supremoque mandaverunt officio. At miles circumscriptus dum desidet, ut postero die vidit unam sine cadavere crucem, veritus supplicium, mulieri quid accidisset exponit: nec se exspectaturum³ iudicis sententiam, sed gladio ius dicturum^{3,4} ignaviae suae. Commodaret³ modo illa perituro locum et fatale conditorum familiari ac viro faceret. Mulier non minus misericors quam pudica "nec istud" inquit "diī sinant, ut eodem tempore duorum mihi carissimorum hominum duo funera spectem. Malo mortuum impendere quam vivum occidere." Secundum hanc orationem iubet ex arca corpus mariti sui tolli atque illi quae vacabat cruci affigi. Usus est miles ingenio prudentissimae feminae, posteroque die populus miratus est qua ratione mortuus isset in crucem.

affigō, affigere, affixi, affixus, fasten, attach, affix, pin	inquit (defective verb), he, she, it says itaque (conj.), and so
arca, -ae, f., box, coffin	laxō (1), weaken; interrupt; relax
at (conj.), but	mandō (1), entrust, commit
cadāver, cadāveris, n., corpse	maritus, -i, m., husband
cēterum (conj.), besides; on the other hand, but yet	misericors, -cordis, compassionate
circumscrībō [circum + scrībō], confine; cheat, circumvent	monumentum, -i, n., monument; tomb
coēmō, coēmere, coēmī, coēmptus, purchase, buy up	mulier, mulieris, f., woman
commōdō (1), lend, supply	officium, -i, n., service, duty, function
conditōrium, -i, n., tomb	pendeō, pendere, pependī, —, hang (down), be suspended
cruciārius, -i, m., crucified person	posterus, -a, -um, next, following
crux, crucis, f., cross	prūdēns, -entis, wise, sensible, clever, discreet
custōdia, -ae, f., watch, guard-duty	pudicus, -a, -um, modest, chaste, pure
dēlectō (1), delight, please, charm	quisquis, quidquid (quicquid) (indef. pron.), whoever, whatever
dēsideō, dēsidēre, dēsēdī, —, sit idle, remain inactive	ratiō, -ōnis, f., account, reason; method, way
dētrahō, dētrahere, dētrāxi, dētractus, pull down, drag down	sēcrētum, -i, n., hiding-place
exspirō (1), breathe out, perish, expire	secundum (prep. + acc.), following
facultās, -tatis, f., power, means	sinō, sinere, sīvī or sīlī, situs, allow
familiāris, familiāris, -ium, m. or f., friend, intimate acquaintance, companion	statim (adv.), immediately
fatalis, -e, fated, destined	super (prep. + acc.), over, above, upon
funus, funeris, n., funeral; funeral procession; death	supplicium, -i, n., punishment
ignāvia, -ae, f., laziness, idleness	suprēmus, -a, -um, final
impendeō, impendēre, —, —, hang	tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, raise, lift up; remove
	uxor, -ōris, f., wife
	vacō (1), be empty
	vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living

1. **Ignōtus, -a, -um,** here, unknown, strange,
unfamiliar

2. **primā...nocte,** at the beginning of the night

3. **exspectārum (esse), dictūrum (esse),** and
commodāret are all used in implied indirect

discourse after *exponit*, the first two in implied
indirect statements, the last in implied indirect
command.

4. **iūs dicere**, pronounce judgment

5. **diī = dī**

Saint Augustine

Saint Augustine (354-430 A.D.) was born in Numidia to a heathen father of humble origin and a mother who was a devout Christian. As he himself tells us in his autobiographical work, the *Confessiones*, Augustine's young manhood was spent in dissolute living and a brief affiliation with the Manichean sect.¹ He was finally converted to Catholicism by the influence of his mother and by the teaching of Ambrose, Bishop of Milan. In 395, Augustine became the Bishop of Hippo in Africa, a position he retained until his death.

The *Confessiones* provides a vivid account of Augustine's early education and sinful activities. At sixteen, he tells us, he stole the fruit from a pear tree with some of his friends, and this event was to assume great proportions for the mature convert. Soon after that incident, he left home to study at Carthage, where he became acquainted with the works of Cicero and Vergil. In Carthage he led a wild life with his mistress, by whom he had a son. The three then moved on to Italy, where Augustine became a professor of rhetoric at Rome and Milan. The mistress was eventually sent back to Africa, and Augustine married a young, chaste girl of his mother's choosing. Shortly thereafter, his conversion took place.

Augustine wrote many sermons that make great use of Cicero's rhetorical devices, and his most polished philosophical work, *Dē Cīvītāte Deī*, contains liberal quotations from Sallust, Vergil, and Horace. The following selections from the *Confessiones* display one aspect of Augustine's Latin prose style. Imitative of the man's character, full of contradictions and changing moods, the style frequently shifts from clear and precise prose to verbose and elaborate rhetoric. Extravagant diction in passages recounting his sinful early life contrasts with a much plainer style in passages about his religious faith. The widely different styles of the openings of the first two books can be understood in light of Augustine's remark, "to confess thy iniquity, to confess to the grace of God: accuse thyself, glorify Him." Notable features of Augustine's Latin include new church vocabulary (sometimes borrowed from Greek), parataxis and syntax reflective of common speech, and frequent anaphora combined with *variatiō*.

Augustine stands at the juncture between the classical and medieval periods, and his Latin style, while very much dependent upon classical learning, forms, and syntax, also looks forward in its new simplicity and religious fervor. Classical texts were pagan and addressed a literary and educated elite, but Augustine sought a larger and largely Christian audience.

1. Under the leadership of the Persian teacher Manichaeus, this sect was informed by a conflation of Christian, Zoroastrian, Buddhist, and other elements and, in its dualistic theory of a basic conflict between light and darkness, held that evil was inherent in matter.

Saint Augustine, *Confessiones* I.1

Magnus es, Domine, et laudabilis valde:¹ magna virtus tua et sapientiae tuae non est numerus.² Et laudare te vult homo, aliqua portio creaturae tuae, et homo circumferens mortalitatem suam, circumferens testimonium peccati sui et testimonium quia³ superbis resistis.⁴ Et tamen laudare te vult homo, aliqua portio creaturae tuae. Tu excitas ut laudare te delectet quia fecisti nos ad⁵ te et inquietum est cor nostrum donec requiescat in te. Da mihi, Domine, scire et intellegere utrum sit prius invocare te an laudare te et scire te prius an invocare te. Sed quis te invocat nesciens te? Aliud enim pro alio potest invocare nesciens. An potius invocaris ut sciaris? Quomodo autem invocabunt in quem non crediderunt? Aut quomodo credent sine praedicante?⁶ Et laudabunt Dominum qui requirunt eum.⁷ Quaerentes enim invenient eum et invenientes laudabunt eum. Quaeram te, Domine, invocans te et invocem te credens in te: praedicatus enim es nobis. Invocat te, Domine, fides mea quam dedisti mihi, quam inspirasti mihi per humanitatem Filii tui, per ministerium praedicatoris tui.

creātūra, -ae, f., creation
excitō (1), arouse, stimulate, provoke
hūmānitās, -tatis, f., kindness; humanity
inquiētus, -a, -um, restless, unquiet, disturbed
Inspirō (1), breathe in, inspire
invoco (1), invoke, call upon
ministérium, -i, n., office, service, work
mortalitās, -tatis, f., mortality
peccātum, -i, n., sin
portiō, -onis, f., portion, part
potius (comparative adv.), rather

praedicātor, -ōris, m., preacher
praedicō (1), proclaim, preach
requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvi, requiētus, rest, find relief
requirō, requirere, requiēsīvī, requiēsītus, seek
resistō, resistere, restitī, —, oppose, resist,
 contend against (+ dat.)
superbus, -a, -um, proud, arrogant
testimōnium, -i, n., evidence, proof
valdē (adv.), exceedingly, very

1. *Magnus . . . valde*, adapted from Psalms 145:3
 2. *magna . . . numerus*, adapted from Psalms 147:5
 3. **quia**, here, that

4. *superbis resistis*, adapted from James 4:6
 5. **ad**, here, for
 6. *Quo modo . . . praedicante*, adapted from Romans 10:14
 7. *Et . . . eum*, adapted from Psalms 21:27

Saint Augustine, *Confessiones* II.1-2

Recordari volo transactas foeditates meas et carnales corruptiones animae meae, non quod eas amem, sed ut amem te, Deus meus. Amore amoris tui facio istud, recolens vias meas nequissimas in amaritudine recognitacionis meae ut tu

amāritūdō, -tūdinis, f., bitterness
carnālis, -e, of the flesh
corruptiō, -ōnis, f., corruption
foeditās, -tatis, f., foulness; (pl.) foul deeds
nēquam (indecl. adj.), bad, useless; (morally) worthless, depraved; comparative = **nēquior**; superlative = **nēquissimus**

recogitatiō, -ōnis, f., recollection
recolō, recolere, recolūl, recultus, recall, reflect upon
recordor (1), recall
trānsigō, trānsigere, trānsēgī, trānsāctus, carry out, complete

dulcescas mihi, dulcedo non fallax, dulcedo felix et secura, et colligens me a dispersione, in qua frustatim discussus sum, dum ab uno te aversus in multa evanui. Exarsi enim aliquando satiari inferis in adolescentia et silvescere ausus sum variis et umbrosis amoribus, et contabuit species mea et conputrui coram oculis tuis placens mihi et placere cupiens oculis hominum.

Et quid erat quod me delectabat nisi amare et amari? Sed non tenebatur modus ab animo usque ad animum, quatenus est luminosus limes amicitiae sed exhalabantur nebulae de limosa concupiscentia carnis et scatebra pubertatis et obnubilabant atque obfuscabant cor meum ut non discerneretur serenitas dilectionis a caligine libidinis. Utrumque in confuso aestuabat et rapiebat inbecillam aetatem per abrupta cupiditatum atque mersabat gurgite flagitorum. Invaluerat super me ira tua, et nesciebam. Obsurdueram stridore catenae mortalitatis meae, poena superbiae animae meae, et ibam longius a te, et sinebas, et iactabar et effundebar et diffuebam et ebulliebam per fornicationes meas, et tacebas.

abruptum , -i, <i>n.</i> , precipice, cliff	fornicatiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , fornication
aestuō (1), burn fiercely, seethe, boil up	frustatim (adv.), piece by piece, in pieces
aliquandō (adv.), at some time or other; once	gurges , gurgitis , <i>m.</i> , whirlpool; maelstrom
cāligō , cāliginis , <i>f.</i> , darkness, fog, gloom	inbēcillus (= imbēcillus), -a, -um, weak, feeble
carō , carnis , -ium, <i>f.</i> , meat, flesh	inferō , -a, -um, below
catēna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , chain	inferi , -orum, <i>m. pl.</i> , the dead, inhabitants of the lower world; hell
colligō , colligere , collēgi , collēctus , gather together	invalēscō , invalēscere , invaluī , —, become strong, prevail
concupiscentia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , greedy desire	libidō , libidinis , <i>f.</i> , desire, pleasure, passion, lust
cōfūsum , -i, confusion, disorder, obscurity	limes , limitis , <i>m.</i> , path, boundary
conputrēscō , conputrēscere , conputrui , —, putrefy, become putrid	limōsus , -a, -um, muddy, slimy
contābēscō , contābēscere , contābuī , —, waste away, rot away	mersō (1), immerse, submerge, drown
→ cōram (prep. + abl.), in the presence of, before	mortalitās , -tatis, <i>f.</i> , mortality
cupiditās , -tatis, <i>f.</i> , desire	nebula , -ae, <i>f.</i> , mist, vapor, smoke, fog, darkness
cupiō , cupere , cupivī or cupil , cupitus , want, desire	obfuscō (1), confuse, obscure, darken
diffluō , diffluere , diffluxi , —, flow away, waste away	obnūbilō (1), cloud over
dilectiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , love, affection	obsurdēscō , obsurdēscere , obsurduī , —, become deaf
discernō , discernere , discrēvi , discrētus , separate, distinguish	pubertās , -tatis, <i>f.</i> , puberty
discindō , discindere , discidi , discissus , tear apart	quātenus (adv.), insofar as, inasmuch as
dispersiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , dispersion	rapiō , rapere , rapuī , raptus , seize and carry off; snatch
dulcēdō , dulcēdinis , <i>f.</i> , sweetness	satiō (1), satisfy, fill full
dulcēscō , dulcēscere , —, —, become sweet	scatebra , -ae, <i>f.</i> , bubbling spring; bubbling up, gushing
ēbulliō , ēbullire , ēbullivī or ēbullii , —, bubble up, boil over	sēcūrus , -a, -um, free from care, secure
effundō , effundere , effūdi , effūsus , pour out, let loose	serēnitās , -tatis, <i>f.</i> , clearness, serenity
ēvānēscō , ēvānēscere , ēvānuī , vanish away	silvēscō , silvēscere , —, —, grow wild
exardēscō , exardēscere , exarsi , —, blaze up, hotly desire	sinō , sinere, sīv or sīl, situs , allow
exhalō (1), exhale, breathe out, give off	stridor , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , harsh noise, rattling, creaking
fallāx , fallācis , deceptive, treacherous, false	superbia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , pride; arrogance
flāgitium , -i, <i>n.</i> , shame, outrage, disgrace	uterque , utraque , utrumque , each (of two); both
	varius , -a, -um, various, different

Saint Augustine, *Confessiones* II.4

Furtum certe punit lex tua, Domine, et lex scripta in cordibus hominum, quam ne ipsa quidem delet iniquitas; quis¹ enim fur aequo animo furem patitur? Nec copiosus adactum inopia. Et ego furtum facere volui, et feci, nulla compulsus egestate nisi penuria et fastidio iustitiae et sagina iniquitatis. Nam id furatus sum quod mihi abundabat et multo melius; nec ea re volebam frui quam furto appetebam, sed ipso furto et peccato. Arbor erat pirus in vicinia nostrae vineae, pomis onusta, nec forma nec sapore inlecebrosis. Ad hanc excutiendam atque asportandam nequissimi adulescentuli perreximus nocte intempesta, quousque ludum de pestilentiae more in areis produxeramus, et abstulimus inde onera ingentia non ad nostras epulas, sed vel² proicienda porcis, etiamsi aliquid inde comedimus, dum tamen fieret a nobis quod eo liberet,³ quo non liceret. Ecce cor meum, Deus, ecce cor meum, quod miseratus es in imo abyssi. Dicat tibi nunc ecce cor meum, quid ibi quaerebat, ut essem gratis malus et malitia meae causa nulla esset nisi malitia. Foeda erat, et amavi eam; amavi perire, amavi defectum

abundō (1), overflow; abound, be plentiful
abyssus, -i, f., bottomless pit, abyss
adigō, adigere, adēgī, adāctus, drive, impel, force, reduce
aequus, -a, -um, level, equal; fair; calm, composed
appetō [*ad* + *petō*], desire, seek to obtain, strive after
arbor, -oris, f., tree
ārea, -ae, f., open space; playground
asportō (1), carry off, remove; rob
comedō, comedere or comēsse, comēdi, **comēs(s)us or comestus**, eat up, consume, devour
dēfectus, -ūs, m., failure, weakness, defect, fault, mistake
egestās, -tātis, f., indigence, need, want
epulæ, -ārum, f. pl., feast, banquet, sumptuous meal
etiamsī (conj.), even if, even though
excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussus, shake
fastidium, -i, n., aversion, weariness; disdain, contempt
foedus, -a, -um, foul, filthy, shameful
fruor, frui, fructus sum, enjoy (+abl.)
fūr, fūris, m., thief
fūrō (1), steal
fūrtum, -i, n., theft, stealing
grātis (adv.), for no reward, without payment, for nothing
īmus, -a, -um, lowest, deepest, bottommost, bottom of
inīquitās, -tātis, f., unevenness, inequality; unfairness
inlecebrosus, -a, -um, seductive, enticing

inopia, -ae, f., lack of resources, poverty; lack
intempestus, -a, -um, untimely, unseasonable
nox intempesta, the dead of night
iūstitia, -ae, f., justice
libet, libēre, libuit or libitum est, it is pleasing, it is agreeable
lūdus, -i, m., play; game
miseror (1), pity, take pity on
nēquam (indecl. adj.), bad, useless; (morally) worthless, depraved; comparative = **nēquior**; superlative = **nēquissimus**
onus, oneris, n., load, burden
onustus, -a, -um, having a load, laden
peccātum, -i, n., error, mistake; moral offense, sin
pēnūria, -ae, f., scarcity, want, poverty
pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus, make one's way, go on, proceed
pestilentia, -ae, f., plague, pestilence
pirus, -i, f., pear tree
pōnum, -i, n., fruit
porcus, -i, m., male pig, hog
prōdūcō [*prō* + *dūcō*], bring forth, lead on, extend, draw out
prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēci, prōiectus, throw (forth)
pūniō, pūnire, pūnivi or pūniī, pūnitus, punish
quōusque (adv.), as far as, as long as
sagīna, -ae, f., fattening; diet of gladiators; fatness, corpulence
sapor, -ōris, m., flavor, taste
vicīnia, -ae, f., neighborhood
vīnea, -ae, f., vineyard

1. **quis**, interrogative pronoun used adjectively
 2. **vel**, here, even

3. **liberet**, sc., īre

meum, non illud ad quod deficiebam, sed defectum meum ipsum amavi, turpis anima et dissiliens a firmamento tuo in exterminium, non dedecore aliquid, sed dedecus appetens.

appetō [*ad+petō*], desire, seek to obtain, strive after
defectus, -ūs, *m.*, failure, weakness, defect, fault, mistake
dēficio [*dē+faciō*], fail, be lacking; weaken

dissiliō, **dissilire**, **dissilui**, —, spring or move violently apart
exterminium, -ī, *n.*, banishment; destruction
firmāmentum, -ī, *n.*, support, strengthening

Einhard

Einhard (775?–840 A.D.) was born in the ancient Frankish homeland in the valley of the river Main. After being raised in the monastery of Fulda, he was received into Charlemagne's court as one of a group of learned men gathered to form a palace school. Einhard was on good terms with Charlemagne and became private secretary to his son and successor, Louis the Pious.

Einhard wrote a number of works, but the most famous and most interesting is his *Vita Karoli Magni*, the "Life of Charlemagne." Written between 817 and 830, the *Vita* displays Einhard's classical learning but also demonstrates that its author was not writing in his native language. Indeed, in his introduction to the *Vita*, Einhard describes himself in relation to the task of writing in Latin as *homō barbarus*. He also declares that in order to write Charlemagne's life he had to ignore Cicero's dictum that a writer incapable of arranging his thoughts in a stylistically skillful manner abuses leisure and letters. Still, the structure of the *Vita* owes much to the genre of classical biography, in particular to Suetonius' *Lives of the Caesars*.

While in much of the *Vita* Einhard appears in control of classical syntax and usage, he also reveals his inability or disinclination to construct balanced, periodic sentences. To some extent, his constructions and word order may resemble those of his native Frankish rather than those of Latin. In addition, many features of later Latin can be observed in the *Vita*: the tendency to use the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in which classical Latin would call for the indicative, a vocabulary substantially drawn from the Christian world in which he lived, and an increased use of the ablative of the gerund in constructions where classical Latin would use a nominative participle. Although Einhard's Latin does not achieve the smoothness and polish of the Renaissance humanists, it nevertheless stands as a good example of the scholarly Latin of the medieval period.

The first selection that follows describes an encounter with treacherous Basques while Charlemagne and his army were returning from Spain. The second selection contains a physical description of Charlemagne and an account of his daily activities with his courtiers. The third passage presents the circumstances surrounding his being crowned Holy Roman Emperor on Christmas Day in 800 A.D.

Einhard, *Vita Karoli Magni* 9

9. Cum enim assiduo ac paene continuo cum Saxonibus bello certaretur, dispositis per congrua confiniorum loca praesidiis, Hispaniam quam maximo poterat belli apparatu adgreditur¹; saltuque Pyrinei superato, omnibus quae adierat oppidis atque castellis in ditionem acceptis, salvo et incolomi exercitu revertitur; praeter quod in ipso Pyrinei iugo Wasconicam perfidiam parumper in redeundo contigit experiri. Nam cum agmine longo, ut loci et angustiarum situs permittebat, porrectus iret exercitus, Wascones in summi montis vertice positis insidiis—est enim locus ex opacitate silvarum, quarum ibi maxima est copia, insidiis ponendis opportunus—extremam impedimentorum partem et eos qui novissimi agminis² incidentes subsidio praecedentes tuebantur desuper incursantes in subiectam vallem deiciunt, consertoque cum eis proelio usque ad unum omnes interficiunt, ac direptis impedimentis, noctis beneficio quae iam instabat protecti summa cum celeritate in diversa disperguntur. Adiuvabat in hoc facto Wascones et levitas armorum et loci in quo res gerebatur situs, econtra

adiuvō, **adiuvāre**, **adiūvi**, **adiūtus**, help, aid
angustiae, **ārum**, *f. pl.*, narrow strait, defile
apparātus, **-ūs**, *m.*, equipment, apparatus
assiduus, **-a**, **-um**, continuous, constant
beneficium, **-i**, *n.*, favor, benefit, service
castellum, **-i**, citadel, fortress, stronghold
certō (1), struggle, contest, strive
cōfinium, **-i**, *n.*, common boundary, confine, border
congruus, **-a**, **-um**, suitable, fit, appropriate
cōserō, **cōserere**, **cōserui**, **cōsертus**, join
contingō, **contingere**, **contigī**, **contāctus**, happen, befall
continuus, **-a**, **-um**, continuous, without interruption
deditiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, surrender
dēciō, **dēcere**, **dēcī**, **dēiectus**, cast down, drive out, dislodge
dēsuper (adv.), down from above
diripiō, **diripere**, **diripū**, **direptus**, tear in pieces, snatch away
dispergō, **dispergere**, **dispersī**, **dispersus**, scatter on all sides, disperse
dispōnō [*dis* + *pōnō*], place here and there, distribute
ēcontrā (adv.) = *contrā*
exercitus, **-ūs**, *m.*, army
Hispānia, **-ae**, *f.*, Spain
impedimentum, **-i**, *n.*, burden, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage (of an army); baggage train
incēdō [*in* + *cēdō*], advance, proceed
incolomis [= *incolumis*], **-e**, uninjured, safe, sound
incursō (1), run against, assault, attack

instō, **instāre**, **institī**, —, press (up)on, pursue; threaten
iugum, **-i**, *n.*, ridge, mountain-top, summit
levitās, **-tatis**, *f.*, lightness
opācītās, **-tatis**, *f.*, shadiness, shade
opportūnus, **-a**, **-um**, suitable, fit; favorable
paene (adv.), nearly, almost
parumper (adv.), for a moment, for a little while
perfidia, **-ae**, *f.*, falsehood, dishonesty, treachery
permittō [*per* + *mittō*], allow, permit
porrigō, **porrigere**, **porrēxi**, **porrēctus**, stretch out, extend
praesidiū, **-i**, *n.*, guard, garrison
praeter (prep. + acc.), except, beyond, besides
proelium, **-i**, *n.*, battle
prōtegō [*prō* + *tegō*], cover over, protect
Pyrinēus (*mōns*), **Pyrinēi**, *m.*, the Pyrenees, mountain range between France and Spain
revertor, **revertī**, **reversus sum**, return
saltus, **-ūs**, *m.*, narrow pass, ravine, mountain-valley
salvus, **-a**, **-um**, safe, sound
Saxonēs, **-um**, *m. pl.*, Saxons
silva, **-ae**, *f.*, forest, woods
situs, **-ūs**, *m.*, situation, site
subiectus, **-a**, **-um**, lying under, neighboring, adjacent
subsidiū, **-i**, *n.*, aid, help, protection
tueor, **tuēri**, **tuitus or tūtus sum**, watch, observe; defend, protect
vallis, **vallis**, **-ium**, *f.*, valley
Wasconēs, **-um**, *m. pl.*, Basques
Wasconicus, **-a**, **-um**, of the Basques, Basque

1. **aggreḍior**, *here*, attack2. **novissimum agmen**, *here*, rear-guard

Francos et armorum gravitas et loci iniquitas per¹ omnia Wasconibus reddidit impares. In quo proelio Eggihardus regiae mensae praepositus, Anshelmus comes palatii² et Hruodlandus Brittanici limitis praefectus cum aliis conpluribus interficiuntur. Neque hoc factum ad praesens³ vindicari poterat, quia hostis re perpetrata ita dispersus est ut ne fama quidem remaneret ubinam gentium quaeri potuisset.

Anshelmus , -i, m., Anselm	perpetrō (1), complete, execute, accomplish; perpetrate
Brittanicus , -a, -um, of Brittany	praefectus , -i, m., commander, governor
conplurēs , -a or -ia, several, very many	praepositus , -i, m., head, overseer, director
dispergō , dispergere , dispersi , dispersus ,	praesēns , -entis, present
scatter on all sides, disperse	proelium , -i, n., battle
Eggihardus , -i, m., Eckhart	reddō , reddere , reddidi , redditus , give back, return; render
Franci , -ōrum, m. pl., Franks	rēgius , -a, -um, of a king, royal
Hruodlandus , -i, m., Roland	ubinam (adv.), where
impar , imparis , unequal; inferior	ubinam gentium , where in the world
iniquitās , -tatis, f., unevenness	vindicō (1), avenge, punish
limes , limitis , m., path, boundary; <i>here</i> , province, margraviate	Wasconēs , -um, m. pl., Basques
palatiūm , -i, n., palace	

1. **per**, *here*, in respect to

2. **comes palatiū**, *in the Carolingian period*, title of the head of a law-court separated from

the king's court and head of the chancery issuing judicial records

3. **ad praesēns**, post-classical, for the present

Einhard, *Vita Karoli Magni* 22

22. Corpore fuit amplo atque robusto, statura eminenti, quae tamen iustum non excederet—nam septem suorum pedum proceritatem eius constat habuisse mensuram—, apice capitis rotundo, oculis praegrandibus ac vegetis, naso paululum mediocritatem excedenti, canitie pulchra, facie laeta et hilari; unde formae auctoritas ac dignitas tam stanti quam sedenti plurima adquirebatur; quamquam cervix obesa et brevior venterque projectior videretur, tamen haec ceterorum membrorum celabat aequalitas; incessu firmo totaque corporis habitudine virili; voce clara¹ quidem, sed quae minus corporis formae conveniret; valitudine prospera, praeter quod, antequam decederet, per quatuor annos crebro febribus corripiebatur, ad² extreum etiam uno pede claudicaret. Et tunc quidem plura suo arbitratu quam medicorum consilio faciebat, quos paene exosos habebat, quod ei in cibis assa, quibus assuetus erat, dimittere et elixis adsuescere suadebant. Exercebatur³ assidue equitando ac venando; quod illi gentilicium erat, quia vix ulla in terris⁴ natio invenitur quae in hac arte

adquirō, adquirere, adquisivi, adquisitus, acquire, gain
adsuēscō (=assuēscō), adsuēscere, adsuēvi, adsuētus, make accustomed, accustom
aequalitās, -tatis, f., proportion, uniformity
amplus, -a, -um, large
apex, apicis, m., top
arbitrātus, -ūs, m., judgment, discretion
assiduē (adv.), continually, constantly, regularly
assus, -a, -um, roasted
brevis, -e, brief, short
cānitiēs, -ēi, f., gray or white hair
cervix, cervicis, f., neck
cēteri, -ae, -a, other, the rest
claudicō (1), limp
cōstat, cōstāre, cōstitut, it is agreed
conveniō [con + veniō], suit, fit (+ dat.)
corripiō, corripere, corripiū, correptus, attack
 suddenly, seize, overcome
crēbrō (adv.), frequently
dēcēdō [dē + cēdō], depart; die
dignitās, -tatis, f., worthiness, dignity, status,
 esteem
dīmittō [dis + mittō], leave, give up, renounce
elixus, -a, -um, boiled
ēminēns, -entis, conspicuous
equitō (1), ride (on horseback)
excēdō [ex + cēdō], exceed
exōsus, -a, -um, hateful
febris, febris, -ium, f., fever
firmus, -a, -um, strong, powerful, firm
gentilicius, -a, -um, national, native

habitūdō, -tūdinis, f., condition, bearing,
 posture
hilaris, -e, cheerful
incessus, -ūs, m., gait, walk
→iūstus, -a, -um, just, fair, right
medicus, -i, m., doctor
mediocritās, -tatis, f., moderateness of size,
 medium, mean
membrum, -i, n., limb
mēnsura, -ae, f., measure
nāsus, -i, m., nose
nātiō, -onis, f., race, nation, tribe
obēsus, -a, -um, fat, thick
paene (adv.), almost
paululum (adv.), a little
praegrandis, -e, very large
praeter (prep. + acc.), except, beyond
prōcēritās, -tatis, f., height
prōiectus, -a, -um, prominent, protuberant
prosperus, -a, -um, favorable, fortunate,
 prosperous
quat(t)uor (indecl. numerical adj.), four
robustus, -a, -um, strong, powerful, robust
rotundus, -a, -um, round, rotund
sedeō, sedēre, sēdi, sessus, sit
septem (indecl. numerical adj.), seven
statūra, -ae, stature, size
suādeō, suādere, suāsi, suāsus, persuade,
 urge, advise
valitūdō, -tūdinis, f., health
vegetus, -a, -um, lively, animated
venter, ventris, m., belly, stomach

1. **clārus, here**, loud, sonorous
 2. **ad, here, at**

3. **exerceō, here in passive, exercise oneself**
 4. **terracē, here, world**

Francis possit aequari. Delectabatur etiam vaporibus aquarum¹ naturaliter calentium, frequenti natatu corpus exercens; cuius adeo peritus fuit ut nullus ei iuste valeat anteferri. Ob hoc etiam Aquisgrani regiam exstruxit ibique extremis vitae annis usque ad obitum perpetim habitavit. Et non solum filios ad balneum, verum optimates et amicos, aliquando etiam satellitum et custodum corporis turbam invitavit, ita ut nonnumquam centum vel eo amplius homines una lavarentur.

aequō (1), make equal; compare
aliquandō (adv.), at some time or other; sometimes
amplius (comparative adv.), more
anteferō [<i>ante</i> + <i>ferō</i>], prefer, rank above
Aquaegrāni , Aquārumgrāni , <i>f. pl.</i> , Aachen, Aix-la-Chapelle (the "springs of Apollo"; Granus was a German cult title for Apollo)
balneum , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i> , bath
caleō , calēre , calui , calitus , be warm, be hot
centum (indecl. numerical adj.), one hundred
exstruō , exstruere , exstrūxi , exstrūctus , build, construct
Franci , -ōrum , <i>m. pl.</i> , Franks
frequēns , -entis , frequent, regular
habitō (1), live
invitō (1), invite

lavō , lavere or lavāre , lāvī , lautus or lōtus , wash, bathe
natātus , -ūs , <i>m.</i> , swimming
nātūraliter (adv.), by nature, naturally
nōnnumquam (adv.), sometimes
obitus , -ūs , <i>m.</i> , death
optimātēs , -iūm , <i>m. pl.</i> , the aristocrats, the nobility
peritus , -a , -um , skillful, expert (+gen.)
perpetim (adv.), constantly, without interruption
rēgia , -ae , <i>f.</i> , palace
satelles , satellitis , <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> , attendant; (<i>pl.</i>) retinue
valeō , valēre , valuī , valitus , be strong, be able; fare well
vapor , -ōris , <i>m.</i> , vapor, steam

1. **aquae**, *here*, springs

Einhard, *Vita Karoli Magni* 28

28. Ultimi adventus sui non solum hae fuere causae,¹ verum etiam quod Romani Leonem pontificem multis affectum iniuriis, erutis scilicet oculis linguaque amputata, fidem regis implorare compulerunt. Idcirco Romam veniens propter reparandum, qui nimis conturbatus erat, ecclesiae statum ibi totum hiemis tempus extraxit. Quo tempore Imperatoris² et Augusti nomen accepit. Quod primo in tantum³ aversatus est ut adfirmaret se eo die, quamvis praecipua festivitas esset, ecclesiam non intraturum⁴ si pontificis consilium praescire potuisset. Invidiam tamen suscepti nominis, Romanis imperatoribus⁵ super hoc indignantibus, magna tulit patientia. Vicitque eorum contumaciam magnanimitate, qua eis procul dubio longe praestantior erat, mittendo ad eos crebras legationes et in epistolis fratres eos appellando.

adfirmō (1), maintain, declare
adventus , -ūs, m., arrival; approach; coming
afficiō [ad+faciō], afflict
amputō (1), cut off, cut out
appellō (1), name, call
Augustus , -ī, m., Augustus, an official title
āversor (1), turn away (from); refuse
compellō [con+pellō], compel, force
contumācia , -ae, f., defiance, disobedience
conturbō (1), confuse, disorder, disturb
crēber , crēbra , crēbrum , frequent
ecclēsia , -ae, f., church
epistola , -ae, f., letter
ēruō [ē+ruō], root out, dig out, tear out
extrahō , extrahere , extrāxi , extractus , draw out, spend
festivitās , -tatis, f., holiday
hiems , hiemis , f., winter
idcircō (adv.), for that reason, therefore
implōrō (1), call upon for help, invoke

indignor (1), be indignant, be resentful
intrō (1), enter
lēgatiō , -ōnis, f., embassy, legation
Leō , -ōnis, m., Pope Leo III (795-816)
lingua , -ae, f., tongue; language
magnanimitās , -tatis, f., greatness of soul, generosity of spirit
nimis (adv.), excessively, too
patientia , -ae, f., patience, tolerance, forbearance
pontifex , pontificis , m., Roman bishop, pope
praecipuus , -a, -um, special
praestāns , -antis, outstanding, pre-eminent
primō (adv.), at first
procul (adv.), at a distance, far, far off
reparō (1), recover, restore, repair
scilicet (adv.), namely
status , -ūs, m., condition, state
suscipiō [sub+capiō], take up, assume

1. In the preceding chapter, Einhard describes Charlemagne's great affection for the city of Rome and the circumstances of his visits there.

2. **Imperātor**, *here*, Emperor

3. **in tantum**, to so great an extent

4. **intrātūrum**, sc., *fuisse*

5. **Rōmānī imperātōrēs**, *here*, eastern or Byzantine Emperors

Medieval Latin: the Gesta Romanorum

After the last Roman emperor was dethroned in 476 A.D. and the western empire came to an end, Latin still continued to thrive as the language of the church and also of the civilized western world. It is only quite recently, within the past 100 years or so, that its importance has been severely diminished. The medieval period, although dominated by writers of the church, contains a wealth of other literature centered on more mundane topics. While several writers, steeped in a classical education, tried to perpetuate classical forms and style in their works, others utilized a more common form of Latin that is much closer in style and structure to the Romance languages than to the ancient literature we have been reading. This trend toward simplification had begun to manifest itself as early as the time of Plautus, when we can see two opposite forces at work in the history of the language: 1) the perpetuation of the vulgar or common speech, sometimes referred to as the *sermō plēbētus*, which is characterized by short, simple statements, uninvolved word order, a largely paratactic structure; and 2) the development of a highly literate and artistic language, the progress of which we have been observing in our survey of the style of Latin verse and prose. The literary language was always felt to be artificial insofar as it never became the natural speech for the Romans. A comparison of Cicero's formal writings with his informal letters will show the vast differences in style that existed in his own day, and the more colloquial language of Plautus, Terence, or Petronius (first century A.D.) is additional evidence of the existence of the "low" style side by side with the "high" one.

In the medieval period, an extension of the *sermō plēbētus* became prominent in a good deal of the literary activity. While some writers, notably Boethius, Augustine, (and, much later, Dante, Erasmus, and Milton) continued to emulate the classical forms of discourse, most adopted a looser style, closer in word order to the evolving Romance languages, with greater and freer use of prepositions and an ever-increasing disregard of the strict case usages so important in classical Latin. For example:

1. Prepositions are used with greater frequency to clarify meanings formerly conveyed in case endings alone (e.g., *per omnia* in line 42 of the selection from the *Gesta Rōmānōrum* below instead of the expected ablative of respect in regular classical Latin).
2. The subject accusative and infinitive construction is frequently abandoned in favor of subordinate clauses introduced by *quod* ("that") or *quia* ("that") with verbs either in the indicative or the subjunctive with no difference in meaning.
3. The careful distinctions between the uses of the indicative and the subjunctive are abandoned, with the moods being used indiscriminately.
4. Short, paratactic arrangements are preferred to long periodic sequences.
5. Sometimes we find the adverb *valdē* ("exceedingly, very") used with an adjective instead of the superlative form (e.g., line 1 of the selection from the *Gesta Rōmānōrum* below).

6. *suus* frequently appears for *eius*, showing the breakdown in the distinction between the reflexive and non-reflexive forms and also illustrating how *suus* becomes the ancestor for the possessive adjective in the Romance languages.
7. *quod* plus the indicative instead of *ut* plus the subjunctive frequently occurs in various kinds of subordinate clauses (e.g., line 7 of the selection from the *Gesta Rōmānōrum* below).

There are also changes in pronunciation and orthography (line numbers refer to the following selection from the *Gesta Rōmānōrum*):

1. *e* occurs for *ae*, as in *sepe* for *saepe* (line 3); *e* also occurs for *oe*, as in *cepit* for *coepit* (line 68).
2. *c* occurs for *t*, indicating the shift in pronunciation of *t* before *e* and *i* from a hard sound to *ts*, as in *preciō* for *pretiō* (line 11), and *eciam* for *etiam* (line 15).
3. There is confusion of consonants, as in *karissime* for *carissime* (line 17).
4. We frequently find a double *c* instead of a single one, as in *occulis* for *oculis* (line 40).
5. *ch* sometimes occurs for *h*, as in *michi* for *mihi* (line 22), illustrating the shift in the pronunciation from the aspirate *h* to the guttural *ch*.

This list is far from exhaustive, but the changes mentioned are adequate preparation for reading the following passage and also give some notion of the evolution of the language after the classical period.

The selection is a tale taken from the *Gesta Rōmānōrum*, a collection of medieval stories made in the thirteenth century. The collection comprises a wealth of tales taken from many different literatures, including Arabic, Persian, and Sanskrit, and is important chiefly because of the influence it has exerted on later writers. The *Gesta* was an important source for such authors as Chaucer, Boccaccio, Shakespeare, Schiller, Mark Twain, and others.

A Shrewd King (from the Gesta Romanorum)

Erat quidam rex iustus valde ac prudens, qui habebat in regno suo duos milites, unus iustus ac misericors, alter cupidus sive avarus. Miles iustus habebat quandam terram, quam miro modo cupidus cupiebat. Sepe ei precium optulit, quantum valuit. Ille vero semper respondit: "Hereditas mea a patre est; ideo numquam eam vendere volo." Miles vero cupidus eum de die in diem solicitabat ut ei terram venderet; sed in nullo ei consensum prebuit. Accidit post hec quod miles qui terram habebat infirmabatur usque ad mortem, de qua infirmitate mortuus est. Hec audiens miles cupidus cartam per se faciebat nomine alterius militis, et in littera continebatur quod pro precio certo ei terram vendidisset. Accessit ad domum defuncti et secum III testes precio conduxit et sigillum defuncti optinebat. Coram tribus testibus accepit¹ pollicem defuncti et cum pollice eius et sigillo suo cartam suam sigillavit. Hoc facto dixit tribus testibus, "Karissimi, ecce videtis quod iste miles propriis manibus cartam meam sigillavit. Testimonium huius rei perhibeatis!" At illi: "Eciam,² hoc firmiter promittimus." 15

Cum autem corpus defuncti terre fuisse commendatum, miles cupidus terram eius occupavit. Filius vero defuncti ad eum et dixit: "Karissime domine, cur terram meam occupas?" Qui ait: "Quomodo est terra tua?" At ille: "Pater meus est mortuus, et ego sum heres, et ideo terra est mea iure hereditario." Ait miles: "Numquid pater tuus in vita sua terram istam potuit dare aut vendere?" Qui ait: "Immo utrumque posset." At ille: "Scias ergo,

avārus, -a, -um , greedy	optineō (=obtineō) [ob + teneō] , obtain
→ c(h)arta, -ae, f. , leaf (of papyrus), document	perhibeo, perhibēre, perhibui, perhibitus , present, give
commendō (1), entrust	pollex, pollicis, m. , thumb
condūcō [<i>con</i> + <i>dūcō</i>], gather together, assemble; bribe	prēbeō (=praebeo) , prēbēre, prēbuī, prēbitus , present, give
cōnsensus, -ūs, m. , agreement	prōmittō [prō + mittō] , promise
contineō [<i>con</i> + <i>teneō</i>], contain, include	→ proprius, -a, -um , own, personal, individual
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī or cupiī, cupitus , want, desire	prūdens, -entis , wise, sensible
→ dēfunctus, -a, -um , deceased, dead	sigillum, -ī, n. , seal
firmiter (adv.), steadfastly, firmly	sigil(l)ō (1), sign, seal
hērēditārius, -a, -um , hereditary, pertaining to inheritance	sīve (conj.), here, or, or rather
hērēditās, -tatis, f. , inheritance	sol(l)icitō (1), trouble, harass
hērēs, hērēdis , <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> , heir, heiress	testimōnium, -ī, n. , evidence, proof
infirmitās, -tatis, f. , weakness, sickness	→ testis, testis, -īum, m. or f. , witness
infirmō (1), weaken	→ trēs, tria (numerical adj.), three
mīrus, -a, -um , remarkable, surprising, strange	uterque, utraque, utrumque , each (of two); both
numquid (adv.), <i>introducing a question anticipating the answer "no"</i>	valdē (adv.), exceedingly, very
occupō (1), seize, occupy, take possession (of)	valeō, valēre, valui, valitus , be strong, be able; be worth, be of value

1. *acciipiō, here*, grasp2. *eciam (=etiam)*, expressing an affirmative answer to a question, indeed, yes

karissime, quod michi certo precio terram istam vendidit et cartam super hoc fecit et propriis manibus coram tribus viris fide dignis cartam meam sigillavit." Ait iuvenis: "Expertus sum¹ quod sepius ei de vendicione terre loquebaris, sed numquam tibi consensit; immo simpliciter dixit quod numquam hereditatem patris sui venderet." Ait miles: "Si tibi videtur quod iniuriam fecerim, vade ergo et queras iusticiam!" Filius vero perrexit ad regem et flexis genibus cum lacrimis ei totum processum narravit a principio usque ad finem, quomodo iniuste miles ille eum ab hereditate sua expulisset.

Ideo ait: "Domine mi rex, pro Dei amore tuum adiutorium cum toto affectu peto." Rex vero cum esset iustus ac misericors, litteras suas fecit fieri ad militem, ut sine ulteriori dilacione ad eum veniret et secum testes suos duceret.

Miles cum mandatum regis audiret, statim die assignata cum testibus comparuit. Ait ei rex: "Dic michi, karissime, quo iure hereditatem istius iuvenis occupas?" Qui ait: "Domine, pater suus michi terram pro peccunia vendidit et super hoc cartam fecit et propriis manibus cartam meam sigillavit coram tribus hominibus fide dignis, quos mecum duxi." Ait rex illis tribus: "Karissimi, estne verum quod iste dicit?" At illi: "Eciam,² domine, per omnia. Nam oculis nostris vidimus et ideo testes huius rei sumus." Rex vero precepit ut miles per se in cameram privatam poneretur. Et sic factum est. Deinde fecit III testes ab invicem³ separari et quemlibet in specialem cameram poni tribus diebus et tribus noctibus.

adiūtōrium, -ī, n., help
affectus, -ūs, m., fondness, affection
assignō (1), assign, mark out
camera, -ae, f., vault; chamber, room
compārēō, **compārēre**, **compāruī**, —, be visible, be present
consentiō [*con+sentīō*], agree
dilāciō (= *dilātiō*), -ōnis, f., delay, postponement
flectō, **flectere**, **flexi**, **flexus**, bend
genū, -ūs, n., knee
hērēdītās, -tātis, f., inheritance
iniūstē (adv.), unjustly
invicem (adv.), by turns, in turn
iūstitia, -ae, f., justice
mandātūm, -ī, n., command
→narrō (1), tell, relate

1. **experior**, *here in the perfect tense*, know (by experience)

2. **eciam** (= *etiam*), expressing an affirmative

occupō (1), seize, occupy, take possession (of)
pergō, **pergere**, **perrēxi**, **perrēctus**, continue, proceed
prēcipiō (= *praecipiō*) [*prae+capiō*], decree, direct, order
privātūs, -a, -um, private
prōcessus, -ūs, m., development, proceeding(s)
quilibet, **quaclibet**, **quidlibet** (indef. pron.), anyone, anything . . . you will; anyone, anything . . . it pleases; *here*, each one
sēparō (1), separate
sigil(l)ō (1), sign, seal
simpliciter (adv.), simply
speciālis, -e, special, particular
ulterior, *ulterius*, further
vādō, **vādere**, —, —, go, rush
vendiciō (= *venditiō*), -ōnis, f., sale

answer to a question, indeed, yes

3. **ab invicem**. The preposition is used to reinforce the adverb and need not be translated.

Hoc factum fecit ad se vocari primum testem et ait ei: "Karissime, numquid 45
nosti oracionem dominicam?" At ille: "Immo, domine, eciam a iuventute."
Cui respondit: "Tibi non credo nisi michi dixeris a principio usque ad finem
sine aliquo defectu." At ille: "Domine, paratus sum hoc adimplere." Statim
incepit: "Pater noster, qui es," etc., usque ad finem sine aliquo defectu. Ait ei
rex: "Iam sum securus quod sine defectu dominicam oracionem scias
perfecte." Dixitque servis suis ut eum ducerent ad priorem cameram et 50
secundum testem ei presentarent. Quod et factum est. Cum autem venisset,
ait rex: "De facto istius militis michi narra, quomodo sit, quia ante te hic erat
senior ex vobis et michi retulit¹ ita verum sicut 'pater noster,' nec in aliquo
verbo menciebatur! Unde rogo te ut michi veritatem dicas, sicut socius tuus
fecit; et si possum perpendere quod veritatem non dixeris, mala morte 55
morieris." Ille hec audiens intra se cogitabat: "Certus sum quod socius meus
totum secretum facti militis narravit. Nisi ego hoc fecerim, filius mortis sum
ego." Statim cepit narrare a principio usque ad finem quomodo eos precio
conduxisset et quomodo pollicem mortui accepisset² et cartam quam ficerat,
per se sigilasset. Ait ei rex: "Credo quod verum michi dixisses." Dixitque 60
servis suis ut eum amoverent et III testem producerent. Illi vero sic fecerunt.
Cum autem III testis comparuit coram rege, ait ei rex: "Scias pro certo³ quod
duo socii tui mecum erant isto die! Et certus sum quia primus ita verum
michi dixit sicut 'paternoster' et, ut credo, eciam secundus. Dic ergo tu
veritatem de facto istius militis! Et si non feceris, amen dico tibi, hodie 65
suspenderis in patibulum." Ille hec audiens ait in corde suo: "Iam video per
dicta regis quod socii mei totum secretum militis narraverunt. Si ergo ego
non dixero, filius mortis sum ego." Et cepit simili modo narrare, sicut II

adimpleō [ad + impleō], fulfill
āmēn (adv.), truly, surely
camera, -ae, f., vault; chamber, room
compāreō, **compārēre**, **compāruī**, —, be
visible, be present
condūcō [con + dūcō], gather together,
assemble; bribe
defectus, -ūs, m., failure, deficiency; mistake
dominicūs, -a, -um, of the lord
intrā (prep. + acc.), within
iuventūs, -tūtis, f., youth
mencior (= *mentior*), **mentīrī**, **mentitus sum**,
lie, tell a falsehood
numquid (adv.), introducing a question anti-
cipating the answer "no"

patibulum, -i, n., fork-shaped yoke placed
around the neck of criminals
perfectē (adv.), perfectly
perpendō, **perpendere**, **perpendī**, —,
consider, weigh carefully
pollex, **pollicis**, m., thumb
prēsentō (= *praesentō*), **prēsentāre**, —,
prēsentātus, present
restituō, **restituere**, **restituī**, **restitūtus**,
restore
sēcrētum, -i, n., secret
secundus, -a, -um, following, second
sēcūrus, -a, -um, without care; sure
sīcūt (conj.), just as
sigillō (l), sign, seal

1. *retulit* = *rettulit*

2. *accipiō*, here, grasp

3. *prō certō*, as or for a certainty

dixerat, et cum eo in omnibus concordabat. Quod audiens rex ait: "Credo te
 70 verum dixisse." Statim fecit militem et alios II testes ante omnium
 conspectum vocari. Cum autem venissent, ait rex militi: "O tu pessime, cur
 tantam falsitatem defuncto fecisti? Ecce testes tui testimonium contra te
 dicunt!" Et totum factum coram omnibus recitavit. Miles negare non potuit.
 Statim eum vivum sepeliri precepit et III testes suspendi. Omnes vero regem
 75 laudabant, qui tam prudenter iudicium dedit.

concordō (1), agree

falsitās, -tātis, f., lie, falsehood

prēcipiō (= **praecipiō**) [prae + capiō], decree,
direct, order

prūdenter (adv.), wisely

recitō (1), read aloud, recite

sepeliō, **sepelīre**, **sepelīvī**, **sepultus**, bury

suspendō, **suspendere**, **suspendī**, **suspēnsus**,

hang

testimōnium, -ī, n., evidence, proof

vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living

Part IV

A Survey of Latin Poetry

Livius Andronicus

The earliest Latin poetry primarily filled social needs. It was limited almost exclusively to hymns, invocations to gods in order to seek protection, dirges, and, occasionally, heroic lays. In all cases, insofar as our scanty evidence tells us, these verse compositions were functional in purpose and betray an absence of the rapture, the imagination, and the fine attention to technical perfection which one associates with later, more sophisticated compositions.

Early Latin poetry was not self-conscious, and the religious, heroic, or popular themes were cast into a primitive accentual rhythm called Saturnian, doubtless because the work itself had associations with a mythical past. Although particulars of Saturnian rhythm are obscure and extremely debatable, one thing seems certain: it is characterized by a strong stress accent, with no hint of the quantitative rhythm which later became central to Latin poetry.

The Roman conquest of Magna Graecia (a name used to encompass the Greek cities in Southern Italy) in the third century B.C. introduced Italian peoples to the advanced literary achievement of the Greeks and also the formalism of Greek literature. The tendency toward formalism and convention was even more pronounced in the Hellenistic period (from the death of Alexander the Great in 323 B.C. to the first century B.C.) when Greek and Roman cultures came into contact. By this time Greek literature had already passed its zenith; the Hellenistic period was one dominated by scholar-poets, by writers fascinated by the study of literary techniques and the incorporation of obscure, learned allusions into their works. As a result many works of literature display a greater degree of self-consciousness than their Hellenic or Classical antecedents. The fact that literature served more than a functional purpose was painfully obvious to the simple, unsophisticated Roman, and the effect of this was dazzling for him. It now fell to him to develop his own literature, to make his own contribution to art. And this had to be a contribution which would somehow match the tone and effect of the Greek works of which he had recently become aware.

The Greek approach to literature was extremely formal. The basic meaning of their word for art, *technē*, dominated their view of poetry. It was a skill, a finely structured and controlled craft, whose conventions the artist had to learn and follow. Homer, the culmination of a line of oral composers, had created a canon for what epic was supposed to be, and all subsequent writers were bound to adhere to that canon: an epic poem had to be written in dactylic hexameters, it had to be composed in a combination of Ionic and Aeolic dialects, and it had to incorporate a sufficient number of archaisms and other words and expressions removed from common speech so as to underscore its elevation, its sublimity, its august tone. By the same token, choral lyric poetry was written in the Doric dialect; all subsequent writers of choral lyric were bound to compose in that dialect in order clearly to associate their compositions with the genre of which they were a part. This explains why the dialect changes in Greek tragedy from Attic in the spoken segments to Doric in the choral sequences. Other genres in Greek literature were similarly controlled.

In 242 B.C., Livius Andronicus (c. 284–c. 204 B.C.) came to Rome from Tarentum. Andronicus had been a slave and had come to Rome primarily in the capacity of a teacher. He paved the way for what was to become Latin literature

by translating Homer's *Odyssey* into Latin, presumably as a textbook for his students. The idea of adapting the dactylic hexameter into Latin did not occur to Andronicus, for quantitative rhythm would have been totally foreign to a language which was accentual in origin. But he was sufficiently aware of other features of Homeric epic to try to create a similar effect in Latin: the Greek writer would use the Ionic/Aeolic dialect to insure that his work would be associated with epic; Latin had no such elaborate dialectical distinctions. As a consequence, in order to lend a degree of elevation to his work and to remove it from the level of daily speech and also from the style of other types of poetry, Andronicus sought out archaic words and phrases, incorporated language from legal formulae into his poem, and used certain archaic forms which do not occur in fragments from works belonging to other less august poetical genres.

Recognizing that an aura of solemnity is central to epic, Andronicus strove to create a language peculiar to epic which would underscore that solemnity. That there was a conscious effort on his part in this direction may be seen by comparing the diction of his epic compositions with his tragic ones, where few of the curious features of the epic fragments appear. And although all Roman poetry recognizably contains some archaisms, the incidence is clearly greater in epic. The strides made by Livius Andronicus may seem easily obscured because of the scanty remains that we have and also because the student comes to him only after sampling the great achievement of later Latin writers. Yet his contribution to the birth of literary consciousness in Italy must not be underestimated.

Among the features to notice are:

1. the archaic genitive singular of the first declension in *-ās* (14), a conscious attempt at archaism, for *-āī* was the more common form at that time
2. the archaic adverbs in *-tim* (15) [This is not to say that all adverbs in *-tim* are felt as archaic; cf. *statim*.]
3. the vocative ending in *-ie* (2) for *-ius* nouns of the second declension
4. the future imperative (20) used in a legal sense in order to impart a degree of distance and remoteness to the tone
5. *igitur* found not as a postpositive, as later regulated by Cicero

Livius Andronicus 1

Virum mihi, Camena, insece versutum . . .

Camēna, -ae, f., Camena, goddess of springs and waters; a native Italian divinity used here to represent the Greek Muse
insecō, insecere, insexi, —, tell (of)
versūtus, -a, -um, versatile

Livius Andronicus 2

Pater noster, Saturni filie . . .

Livius Andronicus 14

atque escas habeamus mentionem . . .

esca, -ae, f., food
mentiō, -ōnis, f., mention

Livius Andronicus 15

partim errant, nequinont Graeciam redire . . .

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece
nequeō, nequire, nequīvi, nequitus, be unable; **nequinont** (archaic) = **nequeunt**
partim (adv.), in part, partly

Livius Andronicus 18

Igitur demum Ulixi cor frixit prae pavore.

frigēscō, frigēscere, frixi, —, become cold [A commentator on Servius claims that φρικτά (phrikta) in Greek is used for things which are to be feared, so the use of *frixit* may be a conscious Greekism (see on *Aeneid* I.92). Servius was a fourth century commentator on Vergil.]
pavor, -ōris, m., fear
prae (prep.+abl.), because of
Ulixēs, Ulixir, m., Ulysses (Odysseus)

Livius Andronicus 20-21

Ibi manens sedeto¹ donicum videbis
me carpento vehentem en domum venisse

carpentum, -i, n., a two-wheeled chariot
dōnicum, archaic for *dōnec*
ēn (interj.), look! behold!
sedēō, sedēre, sēdi, sessus, sit
vehō, vehere, vēxi, vectus, ride

1. **sedētō**, 2nd sing. future imperative active

Livius Andronicus 23-26

. . . namque nullum
peius macerat humanum quamde mare saevum;
vires cui sunt magnae topper confringent
importunae undae.

cōfringō, cōfringere, cōfrēgi, cōfractus, break to pieces
importūnus, -a, -um, troublesome, relentless
mācerō (1), distress, torment, weaken
quamde (archaic) = *quam* (adv.)
topper (adv., archaic), swiftly

Livius Andronicus 27

<Venit> Mercurius cumque eo filius Latonas

Lātōna, -ae, f., Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana
Mercurius, -i, m., Mercury, god of commerce, travelers, liars,
and thieves, equivalent to Greek Hermes

Livius Andronicus 33

Topper facit homones ut prius fuerunt . . .

homonēs (archaic) = *hominēs*
topper (adv., archaic), swiftly

Livius Andronicus 34-36

Topper citi ad aedis venimus Circāi;
simul . . . carnem portant ad navis
multam ancillae; vina isdem inserinuntur.

aedēs, aedis, -ium, f., house, temple (frequently in pl.)
ancilla, -ae, f., maid, maidservant
carō, carnis, -ium, f., meat, flesh
Circē, -ēs, f., Circe (declined like a Greek noun; hence the
genitive in -ēs)
citus, -a, -um, swift
inserinō, inserinere (archaic) = *Inserō, Inserere, Inseruī*,
Insertus, put in, insert
topper (adv., archaic), swiftly
vinum, -i, n., wine

Livius Andronicus 46

deque manibus dextrabus
dextrābus (archaic) = *dextris*

Naevius

Gnaeus Naevius (c. 270 B.C.–c. 201 B.C.), born possibly in Campania, was a writer of tragedies, comedies, and epic. The latter, entitled *Bellum Pūnicum*, comprised, in Saturnian verse, an account of the first Punic War (264–241 B.C.), one of three major confrontations between Rome and Carthage. It is not fully historical, for fact mixes with legend, heroes, and gods. Naevius probably provided the material concerning the connection between Troy and Rome on which Vergil drew, and he may also have been the source for Vergil's account of the meeting of Aeneas and Dido.

Naevius' verses are written in the accentual Saturnian rhythm and so suffer when compared to the polished and melodious hexameters of Vergil. Yet, there is evidence of a firm control of language and an attempt at artistic structuring, as is seen, for example, in the word order in 9 and 11.

Noteworthy are his invocation to the Muses (1), in which he shows his purely Roman bent by avoiding mention of the Greek word "Muse" (Ennius was the first to mention them by name), the play on words in 5 and 7 (*ambōrum* and *ambae*), and what appears to be the equivalent of the Greek epithet in 13-15 (*summū/deum rēgis frātrem Neptūnem rēgnātōrem/marum*) which may also betray an attempt at erudition in his work after the example of the Greek Alexandrian writers. Fewer than eighty lines of his epic poem survive.

Naevius 1

Novem Iovis concordes filiae sorores . . .

concordis, -e, harmonious**novem** (indecl. numerical adj.), nine

Naevius 2-4

Postquam avem aspexit in templo¹ Anchisa,
 sacra in mensa Penatium ordine ponuntur;
 immolabat auream victimam pulchram.

aspiciō, **aspicere**, **aspxi**, **aspectus**, look toward, look at;
 behold**Anchisēs** (*Anchisa*), -ae, m., Anchises, father of Aeneas→**avis**, **avis**, -ium, f., bird**immolō** (1), sacrifice**Penātēs**, -ium, m. pl., the Penates, household gods**sacer**, **sacra**, **sacrum**, sacred, consecrated**victima**, -ae, f., (sacrificial) victim

1. **templum**, *here*, used in its original sense as a space marked out for augury

Naevius 5-7

Amborum uxores
 noctu Troiad exibant capitibus opertis,
 flentes ambae abeuntes lacrimis cum multis.

ambō, **ambae**, **ambō** (declined like *duo*), both**fleō**, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētus**, weep (for)**noctū** (adv.), at night**operiō**, **operīre**, **operui**, **opertus**, cover**Trōia**, -ae, f., Troy (*Trōiad*=abl. sing.)**uxor**, -ōris, f., wife

Naevius 9

Multi alii e Troia strenui viri . . .

Trōia, -ae, f., Troy

Naevius 11

puram pulchramque ex auro vestem citrosam.

citrōsus, -a, -um, full of citrus (i.e., smelling of citrus)**pūrus**, -a, -um, clean**vestis**, **vestis**, -ium, f., clothing, garment

Naevius 13-15

Senex freat pietate tum adlocutus summi
deum regis fratrem Neptunum regnato rem
marum.¹

frētus, -a, -um, relying on (+ abl.)
Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea
pietās, -tatis, f., dutifulness, devotion, loyalty
regnātor, -ōris, m., ruler

1. **marum** = *marium*

Naevius 19-20

Blande et docte percontat Aeneas quo pacto
Troiam urbem liquisset.

blandē (adv.), flatteringly
doctē (adv.), skillfully
linquō, linquere, liqui, —, leave (behind), abandon
pactum, -ī, n., stipulation; way, manner
percontō (1), inquire earnestly

Naevius 54

Ei venit in mentem hominum fortunas.

Naevius' Epitaph

Immortales mortales si foret¹ fas flere
flerent divae Camenae Naevium poetam.
Itaque postquamst Orchi traditus thesauro,
obliti sunt Romae loquier lingua Latina.

Camēna, -ae, f., Camena, goddess of springs and waters, a native Italian divinity used here to represent the Greek Muse; (pl.) Muses
divus, -a, -um, divine
fās (indecl.), n., (what is divinely) right
fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētus, weep (for)
itaque (conj.), and so, therefore
Latinus, -a, -um, Latin
loquier, archaic infinitive for *loqui*
Orc(h)us, -ī, m., Orcus, the underworld; the god of the infernal regions, Orcus or Pluto
thēsaurus, -ī, m., treasure, treasure-house

1. **foret** = *esset*

Ennius

Quintus Ennius (239–169 B.C.), born near Brundisium, was a native speaker of Oscan (an Italic language), and so was frequently spoken of as the man of three hearts, since he spoke Oscan, Greek, and Latin. After he had acquired Roman citizenship, he distinguished himself as a writer of drama, an early form of satire, a didactic poem on gastronomy, and an historical epic that traced the major events in Roman history from Aeneas' time to his own. The only period omitted from Ennius' work was that which Naevius had treated in his *Bellum Pūnicum*, for the style and meter of which Ennius basically held contempt. Particularly insofar as Ennius was the first writer who we are certain experimented with Greek rhythms in Latin epic, and also because of his noteworthy skill as a poet, he made a profound contribution to Latin literature.

Ennius found himself confronted with the very difficult task of adapting Greek quantitative rhythm to a language that was stress-oriented. Considering the pioneering nature of his undertaking, the results are impressive and his own achievement must not be underrated. Some of the selections that follow will illustrate his concern for the appropriateness of dactylic or spondaic rhythmic sequences to the meaning of his lines, for word order and matters of alliteration and assonance. But many of the selections, when compared to the later and masterful compositions of Vergil, seem primitive and lacking. This is to be expected from a pioneer, for all of his efforts cannot be successful, nor can we expect them to exhibit the polish and refinement of those who continue the tradition which he has established.

In many instances, Ennius tried to capture some of the structural characteristics of Greek poetry and to fuse these with devices which were endemic to the Latin language, with varied success. Although there are those who now would deny Ennius' authorship of some of these fragments, the general consensus is that they are his. Some are noteworthy for their daring and originality, but equally often for their very obvious failure and infelicity:

1. An exaggerated use of alliteration, a device native to the Latin tongue as seen from fragments of early religious hymns:

O Tite tute Tati tibi tanta, tyranne, tulisti.

Titus Tatius, one of the early kings of Rome
tūte = *tū*

2. An attempt to use the Greek device of apocope (the cutting off of the last sound or sounds from a word) in Latin:

Repleat te laetificum gau.

gau = apocope for *gaudium*
laetificus, -a, -um [*laetus* + *factō*], happiness-making,
 that brings happiness
repleō, **replēre**, **replēvi**, **replētus**, full

3. An attempt to use the Greek device of tmesis more daringly than normally permitted in Latin (we have seen it in the "cutting" of words like *priusquam* [*prius* . . . *quam*], but rarely elsewhere):

Saxo cere comminuit brum

cerebrum, -i, n., brain
commiuō, **commiuere**, **commiuī**, **commiuūtus**, break, split

In many fragments such as these, the language of Ennius is rugged when compared to that of Vergil, but we must avoid indicting the earlier poet for this, since he was working with the literary language in its infancy. Quintilian's description of his verses is most appropriate: [Versus] non tantam habent speciem quantam religionem, "[his verses] do not have as much beauty as grandeur."

While reading the following selections, these points are worthy of note:

1. The archaisms, as in Livius and Naevius
2. The difficulties encountered in working with quantitative rhythm, in particular, the occasional lack of principal caesura, the frequency of monosyllabic endings to lines, the liberties taken with words which are not suited to dactylic lines in order to make them fit. For example,
 - a. Final -s is frequently not counted toward making a syllable long by position.
 - b. The use of the archaic prefix *indu-* to adapt words like *īmperātōr* to the hexameter line: *īndūperātōr* (322).
 - c. The use of frequentatives for this same purpose, such as *īmperītō* for *īmperō*.
 - d. The perfect infinitive for the present, for the same purpose, such as *cōntīnūsſē* for *cōntīnērē*.
 - e. Poetic plurals such as *ōtia* for *ōtium* (where the final syllable might become long if the next word in the line begins with a consonant.)
 - f. Liberties taken with dropping out syllables from words such as *vīncūlā*, becoming (in another case) *vīnclīs*.
3. Use of pleonasm, (redundancy) as in 72: *Cūrantēs magnā cum cūrā tum cupientēs*
4. Bold use of compounds, such as *altivolantum* (76) and *bellipotentēs* (198), probably a conscious Greekism.
5. Archaic adverbs in *-tim*, such as *proprītim* (90)
6. Homeric Greekisms such as the repetition of *-que* (where only one *-que* is required in Latin) in *ostentatque . . . iubetque* (422) for the Greek *-τε . . . -τε* (both . . . and)
7. Expressions from legal terminology, such as *agentēs* (569)

In sum, however, Ennius remains important to us because he was the first ancient writer to attempt quantitative rhythm in Latin and to experiment with and refine, in his own tongue, certain structural characteristics of Greek poetry. He is also the first Roman poet we know of who attempted to give a complete and systematic account of the early history of Rome. Finally, he strongly influenced later poets, particularly Vergil.

Ennius 1

Musae quae pedibus magnum pulsatis Olympum . . .

Mūsa, -ae, f., Muse, one of the nine Muses
Olympus, -i, m., Mount Olympus, in Greece; in mythology, the dwelling place of the gods
pulsō (1), beat

Ennius 31

Olli respondit rex Albai Longai.

Alba Longa, the city founded by Ascanius, son of Aeneas. It was the mother city of Rome.
ollī (archaic) = *illī*

Ennius 72-91

Curantes magna cum cura tum cupientes
 regni dant operam simul auspicio augurioque.
 In Murco Remus auspicio sedet atque secundam
 solus avem servat.¹ At Romulus pulcher in alto
 quaerit² Aventino, servat¹ genus altivolantum.³
 Certabant urbem Romam Remoramve vocarent.
 Omnibus cura viris uter esset induperator:
 exspectant, veluti consul quom mittere signum
 volt, omnes avidi spectant ad carceris oras

altivolāns, -antis, high-flying, soaring; *as noun*, bird
augurium, -i, n., augury, divination
auspicium, -i, n., divination by the flight of birds; portent, sign
avidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager
Aventinus, -i, m., the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome
carcer, carceris, m., prison; *here*, barrier, starting-gate at a race course
cūrō (1), care for, look after
induperātor = *imperātor*
Murcus, -i, m., the Murcus, the lower peak of the Aventine
opera, -ae, f., work, service, attention
operam dare, make an effort, take pains; pay attention
ōra, -ae, f., border, boundary
quom (archaic) = *cum*
Remus, -i, m., Remus, brother of Romulus
Rōmulus, -i, m., Romulus, legendary founder and first king of Rome
secundus, -a, -um, following, second; favorable, fortunate
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus, sit

1. **servō**, *here*, watch (for), observe

2. **quaerō**, *here*, makes a search

3. **altivolantum** = *altivolantium*

quam mox emittat pictis e faucibus currus:
 sic exspectabat populus atque ora tenebat,
 rebus utri magni victoria sit data regni.
 Interea sol albus recessit in infera noctis.
 Exin candida se radiis dedit icta foras lux;
 et simul ex alto longe pulcherruma praepes
 laeva volavit avis, simul aureus exoritur sol.
 Cedunt de caelo ter quattuor corpora sancta
 avium, praepetibus sese pulchrisque locis dant.
 Conspicit inde sibi data Romulus esse propritim
 auspicio regni stabilita scamna solumque.

albus, -a, -um, white, shining
candidus, -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant
cōspicīō, **cōspicere**, **cōspexi**, **cōspectus**, observe
currus, -ūs, m., chariot
exin (adv.), next, then
faucēs, **faucium**, f. pl., throat; narrow pass, entrance
forās (adv.), outdoors, outside; forth
īciō or īcō, **īcere**, **īci**, ictus, strike, hit
inde (adv.), from there; thereupon, then
īferus, -a, -um, below, deep; (*neut. pl. subst.*), depths
ītereā (adv.), meanwhile
laevus, -a, -um, left; on the left side
pictus, -a, -um, painted, of various colors
praepes, **praepetis**, winged, swift-flying; lucky, prosperous
propritim (adv.), in particular, specifically
quattuor (indecl. numerical adj.), four
recēdō [*re + cēdō*], go back, withdraw, recede
sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, venerable
scamnūn, -ī, n., throne
solum, -ī, n., ground, earth
stabilīō, **stabilire**, **stabilivī**, **stabilitus**, establish, confirm
ter (adv.), three times, thrice
volō (1), fly

Ennius 92

"Iuppiter, ut¹ muro fretus magis quamde manus vi!"

frētus, -a, -um, relying on (+abl.)
quamde (archaic) = *quam* (adv.)

1. *ut*, here and frequently, adv., how

Ennius 97

Astu non vi sum¹ summam servare decet rem . . .

astus, -ūs, m., cunning
decet, **decērē**, **decuit** (impersonal), it is seemly, it is becoming:
 it is proper

1. **sum** (archaic) = *eum*

Ennius 197-198

... stolidum genus Aeacidarum:
bellipotentes sunt magis quam sapientipotentes ...

Aeacidēs, -ae, m., son of Aeacus, the father of Peleus and Telamon, grandfather of Achilles and Ajax; he was later made a judge in the underworld because of his exemplary honesty and integrity

bellipotēns, -entis, mighty in battle
sapientipotēns, -entis, mighty in wisdom

stolidus, -a, -um, stupid, dull

Ennius 213

quantis consiliis¹ quantumque potesset in armis.

potesset (archaic) = *posset*

1. **quantis cōsiliis**, supply *esset*

Ennius 240

Iuno Vesta Minerva Ceres Diana Venus Mars
Mercurius Iovis Neptunus Vulcanus Apollo

Apollō, **Apollinis**, m., Apollo, god of prophecy, music, etc.

Cerēs, **Cereris**, f., Ceres, goddess of grain

Diāna (*here*, **Dīāna**), -ae, f., Diana, a Roman goddess identified with Artemis

Iovis, **Iovis**, m., Jupiter

Mercurius, -i, m., Mercury, messenger of the gods

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom and arts

Neptūnus, -i, m., Neptune, god of the sea

→ **Venus**, **Veneris**, f., Venus, goddess of love

Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta, goddess of the hearth

Vulcānus, -i, m., Vulcan, god of fire

Ennius 247-253

<proelia promulgantur,>

pellitur e medio sapientia, vi geritur res;

spernitur orator bonus, horridus miles amatur;

haud doctis dictis certantes, nec maledictis

miscent inter sese inimicitias agitantes;

non ex iure¹ manum consertum,² sed magis ferro—
rem repetunt³ regnumque petunt—vadunt solida vi.

agitō (1), *here*, possibly a legal term, "make accusations (of)"
cōserō, **cōserere**, **cōserui**, **cōsертus**, join

cōserere manum, join battle

maledictum, -i, n., word of abuse

proelium, -i, n., battle

prōmulgō (1) publish, bring forth to the public

solidus, -a, -um, solid, entire, complete

spernō, **spernere**, **sprēvi**, **sprētus**, scorn, reject

vādō, —, —, go rapidly, rush

1. **ex iure**, according to law, lawfully

2. **cōsертum** = supine

3. **rem repetere**, demand the restoration of wrongly acquired property, seek redress

Ennius 263

consequitur. Summo sonitu quatit ungula terram.

cōsequor [con + sequor], follow
quatiō, quatere, —, quassus, shake, brandish; beat, strike
sonitus, -ūs, m., sound, noise
ungula, -ae, f., hoof

Ennius 298

. . . <Viri varia> validis <vice> viribus luctant.

luctō (1), struggle
varius, -a, -um, varying
***viciis, vicis, f.**, change, alternation, turn

Ennius 309

Africa terribili tremit horrida terra tumultu.

Africus, -a, -um, of Africa, African
terribilis, -e, terrible
tremō, tremere, tremui, —, tremble
tumultus, -ūs, m., tumult, uproar

Ennius 322-323

Insece, Musa, manu Romanorum induperator
quod quisque in bello gessit cum rege Philippo.

induperātor = *imperātor*
insecō, insecere, insexī, —, tell (of)
Musa, -ae, f., Muse, one of the nine Muses
Philippus, -i, m., king of Macedon

Ennius 344-345

quae neque Dardaniis campis potuere perire
nec quom capta capi nec quom combusta cremari.

combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combustus, burn up
cremō (1), consume by fire
Dardanius, -a, -um, Dardanian, Trojan
quom (archaic) = *cum*

Ennius 422

quo res sapsa loco sese ostentatque iubetque
ostentō (1), present
sapsa (archaic) = *ipsa*

Ennius 423

"Si luci si nox¹ si mox si iam data sit frux."

frūx, frūgis, f., success
luci, abl. sing. [=lūce] used adverbially, by day

1. **nox**, here, adv., at night

Ennius 430

. . . dux ipse vias

Ennius 432-434

Concurrunt veluti venti quom spiritus Austri
imbricitor Aquiloque suo cum flamine contra
indu mari magno fluctus extollere certant.

Aquilō, -ōnis, m., Aquilon, the North Wind
Auster, **Austri**, m., Auster, the South Wind
extollō, **extollere**, —, —, raise up
flāmen, -minis, n., breeze, blast
flūctus, -ūs, m., wave, billow
imbricitor, -ōris, m., he who causes showers
indu (archaic) = *in*
quom (archaic) = *cum*
spīritus, -ūs, m., breath, breeze

Ennius 451

At tuba terribili sonitu taratantara dixit.

sonitus, -ūs, m., sound, noise
terribilis, -e, terrible
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet

Ennius 457

Brundisium pulcro praecinctum praepete portu

Brundisium, -ī, n., Brundisium, a city on the southeast coast of
Italy (modern Brindisi)
portus, -ūs, m., harbor
praecingō [prae + cingō], surround
praepes, **praepetis**, lucky, propitious
pulcrō = *pulchrō*

Ennius 505

Labitur uncta carina per aequora cana celocis.

aequor, -oris, n., level surface; sea
cānus, -a, -um, white; foamy
carīna, -ae, f., keel, hull; ship
celōx, **celōcis**, f., yacht, cutter
ūncutus, -a, -um, anointed, oiled

Ennius 569

Olli cernebant magnis de rebus agentes.

cernō, **cernere**, **crēvi**, **crētus**, distinguish, discern; decide,
determine
ollī (archaic) = *illī*

Ennius 574

Omnes mortales sese laudarier optant

laudārī, archaic infinitive for *laudārī*

Ennius' Epitaph (beneath a statue of the poet at the tomb of the Scipios)

Aspicite, o cives, senis Enni imagini' formam.

Hic vestrum¹ panxit maxima facta patrum.

aspiciō, aspicere, aspexi, aspectus, look toward, look at;
behold
Ennius, -i, m., Ennius
imāgō, imāginis, f., image, appearance; **imāgini'** = *imāgint̄s*
pangō, pangere, panxī or pepigī, pāctus, fix, fasten; compose,
record

1. **vestrum**, here, genitive of possession

Ennius' (own) Epitaph

Nemo me dacrumis decoret nec funera fletu
faxit. Cur? Volito vivu' per ora virum.

dacruma = *lacrima*
decorō (1), adorn
fletus = *fēcerit*, a perfect subjunctive being used as a jussive
fūnus, fūneris, n., funeral rites
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living; **vīvu'** = *vīvus*
volitō (1), keep flying

Plautus

Titus Maccius Plautus (250?–184? B.C.) was born in Umbria and came to Rome as a young man, perhaps to work in the theater. He soon began to earn his living by writing musical comedies for popular entertainment. Although Plautus may well have written more than one hundred plays, only twenty survive, either whole or in fragmentary form. These texts are a unique source of information about living, spoken Latin, the colloquial language quite absent from most literary works.

Later a rich source for the great comic writers Molière and Shakespeare, Plautus drew his plots from models of Greek New Comedy, which employed stock characters in stock situations of domestic life. The settings were urban and Greek. Plautus' Roman audience was invited to "Greek it up" [*graecor* (1), "play at being Greek"] while enjoying tangled romantic stories populated by stereotypical young lovers, long-lost relations, greedy pimps, and crafty slaves. Unlike the boy-meets-girl love stories of Greek New Comedy, however, Plautus' plots and characters revealed a new, Roman emphasis on trickery and shrewdness as a means to success. Also, the playwright's native wit and energy are seen in the plays' completely original arias and duets, songs of astonishing metrical virtuosity. Indeed, Plautus is generally considered to have developed the most refined and sophisticated metrical technique of any Latin writer.

The vocabulary of Plautus is rich in Greek and half-Greek words, *figurae etymologicae* (puns), alliteration, and absurd polysyllabic names, such as Pyrgopolyneices ("Terrific Tower-Taker") and Artotrogus ("Gnaw-loaf"). Comic effects are achieved by language that is racy, repetitive, mock heroic, mock elegant, and that yet preserves the natural rhythms and speed of spoken, colloquial Latin. Archaic spellings, interjections, the demonstrative suffix -ce (a trace of which remains in the classical forms *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*), and the emphatic suffix -pte all figure prominently in the mouths of Plautus' characters. Further, in accommodating the Latin language to Greek meters, Plautus makes regular use of elision, synizesis (the union of separate vowel sounds within words to form a single long syllable), and prodelision (the absorption of *es* and *est* into a preceding syllable). All these features of Plautus' Latin provide important evidence for the sound and quality of the Latin spoken in the early second century B.C.

The selection that follows is the opening scene of the *Miles Gloriosus* ("The Braggart Soldier"), in which Plautus introduces the boastful soldier Pyrgopolyneices—a version of a stock character known as an *alazon*—in conversation with his sycophant, Artotrogus. Pyrgopolyneices' highfalutin' language is punctured by the asides of Artotrogus, whose concern with his next meal does not prevent him from expressing his contempt for his patron.

Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus* 1-51

Pyrgo. Curate ut splendor meo sit clupeco clarior
 quam solis radii esse olim quom sudumst solent,
 ut, ubi usus veniat, contra conserta manu
 praestringat oculorum aciem in acie hostibus,
 nam ego hanc machaeram mihi consolari volo,
 ne lamentetur neve animum despondeat,
 quia se iam pridem feriatam gestitem,
 quae misera gestit fartem facere ex hostibus.
 Sed ubi Artotrogus hic est?

5

Arto. Stat propter¹ virum
 fortē atque fortunatum et forma regia;
 tum bellatorem—Mars haud ausit² dicere
 neque aequiperare suas virtutes ad tuas.

10

Pyrgo. Quemne ego servavi in campis Curculionis,
 ubi Bumbomachides Clutomistharnikarchides
 erat imperator summus, Neptuni nepos?

15

Arto. Memini. Nempe illum dicis cum armis aureis,
 quoius tu legiones difflavisti spiritu,
 quasi ventus folia aut peniculum tectorium.

aciēs, -ēi, f., keenness, edge; battle-array, line of battle
aequiperō (1), compare, liken
Artotrogus, -i, m., Artotrogus
Bumbomachidēs, *-ae, m., Son of Roarer in Battle
clupeus (=clipeus), -i, m., shield
Clutomistharnikarchidēs, -*ae, m., Son of Famous Mercenary Commander
cōserō, cōserere, cōserūi, cōsērthus, join
 cōserere manū, join battle
cōsōlor (1), comfort, console
Curculiōnius, -a, -um (*a comic coinage from curculiō*, -ōnis, f., corn-weevil) of Corn-Weevil
cūrō (1), care for; see to it
dēspondeō, dēspondēre, dēspondī, dēspōn-sus, pledge (something away from oneself)
dēspondēre animum, despair, give up hope
difflō (1), blow apart
fartēm, *only in acc. sing.*, stuffing, minced meat
feriātus, -a, -um, keeping holiday, at leisure, idle
folium, -i, n., leaf
gestiō, gestire, gestivī or gestiī, —, desire eagerly, long

gestitō (1), carry habitually
lāmentor (1), weep, wail, lament
legiō, -ōnis, f., legion
machaera, -ae, f., (short) sword
nempe [nam + enclitic -pe], *justifying a remark or attitude by a statement expecting no contradiction*, without a doubt, of course
nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson, descendant
Neptūnus, -i, m., Neptune, god of the sea
ōlim (adv.), once, formerly; sometimes
pēniculum, -i, n., (little) brush
praestringō, **praestringere**, **praestrinxī**, **praestrinctus**, tie up; traverse, graze
 aciem **praestringere**, blunt the edge of a weapon; dazzle
quoius (archaic) = cuius
quom (archaic) = cum
rēgius, -a, -um, of a king, royal
spiritus, -ūs, m., breath
splendor, -ōris, m., brightness, brilliance, splendor
sūdus, -a, -um, dry; bright, cloudless; n. subst., fine weather
tēctōrium -i, n., plaster
 -ve (enclitic conj.), or

1. *propter*, here, near2. *ausit*, archaic 3rd sing. perfect subjunctive active (potential) of *audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus sum*

Pyrgo. Istuc quidem edepol nihil est.

Arto.

Nihil hercle hoc quidemst 20

praeut alia dicam—quae tu numquam feceris.
peiuriorem hoc hominem si quis viderit
aut gloriarum pleniorum quam illic est,
me sibi habeto,¹ ego me mancupio dabo;
nisi unum, epityra estur insanum² bene.

Pyrgo. Ubi tu es?

Arto.

Eccum. Edepol vel elephanto in India, 25
quo pacto ei pugno³ praefregisti bracchium.

Pyrgo. Quid, "bracchium"?

Arto.

Illud dicere volui, "femur."

Pyrgo. At indiligerenter iceram.

Arto.

Pol si quidem
conixus esses, per corium, per viscera
perque os elephanti transmineret bracchium. 30

Pyrgo. Nolo istaec hic nunc.

Arto.

Ne hercle operae pretium⁴ quidemst
mihi te narrare tuas qui virtutes sciam.
Venter creat omnis hasce⁵ aerumnas: auribus
peraudienda sunt, ne dentes dentiant,
et adsentandumst quidquid hic mentibitur.

adsentor, adsentārī, adsentātus sum, agree,
assent
aerumna, -ae, f., task, trouble, affliction
auris, auris, -ium, f., ear
bracchium, -i, n., arm, forearm
conitor, coniti, conixus sum, strive, struggle,
make an effort
corium, -i, n., hide, skin
creō (1), create, conceive
dēns, dentis, -ium, m., tooth
dentīō, dentīre, —, —, cut teeth; grow longer
eccum (interj.), here he is!
edepol (interj.), by Pollux, indeed, truly
edō, esse, ēdi, ēsus or essus, eat
estur = 3rd sing. present passive indicative
elephantus, -i, m., elephant
epityrum, -i, n., preserve or spread made from
olives (and cheese?)
femur, feminis or femoris, n., thigh
hercle (interj.), by Hercules!
icīō or icō, Icere, icī, Ictus, strike, hit
illīc, illaec, illōc or illūc (archaic)=ille, illa,
illud

India, -ae, f., India
istīc, istaec, istūc (archaic)=iste, ista, istud
mancupium (=mancipium), -i, n., legal pos-
session
mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum, lie, tell a
falsehood
os, ossis, -ium, n., bone
pactum, -i, n., stipulation; way, manner
peiūrus, -a, -um, perjured
plēnus, -a, -um, full
pol (interj.), by Pollux
**praefringō, praefringere, praefrēgī, praef-
fractus,** break at the end, break into pieces
praeut (conj.), compared with
quisquis, quidquid (quicquid) (indef. pron.),
whoever, whatever
trānsmineō, trānsminēre, —, —, jut (stick)
out the other side
viscera, viscerum, n. pl., innards, internal
organs

1. **habētō**, 3rd sing. future imperative active

2. **insānum**, adverbial accusative, madly, ex-
tremely

3. **pugnus, -i, m.,** clenched hand, fist

4. **operae pretium**, something worth the effort

5. **hāsce**, note the emphatic enclitic -ce.

Pyrgo. Quid illuc quod dico?

Arto. Ehem, scio iam quid vis dicere.
factum herclest memini fieri.

Pyrgo. Quid id est?

Arto. Quidquid est.

Pyrgo. Habes—

Arto. Tabellas vis rogare. Habeo, et stilum.

Pyrgo. Facete advortis tuom animum ad animum meum.

Arto. Novisse mores tuos me meditate decet
curamque adhibere ut praeolat mihi quod tu velis.

40

Pyrgo. Ecquid meministi?

Arto. Memini centum in Cilicia
et quinquaginta, centum in Scytholatronia,
triginta Sardos, sexaginta Macedones—
sunt homines quos tu—occidisti uno die.

45

Pyrgo. Quanta istaec hominum summast?¹

Arto. Septem milia.

Pyrgo. Tantum esse oportet. Recte rationem tenes.

Arto. At nullos habeo scriptos: sic memini tamen.

Pyrgo. Edepol memoria's optuma.

Arto. Offae monent.

Pyrgo. Dum tale facies quale adhuc adsiduo edes,
communicabo semper te mensa mea.

50

adhibeo [*ad* + *habeō*], hold out, stretch out;
apply
cūram adhibere, pay attention
adsiduo (adv.), regularly, constantly
Cappadocia, -ae, f., Cappadocia, a country in
eastern Asia Minor
centum (indecl. numerical adj.), hundred
Cilicia, -ae, f., Cilicia, country and Roman
province in southeastern Asia Minor
commūnicō (1), share, divide with (+ abl.)
decet, decēre, decuit (impersonal), it is seemly,
it is becoming; it is proper
ecquis, ecquid (indef. pron.), anyone, anything
edepol (interj.), by Pollux, indeed, truly
edō, esse, ēdī, ēsus or essus, eat
ehem (interj.), exclamation expressing grati-
fied surprise, recollection, ah! aha!
facetē (adv.), aptly, cleverly
illīc, illaēc, illōc or illūc (archaic) = *ille*, *illa*,
illud
istic, istaec, istūc (archaic) = *iste*, *ista*, *istud*

Macedōnēs, -um, m. pl., Macedonians
meditātē (adv.), with study or forethought,
designedly
milia, milium, n. pl. subst., thousands
offa, -ae, f., lump of food (especially a cake
made from flour)
praeolō, praeolere, —, —, send out an odor
in front or ahead
quisquis, quidquid (quicquid) (indef. pron.),
whoever, whatever
quingenti, -ae, -a, five hundred each
quinquāgintā (indecl. numerical adj.), fifty
rēctē (adv.), rightly, correctly
Sardi, -ōrum, m. pl., Sardinians
Scytholatrōnia, *-ae, f., Scythian-brigand land
septem (indecl. numerical adj.), seven
sexāgintā (indecl. numerical adj.), sixty
stilus, -I, m., stylus (for writing on wax tablets)
tabella, -ae, f., small board; (wax writing) tablet
trīgintā (indecl. numerical adj.), thirty

1. **summa**, here, sum

Lucretius

Titus Lucretius Carus (94–55 B.C.) is known for his work *Dē Rērum Natūrā*, "On the Nature of the Universe," a didactic poem in six books expounding the atomic theory of the universe that had been put forth by the Greeks Democritus and Epicurus. His expressed aim in asserting that all things were made of small *corpora* or particles and that these particles were susceptible to breaking up and recombining with still others was to dispel the fear of death and so to free mankind from superstition. The poem is our best source for a systematic treatment of the tenets and beliefs of the Epicurean school of thought in Rome. To the modern reader, Lucretius' poem fluctuates between sections of fairly dry scientific flavor and parts which soar in the beauty of their poetry and feeling.

In his use of the hexameter and of archaisms, Lucretius comes closer to Ennius than to his own contemporaries. He, in turn, exerted a great influence on Vergil, who refined and polished the Lucretian hexameter into something masterful and truly classic.

Worthy of note are many of the features already observed in Ennius and other earlier writers, in particular the archaisms and the obvious difficulties the author had in adapting the hexameter to Latin poetry. Observe the following:

1. The archaic prefix *indu-* for *in-* : *indugredī* (I.83) for *ingredi*.
2. The archaic adjective suffix *-ōsus*, as in *scelerōsa* (I.84) for the more classical *scelerāta*.
3. The archaic genitive singular of the first declension *-āī*, as in *Triviāī* (I.83)
4. The anastrophe of *propter* (I.90), an obvious Greekism
5. The Greekism *p̄imā virōrum* (I.86), for an explanation of which see the note *ad loc.*
6. *Perīclī* for *periculī* (II.6), to fit the hexameter line.
7. The old form *ollīs* for *illīs* (II.64).

Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura* I.80-101

80

Illud in his rebus vereor, ne forte rearis
 impia te rationis inire elementa viamque
 indugredi sceleris. Quod contra saepius illa
 religio¹ peperit scelerosa atque impia facta.
 Aulide quo pacto Triviai virginis aram
 Iphianassai turparunt sanguine foede
 ductores Danaum delecti, prima² virorum.
 Cui simul³ infula virgineos circumdata comptus
 ex utraque pari malarum parte profusast,
 et maestum simul³ ante aras adstare parentem
 sensit et hunc propter⁴ ferrum celare ministros
 aspectuque suo lacrimas effundere civis,
 muta metu terram genibus summissa petebat.
 Nec miserae prodesse in tali tempore quibat
 quod patrio princeps⁵ donarat nomine regem;
 nam sublata⁶ virum⁷ manibus tremibundaque ad aras
 deductast, non ut sollemni more sacrorum
 perfecto posset claro comitari Hymenaeo,
 sed casta inceste nubendi tempore in ipso

85

90

95

adstō, adstāre, adstītī. —, stand by, stand near
aspectus, -ūs, m., sight; gaze
Aulis, Aulidīs, f., Aulis, a port in Greece where the Greek fleet met before sailing to Troy
castus, -a, -um, chaste
circumdō [circum+dō], surround
comitō (1), accompany
comptus, -ūs, m., adornment; (pl.) (well-dressed) hair, locks
Danaus, -a, -um, Greek (*Danaum* = gen. pl.)
effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus, pour out, shed
elementum, -ī, n., element, rudiment
foedus, -a, -um, foul, filthy, shameful
genū, -ūs, n., knee
Hymenaeus, -ī, m., marriage-song
incestē (adv.), unchastely
indugredior = *ingredior*
infula, -ae, f., fillet (worn by sacrificial victims)
Iphianassa, -ae, f., Iphianassa, Homeric form of Iphigenia, a daughter of Agamemnon

maestus, -a, -um, sorrowful, sad
māla, -ae, f., cheek
minister, ministri, m., attendant
mūtus, -a, -um, unable to speak, silent
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus, marry (+dat.) (used of a woman marrying)
pactum, -ī, n., stipulation; way, manner
patrius, -a, -um, of a father, paternal, ancestral
profundō, profundere, profūdī, profūsus, pour forth
queō, quīre, quīvi or quīii, —, be able
reor, rērī, ratus sum, think, judge, imagine
sacra, -ōrum, n. pl., sacred rites
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood
sollemnis, -e, established
summittō, [sub+mittō], let down, sink
tremibundus, -a, -um, trembling
Trivius, -a, -um, honored at cross-roads
turpō (1), defile
→virgō, virginis, f., maiden, virgin
virgineus, -a, -um, maidenly, virginal

1. **religiō, -ōnis, f.**, here, religion (as opposed to reason)

2. **prima virōrum**, the leading men. Lucretius frequently uses a neuter plural substantive with a partitive genitive of a noun—a Greekism.

3. **simul, here and frequently**, conj., as soon as

4. **propter, here**, near. *Propter* governs *hunc* (anastrophe).

5. **princeps, here**, first

6. **tollō, tollere, sustullī, sublātus**, raise, lift up

7. **virum** = *vitōrum*

hostia concideret mactatu maesta parentis,
 exitus ut classi felix faustusque daretur.
 Tantum religio potuit suadere malorum.

100

classis, classis, -ium, f., fleet
concidō, concidere, concidi, —, fall down, col-
 lapse; fall lifeless, die
exitus, -ūs, m., departure
faustus, -a, -um, auspicious, prosperous

hostia, -ae, f., sacrificial victim
mactātus, -ūs, m., sacrificial slaying
maestus, -a, -um, sorrowful, sad
suādeō, suādere, suāsī, suāsus, persuade,
 urge, advise

Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura* I.136-145

Nec me animi¹ fallit Graiorum obscura reperta
 difficile inlustrare Latinis versibus esse,
 multa novis verbis praesertim cum sit agendum
 propter egestatem linguae et rerum novitatem;
 sed tua me virtus tamen et sperata voluptas
 suavis amicitiae quemvis efferre² laborem
 suadet et inducit noctes vigilare serenas
 quaerentem dictis quibus et quo carmine demum
 clara tuae possim praepandere lumina menti,
 res quibus occultas penitus convisere possis.

140

145

convīsō, convīsere, —, —, look at, examine
 thoroughly
dēmum (adv.), at length, at last
egestās, -tatis, f., indigence, need, want
fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus, deceive
Grāii, -ōrum (or, -ūm), m. pl., the Greeks
indūcō [*in* + *dūcō*], lead in; induce, entice
inlūstrō (1), make clear, illuminate
labor, -ōris, m., work, exertion; trouble, effort
Latinus, -a, -um, Latin
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language
obscūrus, -a, -um, obscure, hidden
occultus, -a, -um, hidden, secret
penitus (adv.), deep within, thoroughly, wholly

praepandō, praepandere, —, —, spread out,
 put forth, display
praesertim (adv.), especially
quīvis, quaevis, quodvis (indef. adj.), any (you
 wish)
reperiō, reperiō, rep(p)eri, repertus, find, dis-
 cover
suādeō, suādere, suāsī, suāsus, persuade,
 urge, advise
suāvis, -e, sweet, pleasant
versus, -ūs, m., line of poetry, verse
vigilō (1), remain awake
voluptās, -tatis, f., pleasure, enjoyment

1. **animi**. The syntax of *animi* is disputed. The genitive case limits the sphere of the word on which it depends; some take *animi* as a locative.

2. **efferre**, here, carry through, endure . . . to the end

Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura* II.1-19

Suave, mari magno turbantibus aequora ventis,
e terra magnum alterius¹ spectare laborem;
non quia vexari quemquamst iucunda voluptas,
sed quibus ipse malis careas quia cernere suave est.
Suave etiam belli certamina magna tueri
per campos instructa tua sine parte pericli. 5
Sed nil dulcior est, bene quam munita tenere
edita doctrina sapientum² templa serena,
despicere unde queas alios passimque videre
errare atque viam palantis quaerere vitae,
certare ingenio, contendere nobilitate, 10
noctes atque dies niti praestante labore
ad summas emergere opes rerumque potiri.
O miseras hominum mentes, o pectora caeca!
Qualibus in tenebris vitae quantisque periclis
degitur hoc aevi quodcumquest! Nonne videre³ 15
nil aliud sibi naturam latrare, nisi utqui
corpore seiunctus dolor absit, mensque fruatur
iucundo sensu cura semota metuque?

aequor, -oris, n., level surface; sea
aevum, -i, n., lifetime; life
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, distinguish,
discern, perceive, see
certāmen, -minis, n., contest, struggle, strife
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus,
exert oneself
dēgō, dēgere, dēgī, —, spend (i.e., time)
dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspexī, dēspectus, look
down
doctrīna, -ae, f., teaching
ēditus, -a, -um, high, lofty
ēmergō, ēmergere, ēmersī, ēmersus, come
forth
fruor, frui, fructus sum, derive enjoyment
from, enjoy, delight in (+abl.)
instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instrūctus, draw
up, set up
→**iūcundus, -a, -um**, pleasing, delightful, agree-
able
lātrō (1), bark

nītor, nīti, nīxus or nīsus sum, rest upon, rely
on; make an effort, strive
nōbilitās, -tatis, f., renown
pālor (1), wander, be dispersed
passim (adv.), everywhere
potior, potīri, potītus sum, become master of,
gain possession of (+gen.)
praestāns, -antis, extraordinary
queō, quīre, quīvi or quīll, —, be able
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
(indef. rel. pron. or adj.), whoever, whatever
suāvis, -e, sweet, pleasant
sēiungō [sē + iungō], separate, sever
sēmoveō [sē + moveō], remove
tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., shadows, darkness
tueor, tuērī, tuitus or tūtus sum, watch,
observe
turbō (1), confuse, trouble, disturb
utquī (conj.), that in some way
voluptās, -tatis, f., pleasure, enjoyment

1. The *-i* of *alterius* here scans short.
2. **sapientum** = *sapientium*

3. **vidēre**: infinitive in an exclamation. See the appendix to Moreland and Fleischer, p. 381.

Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura* II.62-66

Nunc age,¹ quo motu genitalia materiai
 corpora res varias gignant genitasque resolvant
 et qua vi facere id cogantur quaeque sit ollis
 reddita mobilitas magnum per inane meandi,
 expediam: tu te dictis praebere memento.²

65

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, drive together; compel
expediō, expedire, expeditiō or expeditiī, expedite; explain
expeditus, disentangle; explain
genitālis, -e, generative
gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus, produce
ināne, inānis, n., emptiness, void
māteria, -ae, f., (raw) material; matter
meō (1), go, wander

mōbilitās, -tatis, f., mobility
ollis (archaic) = *illis*
praebēō, praebēre, praebui, praebitus, give, grant, furnish, supply
reddō, reddere, reddidi, redditus, give back, return; render
resolvō [re + solvō], release
varius, -a, -um, varying, changeable; different

1. **age.** here, come on2. **mementō.** 2nd sing. future imperative active of *memini*

Vergil

Publius Vergilius Maro, born near Mantua in 70 B.C., was to become one of the greatest names in Latin literature and the writer of the national epic of Rome. He was reared on a small country estate owned and cultivated by his father. Yet, while his formative years were influenced by the simplicity of his country surroundings, they were also affected by the political turmoil of the times. The general instability of the last years of the Republic, the mass proscriptions, the fact that power so frequently changed hands and that dictatorships could so easily be established made a deep impression on the boy, whose respect for the beauty and calm of life in the country was deepened by contrast. After receiving an education at Rome, Vergil returned to his father's estate where he probably engaged in his first attempts at writing poetry.

In 42 B.C. after the battle of Philippi, Octavian confiscated and redivided many estates in order to give them to those soldiers who had aided him in his successful campaigns. Vergil was deprived of his land in this redistribution, but it was shortly returned to him at the command of Octavian. It is the question of the confiscation of land, the suffering and sense of loss which accrue to those driven from their property, and the concurrent joy and relief experienced by those immune to the distribution or profiting from it, which form the basis for Vergil's first *Eclogue*, the selection which follows.

The *Eclogues* comprise ten bucolic poems modeled largely on the idylls of Theocritus, a Hellenistic writer and creator of the pastoral as a literary genre. They are marked by their rustic settings, the role of shepherds as protagonists, and the escapist atmosphere. They differ from the works of Theocritus in that they substitute for his greater dramatic power, his marked simplicity, and his distinct realism a symbolic and socio/political relevance not found in Vergil's model. The selection which follows, for example, commemorates Vergil's debt to Octavian for restoring his land to him. Vergil is to be identified with Tityrus, a slave who, after many long years of hard work, has been granted his freedom along with a small plot of land sufficient for his needs. Others around him (here, Meliboeus) are being driven from their property, but, thanks to the good will of a certain *dīvus* (Octavian), Tityrus is allowed to remain. Yet beneath the surface of this commemoration lies clear compassion, a manifestation of Vergil's all-pervasive *hūmānitās* for those who must suffer loss in the name of what the author also believes are the positive strides toward political and social stability made by Octavian. This tragic recognition of the need for sacrifice in order to achieve some higher goal pervades Vergil's writings and finds its fullest expression in his supreme work, the *Aeneid*.

The success of the *Eclogues* attracted the attention of Maecenas, minister of Octavian's (Augustus') court and a wealthy patron of the arts. Maecenas encouraged Vergil to continue developing his artistic talents and the young poet next turned to writing his *Georgics*, a didactic poem in four books on the art of farming.

1. Octavian's name was changed to Augustus, "the august one" after the empire was established.

This time Vergil's principal model was Hesiod, the seventh-century B.C. writer of the *Works and Days*, and, like Hesiod's work, the *Georgics* is more than a handbook. It celebrates the simplicity and purity of a rustic life, free from the corruption of the city and close to the spirits of nature so much a part of the Roman sensibility. The content of the *Georgics* was in keeping with one aspect of Augustan reform which encouraged a return to the simple, dedicated life of the farmer in an attempt to reverse the growing trend toward amoral living, abolition of family life, and disintegration of the sturdy social fabric which had made Rome what it was and of which the "ideal" Roman should be so proud.

By far the greatest achievement of Vergil is his *Aeneid*, an epic poem in twelve books which traces the travels and development of the Trojan hero Aeneas as he salvages his family relics and household gods from the burning city of Troy and travels across the seas to Italy to fulfill his all-powerful destiny of founding a new Troy in the form of Rome. The poem celebrates the Roman virtue *pietās*, that is, devotion to gods, state, and family, and charts the course of a man as he goes through an ever-increasing process of self-denial in deference to a higher ideal which he does not fully understand. This ideal is the establishment of Rome, as decreed by fate. Concurrent with the high respect for Aeneas as a heroic figure goes Vergil's deep sense of tragedy, his *hūmānitās*, as he bemoans the necessity for sacrifice in order to achieve this higher goal. Rome is founded only with considerable individual loss to Aeneas and to others (like Dido and Turnus) who must suffer in order for Rome's glory to materialize. The glory is a wonderful thing and the stability which it symbolically represents, the new order imposed by Augustus on a wavering and dying Republic, is viewed as a positive gain. Yet Vergil cannot lose sight of the pain necessarily concomitant with that positive advance.

In 19 B.C., Vergil died in Brundisium from an illness that he had contracted while on a trip to Greece. Before his death, he left instructions to destroy the manuscript of the *Aeneid* because it was not yet finished to his satisfaction. Luckily, Augustus refused to honor Vergil's dying wish and the text remains as one of the greatest literary achievements of the ancient world.

Vergil, Ecloga I

Meliboeus. Tityrus.

- M. Tityre, tu patulae recubans sub tegmine fagi
silvestrem tenui Musam meditaris avena;
nos patriae fines et dulcia linquimus arva:
nos patriam fugimus; tu, Tityre, latus in umbra¹
formosam resonare doces Amarylliida silvas. 5
- T. O Meliboe, deus nobis haec otia fecit.
Namque erit ille mihi semper deus; illius² aram
saepe tener nostris ab ovilibus imbuet agnus.
Ille meas errare boves, ut cernis, et ipsum³
ludere quae vellem calamo permisit agresti. 10
- M. Non equidem invideo, miror magis: undique totis
usque adeo turbatur agris. En ipse capellas
protinus aeger ago: hanc etiam vix, Tityre, duco.
Hic inter densas corylos modo namque gemellos,
spem gregis, a, silice in nuda conixa reliquit. 15
- Saepe malum hoc nobis, si mens non laeva fuisset,

ā (interj.), oh! ah! alas!
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, weak; dejected
agnus, -i, m., lamb
agrestis, -e, rustic
Amaryllis, Amaryllidis, f., Amaryllis, a shepherdess (**Amaryllida**=acc. sing.)
arvum, -i, n., arable land, field
avēna, -ae, f., reed, shepherd's pipe
bōs, bovis, m. or f., ox, cow
calamus, -i, m., reed; reed-pipe
capella, -ae, f., she-goat
cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus, distinguish, discern, perceive, see
cōnitor, cōniti, cōnixus sum, strive, struggle; give birth
corylus, -i, f., hazel tree
dēnsus, -a, -um, dense, thick; crowded, close
ēn (interj.), look! behold!
equidem (adv.), emphasizing an implied or expressed *ego*, for my part
fagus, -i, f., beech tree
gemellus, -a, -um, twin
grex, gregis, m., flock, herd
imbūō, imbūere, imbūi, imbūtus, soak, imbue, taint
invideō [*in*+*videō*], look askance at; begrudge, envy
laevus, -a, -um, left; awkward, stupid; ill-omened
lentus, -a, -um, pliant; sticky, clinging; slow, indifferent, at leisure

linquō, linquere, liqui, —, leave (behind), abandon
lūdō, lūdere, lūsi, lūsus, play, mock; play (music), compose
meditor (1), consider; practice
Meliboeus, -i, m., Meliboeus, a shepherd
Mūsa, -ae, f., Muse, one of the nine Muses
namque (conj.), for in fact
nūdus, -a, -um, bare
ōtium, -i, n., leisure, idleness
ovile, ovilis, n., sheepfold
patulus, -a, -um, open, spreading, broad
permittō [*per*+*mittō*], allow, permit
prōtinus (adv.), forward, straight on
recubō, recubāre, —, —, lie down, rest
resonō, resonāre, resonāvī, —, resound with, re-echo
silex, silicis, m., flint; rock, boulder
silva, -ae, f., forest, woods
silvestris, -e, woodland, pastoral
tegmen, -minis, n., cover
tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, soft, delicate, young
tenuis, -e, slender, fine; plain, simple
Tityrus, -i, m., Tityrus, a shepherd
turbō (1), confuse, trouble, disturb
undique (adv.), from all sides, on all sides
ūsque adeō, to so great an extent

1. **umbra**, here, shade2. The second -i- of *illius* often scans short in poetry.3. Supply *mē*.

- de caelo tactas¹ memini praedicere² quercus.
 Sed tamen iste deus qui³ sit, da, Tityre, nobis.
- T. Urbem quam dicunt Romam, Meliboee, putavi
 stultus ego huic nostrae similem, quo saepe solemus 20
 pastores ovium teneros depellere fetus.
 Sic canibus catulos similes, sic matribus haedos
 noram, sic parvis componere magna solebam.
 Verum haec tantum alias inter caput extulit urbes,
 quantum lenta solent inter viburna cupressi. 25
- M. Et quae tanta fuit Romam tibi causa videndi?
- T. Libertas, quae sera tamen respexit inertem,
 candidior postquam tondenti barba cadebat,
 respexit tamen et longo post tempore venit,
 postquam nos Amaryllis habet, Galatea reliquit. 30
- Namque, fatebor enim, dum me Galatea tenebat,
 nec spes libertatis erat nec cura peculi.
 Quamvis multa meis exiret victima saeptis,
 pinguis et ingratae premeretur caseus urbi,
 non umquam gravis aere domum mihi dextra redibat. 35
- M. Mirabar quid maesta deos, Amarylli, vocares;
 cui pendere sua patereris in arbore poma:

aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; money
Amaryllis, Amaryllidis, f., Amaryllis, a
 shepherdess (**Amarylli**=voc. sing.)
arbor, -oris, f., tree
barba, -ae, f., beard
bis (adv.), two times, twice
candidus, -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant
canis, canis, m. or f., dog
caput, capitis, n., head
caseus, -i, f., cheese
catulus, -i m., puppy
compōnō [*com*+*pōnō*], place together; compare
cupressus, -i, f., cypress tree
dépellō [*dē*+*pellō*], drive away; drive
extollō, extollere, —, —, raise up
fētus, -ūs, m., offspring, young
Galatēa, -ae, f., Galatea
haedus, -i, m., young goat, kid
iners, inertis, inactive, sluggish
ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful; thankless; dis-
 pleasing, unpleasant
lentus, -a, -um, pliant; sticky, clinging; slow,
 indifferent, at leisure
maestus, -a, -um, sorrowful, sad

Meliboeus, -i, m., Meliboeus, a shepherd
 namque (conj.), for in fact
ovis, ovis, -ium, m. or f., sheep
pastor, -ōris, m., shepherd
pecūlium, -i, n., small savings; **pecūli=pecūlti**
pendeō, pendēre, pependi, —, hang (down),
 be suspended
pinguis, -e, fat, rich
pōnum, -i, n., fruit
praedicō [*prae*+*dīcō*], foretell, predict
quercus, -ūs, f., oak tree
respiciō, respicere, respixi, respectus, look
 back at; have regard for; turn attention to
saeptum, -i, n., fence, sheepfold
sērus, -a, -um, late, too late
stultus, -a, -um, foolish, stupid
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, touch
tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, soft, delicate,
 young
Tityrus, -i, m., Tityrus, a shepherd
tondeō, tondēre, totondi, tōnsus, clip, shave
vērum (conj.), but
viburnum, -i, n., guelder rose
victima, -ae, f., (sacrificial) victim; sacrifice

1. i.e., by lightning

2. The present infinitive in indirect statement
 here vividly represents an action in progress

that is actually already completed. Translate: "I
 remember that . . . predicted . . ."

3. **qui**, interrogative adjective, what (kind of)

Tityrus hinc aberat.¹ Ipsae te, Tityre, pinus,
ipsi te fontes, ipsa haec arbusta vocabant.

- T. Quid facerem? Neque servitio me exire licebat
nec tam praesentes alibi cognoscere divos.
Hic illum vidi iuvenem, Meliboee, quotannis
bis senos cui nostra dies altaria fumant.
Hic mihi responsum primus dedit ille petenti:
“pascite ut ante boves, pueri; submittite tauros.” 45

M. Fortunate senex, ergo tua rura² manebunt,
et tibi magna satis. Quamvis lapis omnia nudus
limosoque palus obducat pascua iunco,
non insueta graves temptabunt³ pabula fetas,
nec mala vicini pecoris contagia laedent. 50

Fortunate senex, hic inter flumina nota
et fontes sacros frigus captabis opacum.

Hinc tibi, quae semper, vicino ab limite saepes
Hyblaeis apibus florem depasta salicti
saepe levi somnum suadebit inire susurro:
hinc alta sub rupe canet frondator ad auras; 55

alibi (adv.), elsewhere, otherwise
altaria, **-ium**, *n. pl.*, altar
apis, **apis**, **-ium or -um**, *f.*, bee
arbustum, **-i**, *n.*, grove, vineyard
bis (adv.), two times, twice
bos, **bovis**, *m. or f.*, ox, cow
captō (1), try to catch; strive after, pursue
contagium, **-i**, *n.*, contact, contagion
dēpascō, **dēpascere**, **dēpāvi**, **dēpastus**, graze
 on, consume, destroy
divus, **-a**, **-um**, divine
ergō (adv.), therefore
fetus, **-a**, **-um**, pregnant, fruitful
flōs, **floris**, *m.*, flower, blossom
fōns, **fontis**, **-ium**, *m.*, spring, fountain
fortūnātus, **-a**, **-um**, fortunate
frigus, **frigoris**, *n.*, cold, coldness, chill
frondātor, **-ōris**, *m.*, pruner
fūmō, **fūmāre**, **fūmāvī**, —, smoke, fume
hinc . . . hinc, on this side . . . on that side,
 here . . . there
Hyblaean, **-a**, **-um**, of or belonging to Mt. Hybla
 in Sicily, which was famous for its honey
insuētus, **-a**, **-um**, unaccustomed, unfamiliar
iuncus, **-i**, *m.*, reed
laedō, **laedere**, **laesī**, **laesus**, hurt, wound,
 injure
lapis, **lapidis**, *m.*, stone
levis, **-e**, light

limes, limitis, *m.*, path, boundary
limōsus, *-a, -um*, muddy, growing in mud
Meliboeus, *-i, m.*, Meliboeus, a shepherd
nūdus, *-a, -um*, bare
obdūcō [*ob + dūcō*], cover, surround
opācus, *-a, -um*, shady, dark
pābulum, *-i, n.*, fodder, grass
palūs, palūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh
Parthus, *-a, -um*, Parthian
pascō, pascere, pāvī, pastus, feed, pasture
pascuum, *-i, n.*, pasture
pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle, herd, flock
pinus, *-üs, f.*, pine tree
praesēns, -entis, present, powerful
quotannīs (adv.), every year
respōnsum, *-i, n.*, answer, reply
rūpēs, rūpis, *f.*, cliff, crag
sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred, consecrated
saepēs, saepis, *f.*, hedge, fence, enclosure
salictum, *-i, n.*, willow grove
sēnī, -ae, -a, six each
servitium, *-i, n.*, slavery; enslavement
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus, persuade,
urge, advise
submittō [*sub + mittō*], let down, rear
susurrus, *-i, m.*, whispering; buzz, hum
taurus, *-i, m.*, bull
Tityrus, *-i, m.*, Tityrus, a shepherd
vīcinus, *-a, -um*, neighboring, nearby

1. The final syllable here scans long: *aberāt*.

2. **rūs**, *here*, lands, fields

3. **temptō**, here, afflict, attack

- nec tamen interea raucae, tua cura, palumbes
nec gemere aeria cessabit turtur ab ulmo.
- T. Ante leves ergo pascentur in aethere cervi,
et freta destituent nudos in litore pisces; 60
ante pererratis amborum finibus exsul
aut Ararim Parthus bibet aut Germania Tigrim,
quam nostro illius labatur pectore vultus.
- M. At nos hinc alii sitientes ibimus Afros,
pars Scythiam et rapidum cretae veniemus Oaxen 65
et penitus toto divisos orbe Britannos.
En umquam patrios longo post tempore fines,
pauperis et tuguri congestum caespite culmen
post aliquot, mea regna videns, mirabor aristas?
Impius haec tam culta novalia miles habebit? 70
Barbarus has segetes? En quo discordia cives,
produxit miseros! His nos consevimus agros!
Insere nunc, Meliboee, piros; pone ordine vites.

āerius, -a, -um, airy, lofty, high
aethēr, aetheris, m., upper air, sky
Afer, Afra, Afrum, African
aliquot (indecl. adj.), several
ambō, ambae, ambō, both
Arar, Araris, m., tributary of the Rhone (**Ararim** =acc. sing.)
arista, -ae, f., ears of grain
at (conj.), but
barbarus, -a, -um, barbarian, foreign
bibō, bibere, bibi, —, drink
Britanni, -ōrum, m. pl., inhabitants of Britain, Britons
caespes, caespitis, m., sod, grass
cervus, -i, m., stag, deer
cessō (1), stop, cease (+inf.)
congerō [*con+gerō*], bring together, heap up, build up
cōns̄erō, cōns̄ere, cōns̄evi, cōns̄itus, sow, plant
crēta, -ae, f., chalk
culmen, -minis, n., top, roof
cultus, -a, -um, tilled, cultivated
dēstituō, dēstituere, dēstitui, dēstitutus, set apart, forsake, abandon
discordia, -ae, f., discord, dissension, strife
dividō, dividere, dīvisi, dīvisus, divide, separate
ēn (interj.), look! behold!
ergō (adv.), therefore, well then
exsul, exsulis, m. or f., exile
fretum, -i, n., strait, sea
gemō, gemere, genui, gemitus, groan, moan; sigh, lament

Germānia, -ae, f., Germany
īns̄erō, īns̄ere, īns̄evi, īns̄itus, put in, insert; graft
intereā (adv.), meanwhile
levis, -e, light, not weighed down; nimble
Meliboeus, -i, m., Meliboeus, a shepherd
novāle, novālis, n., field plowed for the first time, reclaimed land, cultivated field
nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked; exposed
Oaxēs or Oaxis, Oaxis, m., the Oaxis river in Crete (**Crēta, -ae, f.**)
ordō, ordinis, m., order, row
palumbēs, palumbis, m. or f., pigeon
Parthus, -a, -um, Parthian
pascor, pasci, pastus sum, feed, graze
patrius, -a, -um, of a father, paternal, ancestral
penitus (adv.), deep within, thoroughly, wholly
pirus, -i, f., pear tree
piscis, piscis, -ium, m., fish
rapidus, -a, -um, tearing away, consuming; rushing, rapid
raucus, -a, -um, hoarse; raucous, noisy
Scythia, -ae, f., Scythia
seges, segetis, f., grain field, crop
sitiō, sitire, sitivī or sitiī, —, thirst for, be thirsty
Tigris, Tigris, m., the Tigris river (**Tigrim** =acc. sing.)
tugurium, -i, n., hut, hovel, cottage; **tugurī = tugurii**
turtur, turturis, m., turtledove
ulmus, -i, f., elm tree
vitis, vitis, f., vine
vultus, -ūs, m., face, looks, expression

Ite meae, felix quondam pecus, ite capellae.
Non ego vos posthac viridi projectus in antro
dumosa pendere procul de rupe videbo;
carmina nulla canam; non, me pascente, capellae,
florentem cytisum et salices carpetis amaras.

- T. Sic tamen hanc mecum poteras¹ requiescere noctem
fronde super viridi: sunt nobis mitia poma,
castaneae molles et pressi copia lactis;
et iam summa procul villarum culmina fumant,
maioresque cadunt altis de montibus umbrae.

amārus, -a, -um, bitter	pascō, pascere, pāvī, pastus, feed, pasture
antrum, -i, n., cave, cavern, grotto	pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, herd, flock
capella, -ae, f., she-goat	pendēō, pendēre, pependi, —, hang (down), be suspended
carpō, carpere, carpsi, carptus, pick, pluck; crop, graze on	pōmum, -i, n., fruit
castanea, -ae, f., chestnut	posthāc (adv.), hereafter, in the future
culmen, -minis, n., top, roof	procul (adv.), at a distance, far, far off
cytisus, -i, m. or f., clover	prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēci, prōiectus, thrust forward; stretch out
dūmosus, -a, -um, overgrown with bushes, bushy	quondam (adv.), at one time, once, formerly
flōrēō, flōrēre, flōrui, —, bloom, blossom	requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvī, requiētus, rest, find relief
frōns, frondis, f., foliage	rūpēs, rūpis, f., cliff, crag
fūmō, fūmāre, fūmāvī, —, smoke, fume	salix, salicis, f., willow tree
lac, lactis, n., milk	super (prep.+abl.), above, upon
lac pressum, cheese	viridis, -e, green
mītis, -e, ripe, soft	
mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft	

1. **poterās** instead of **possēs**; the indicative is often preferred in the apodosis of a contrary to fact conditional sentence (expressed or

implied) when the verb is one of obligation, necessity, possibility, or ability.

Vergil, *Ecloga II*

Formosum pastor Corydon ardebat Alexin,
delicias domini, nec quid speraret habebat.
Tantum¹ inter densas, umbrosa cacumina, fagos
adsidue veniebat. Ibi haec incondita solus
montibus et silvis studio iactabat inani: 5

"O crudelis Alexi, nihil mea carmina curas?
Nil nostri miserere? Mori me denique cogis?
Nunc etiam pecudes umbras et frigora captant,
nunc viridis etiam occultant spineta lacertos,
Thestylis et rapido fessis messoribus aestu 10
alia serpyllumque herbas contundit orentis.
At mecum raucis, tua dum vestigia lustro,
sole sub ardenti resonant arbusta cicadis.
Nonne fuit satius tristis Amaryllidis iras
atque superba pati fastidia? Nonne Menalcan, 15
quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus esesses?
O formose puer, nimium ne crede² colori:
alba ligustra cadunt, vaccinia nigra leguntur.

adsiduē (adv.), continually, constantly
aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat
albus, -a, -um, white
Alexis, *Alexis*, *m.* Alexis, a shepherd (**Alexin**= acc. sing.; **Alexi**=voc. sing.)
ālium, -i, *n.*, garlic
Amaryllis, *Amaryllidis*, *f.*, Amaryllis, a shepherdess
arbustum, -i, *n.*, grove, vineyard
at (conj.), but
cacūmen, -minis, *n.*, tree-top, summit
candidus, -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant
captō (1), try to catch; pursue
cicāda, -ae, *f.*, tree-wicket, cicada
cōgō, **cōgere**, **coēgi**, **coāctus**, drive together; compel
color, -ōris, *m.*, color
contundō, **contundere**, **contudī**, **contūsus**, pound, crush
Corydōn, -ōnis, *m.*, Corydon, a shepherd
cūrō (1), care for
dēliciae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, delight, darling, sweetheart, beloved
dēnsus, -a, -um, dense, thick; crowded, close
fagus, -i, *f.*, beech tree
fastidium, -i, *n.*, aversion, weariness; disdain, contempt
fessus, -a, -um, weary, exhausted, worn out
frigus, **frigoris**, *n.*, cold, coldness, chill
herba, -ae, *f.*, grass; herb
inānis, -e, empty, vain, meaningless

inconditus, -a, -um, rude, artless, unpolished
lacertus, -i, *m.*, lizard
ligustrum, -i, *n.*, privet-blossom, a white-flowered shrub
lustrō (1), traverse; trace
Menalcās, -ae, *m.*, Menalcas, a shepherd (**Menalcan**=acc. sing.)
messor, -ōris, *m.*, reaper
niger, **nigra**, **nigrum**, dark, black
nimium (adv.), too, too much, excessively
occultō (1), hide, conceal
olēns, -entis, strong-smelling
pastor, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd
pecus, **pecudis**, *f.*, beast, herd animal
rapidus, -a, -um, tearing away, consuming; rushing, rapid
raucus, -a, -um, hoarse; raucous, noisy
resonō, **resonāre**, **resonāvī**, —, resound, re-echo
satius = *satis*
serpyllum, -i, *n.*, thyme
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods
spīnētum, -i, *n.*, thicket
superbus, -a, -um, proud, arrogant
Thestylis, *Thestylidis*, *f.*, Thestylis, a servant girl
tristis, -e, sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
vaccinium, -i, *n.*, hyacinth
vestigium, -i, *n.*, footprint, trace, track
viridis, -e, green

1. **tantum**, *here*, adv., only2. **nē crēde**, *here*, *nē* + positive imperative yields a negative imperative.

Despectus tibi¹ sum nec qui² sim quaeris, Alexi,
quam dives pecoris, nivei quam lactis abundans. 20
 Mille meae Siculis errant in montibus agnae;
lac mihi non aestate novum, non frigore defit.
 Canto quae solitus, si quando³ armenta vocabat,
Amphion Dircaeus in Actaeo⁴ Aracyntho.
 Nec sum adeo informis: nuper me in litore vidi, 25
cum placidum ventis staret mare. Non ego Daphnini
iudice te metuam, si numquam fallit imago.
 O tantum⁵ libeat mecum tibi sordida rura
atque humilis habitare casas et figere cervos
haedorumque gregem viridi compellere hibisco! 30
 Mecum una in silvis imitabere Pana canendo
(Pan primum calamos cera coniungere pluris
instituit, Pan curat ovis oviumque magistros),
nec te paeniteat calamo trivisse labellum.
 Haec eadem ut sciret, quid non faciebat Amyntas? 35
 Est mihi disparibus septem compacta cicutis

abundō (1), overflow; abound, be plentiful
Actaeus, -a, -um, Attic
aestās, -tatis, f., summer
agna, -ae, f., lamb
Alexis, *Alexis*, *m.* Alexis, a shepherd (*Alexin*=
acc. sing.; *Alexi*=voc. sing.)
Amphiōn, -onis, *m.*, Amphion, son of Zeus and
 Antiope, both herdsman and bard who
 fortified Thebes, playing and singing so
 wonderfully that the very stones moved and
 set themselves in place to form the walls
Amyntas, -ae, *m.*, Amyntas, a shepherd
Aracynthus, -i, *m.*, Mt. Aracynthus in Greece
armentum, -i, *n.*, herd
calamus, -i, *m.*, reed; reed-pipe
casa, -ae, f., cottage, hut
cēra, -ae, f., wax
cervus, -i, *m.*, stag, deer
cicūta, -ae, f., hemlock; shepherd's pipe
compactus, -a, -um, fastened together
cūrō (1), care for
Daphnis, *Daphnidis*, *m.*, Daphnis, a Sicilian
 shepherd, son of Mercury, mythical inventor of
 pastoral song (*Daphnini*=acc. sing.)
dēfiō, *dēfieri*, —, be lacking, run out
dēspiciō, *dēspicere*, *dēspexi*, *dēspectus*, look
 down upon, despise, scorn
Dircaeus, -a, -um, of Dirce, a fountain of the
 Muses
dispār, *disparis*, unequal, different, dissimilar
dives, *dīvitīs*, rich, wealthy

fallō, *fallere*, *fefelli*, *falsus*, deceive, escape the
 notice of
figō, *figere*, *fixi*, *fixus*, fix; pierce
frigus, *frigoris*, *n.*, cold, coldness, chill; cold
 weather
grex, *gregis*, *m.*, flock, herd
habitō (1), live; inhabit
haedus, -i, *m.*, young goat, kid
hibiscum, -i, *n.*, hibiscus, marsh mallow
imāgō, *imāginis*, *f.*, image, appearance
imitor (1), imitate, represent
informis, -e, ugly, deformed, shapeless
labellum, -i, *n.*, (little) lip
lac, *lactis*, *n.*, milk
libet, *libēre*, *libuit* or *libitum est*, it is pleasurable,
 it is agreeable
mille (indecl. numerical adj.), a thousand
niveus, -a, -um, snowy, snow-white
ovis, *ovis*, -ium, *m.* or *f.*, sheep
Pān, *Pānis*, *m.*, Pan, god of woods and
 shepherds (*Pāna*=acc. sing.)
pecus, *pecoris*, *n.*, cattle, herd, flock
placidus, -a, -um, calm, peaceful
septem (indecl. numerical adj.), seven
Siculus, -a, -um, Sicilian
silva, -ae, f., forest, woods
sordidus, -a, -um, dirty; mean
terō, *terere*, *trīvi*, *trītus*, rub, wear down, wear
 away
viridis, -e, green

1. **tibi**, dative of agent (frequent in poetry with
 the perfect passive)
 2. **qui**, *interrogative adjective*, what (kind of
 man)
 3. **quandō** = *aliquandō* (adv.), ever

4. Here, elision does not occur between the final
 -o of *Actaeō* and *Aracynthō*. When conditions
 for elision are present but no elision occurs,
 this is called *hiatus*.
 5. **tantum**, here, adv., only

fistula, Damoetas dono mihi quam dedit olim,
et dixit moriens, 'te nunc habet ista secundum';
dixit Damoetas, invidit stultus Amyntas.

Praeterea duo nec tuta mihi valle reperti
capreoli sparsis etiam nunc pellibus albo,
bina die siccant ovis ubera; quos tibi servo.
Iam pridem a me illos abducere Thestylis orat;¹
et faciet, quoniam sordent tibi munera nostra.

Huc ades,² o formose puer: tibi lilia plenis
ecce ferunt nymphae calathis; tibi candida Nais,
pallentis violas et summa papavera carpens,
narcissum et florem iungit bene olentis anethi;
tum casia atque aliis intexens suavibus herbis
mollia luteola pingit vaccinia calta.

Ipse ego cana legam tenera lanugine mala
castaneasque nuces, mea quas Amaryllis amabat;
addam cerea pruna (honos erit huic quoque pomo),

addō, addere, addidi, additus, add
albus, -a, -um, white
Amaryllis, Amaryllidis, f., Amaryllis, a
shepherdess
Amyntās, -ae, m., Amyntas, a shepherd
anēthus, -i, m., and anēthum, -i, n., dill
bini, -ae, -a, two each, twin
calathus, -i, m., basket
calt(h)a, -ae, f., marigold
candidus, -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant
cānus, -a, -um, white
capreolus, -i, wild goat, roebuck
carpō, carpere, carpsi, carptus, pick, pluck;
gather
casia, -ae, f., cassia, a fragrant shrub
castanea, -ae, f., chestnut tree; chestnut
cēreus, -a, -um, waxy
Dāmoetās, -ae, m., Damoetas, a shepherd
ecce (interj.), lo! behold!
fistula, -ae, f., pipe, reed-pipe
flōs, flōris, m., flower, blossom
herba, -ae, f., grass; herb
honōs = honor
intexō, intexere, intexui, intextus, weave
invideō [in + videō], look askance at; begrudge,
envy
lānūgō, lānūginis, f., wool, down, fuzz
liliū, -i, n., lily
lūteolus, -a, -um, yellowish
mālum, -i, n., fruit; apple
mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft
mūnus, mūneris, n., service, tribute; gift
Nāis, Nāiadis, f., a Naiad, a water nymph
narcissus, -i, m., narcissus

nux, nucis, f., nut
nymphā, -ae, f., nymph
olēns, -entis, strong-smelling
ōlim (adv.), once, formerly
ovis, ovis, -ium, m. or f., sheep
palleō, pallēre, pallui, —, be pale
papāver, papāveris, n., poppy
pellis, pellis, -ium, f., hide, skin
pingō, pingere, pīnxi, pictus, adorn with
colors, paint
plēnus, -a, -um, full
pōmum, -i, n., fruit
praetereā (adv.), besides, furthermore, in addition
pridem (adv.), for a long time
iam pridem, for a long time already, long
since
prūnum, -i, n., plum
quoque (adv.), also, too
reperiō, reperiē, rep(p)eri, repertus, find, dis-
cover
secundus, -a, -um, following, second
siccō (1), dry, drain dry
sordēō, sordēre, sordui, —, be filthy, be mean
stultus, -a, -um, foolish, stupid
suāvis, -e, sweet, pleasant
tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, soft, delicate,
young
Thestylis, Thestylidis, f., Thestylis, a servant
girl
über, überis, n., teat, udder
vaccinium, -i, n., hyacinth
vallis, vallis, -ium, f., valley
viola, -ae, f., violet

1. The present tense, when accompanied by some expression of time duration, is often used to denote action that has been going on

for some time and is still going on. Translate: "has been begging."

et vos, o lauri, carpam et te, proxima myrtle,
sic positae quoniam suavis miscetis odores. 55
 Rusticus es, Corydon; nec munera curat Alexis,
nec, si muneribus certes, concedat Iollas.
 Heu, heu, quid volui misero mihi? Floribus Austrum
perditus et liquidis immisi fontibus apros.
 Quem fugis, a, demens? Habitarunt di quoque silvas 60
 Dardaniusque Paris. Pallas quas condidit arces
ipsa colat; nobis placeant ante omnia silvae.
 Torva leaena lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam,
florentem cytisum sequitur lasciva capella,
te Corydon, o Alexi: trahit sua quemque voluptas. 65
 Aspice, aratra iugo referunt suspensa iuvenci,
et sol crescentis decedens duplicat umbras;
me tamen urit amor: quis¹ enim modus adsit amori?
 A, Corydon, Corydon, quae te dementia cepit!
 Semiputata tibi frondosa vitis in ulmo est: 70
 quin² tu aliquid saltem potius, quorum indiget usus,
viminibus mollique paras detexere iunco?
 Invenies alium, si te hic fastidit, Alexin."

ā (interj.), oh! ah! alas!

Alexis, Alexis, *m.* Alexis, a shepherd (**Alexin-** acc. sing.; **Alexi**=voc. sing.)

aper, apri, *m.*, wild boar

arātrum, -ī, *n.*, plough

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel

aspiciō, aspicere, aspexi, aspectus, look toward, look at; behold

Auster, Austrī, *m.*, Auster, the South Wind

capella, -ae, *f.*, she-goat

carpō, carpere, carpsi, carptus, pick, pluck; gather

certō (1), struggle, contest, strive

colō, colere, colui, cultus, till, tend; cultivate

condō, condere, condidi, conditus, found, build

Corydōn, -ōnis, *m.*, Corydon, a shepherd

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus, grow, increase

cūrō (1), care for

cytisus, -ī, *m. or f.*, clover

Dardanius, -a, -um, Dardanian, Trojan

dētexō, dētexere, dētexui, dētextus, weave

duplicō (1), double

fastidiō, fastidire, fastidivī, fastiditus, scorn

flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —, bloom, blossom

flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower, blossom

fōns, fontis, -iūm, *m.*, spring, fountain

frondōsus, -a, -um, leafy

habitō (1), live; inhabit

heu (interj. of grief or pain), ah!, oh!, alas!

indigeō, indigēre, indiguī, —, be in need, require (+ gen.)

Iollās, -ae, *m.*, Iollas, a slave-owner (?)

iugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke

iuncus, -ī, *m.*, reed

iuvencus, -ī, *m.*, steer

lascīvus, -a, -um, frisky, playful

laurus, -ī, *f.*, laurel

leaena, -ae, *f.*, lioness

liquidus, -a, -um, liquid; clear

lupus, -ī, *m.*, wolf

mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft

mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, service, tribute; gift

myrtus, -ī, *f.*, myrtle

odor, -ōris, *m.*, odor, scent

Pallas, Palladis, *f.*, Pallas Athena, Minerva

Paris, Paridis, *m.*, Paris, son of Priam

potius (comparative adv.), rather

quoque (adv.), also, too

rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, countrified

saltem (adv.), at least

semiputātus, -a, -um, half-pruned

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods

suāvis, -e, sweet, pleasant

suspēnsus, -a, -um, hanging

torvus, -a, -um, fierce

trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus, draw, drag; attract

ulmus, -ī, *f.*, elm tree

ürō, ürere, ussi, ustus, burn, scorch, inflame, consume; sting

vīmen, -minis, *n.*, twig

vītis, vītis, *f.*, vine

voluptās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure, enjoyment

1. **quis**, interrogative pronoun used adjectively

2. **quīn**, here, in a direct question, why . . . not

Vergil, *Georgics* IV.149-196

Nunc age, ¹ naturas apibus quas Iuppiter ipse addidit expediam, pro qua mercede canoros Curetum sonitus crepitantiaque aera secutae Dictaeo caeli regem pavere sub antro. ²	150
Solae communis natos, consortia tecta urbis habent magnisque agitant ³ sub legibus aevum, et patriam sole et certos novere Penatis;	155
venturaeque hiemis memores aestate labore experiuntur et in medium quaesita reponunt.	
Namque aliae victu ⁴ invigilant et foedere pacto exercentur agris; pars intra saepa domorum narcissi lacrimam ⁵ et lentum de cortice gluten	160
prima favis ponunt fundamina, deinde tenacis suspendunt ceras; aliae spem gentis adultos educunt ⁶ fetus; aliae purissima mella	
stipant et liquido distendunt nectare cellas; ⁷	165

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| addō, addere, addidī, additus , add; assign, attribute | fundāmen, -minis , n., foundation |
| adultus, -a, -um , mature, full-grown | glüten, glütinis , n., gum, glue, paste |
| aes, aeris , n., copper, bronze | hiems, hiemis , f., winter |
| aestās, -tatis , f., summer | intrā (prep. + acc.), within |
| aevum, -i , n., lifetime; life | invigilō (1), stay up late to work on, stay awake over (+ dat.) |
| antrum, -i , n., cave, cavern, grotto | lentus, -a, -um , pliant; sticky, clinging; slow, indifferent, at leisure |
| apis, apis, -ium or -um , f., bee | liquidus, -a, -um , liquid; fluid |
| canōrus, -a, -um , resonant, sonorous, tuneful, melodius | namque (conj.), for in fact |
| cēra, -ae , f., wax; (pl.) wax cells of bees | mel, mellis , n., honey |
| commūnis, -e , common, shared | mercēs, mercēdis , f., wage, reward |
| cōnsors, cōsortis , shared, held in common | narcissus, -i , m., narcissus |
| cortex, corticis , m. or f., treebark | nectar, nectaris , n., nectar, honey |
| crepitō (1), rattle, rustle, crash, clang | pactus, -a, -um , agreed upon |
| Cūrētēs, -um , m. pl., the Curetes, an ancient people of Crete who worshipped Zeus with the beating of shields | pascō, pascere, pāvī, pastus , feed |
| deinde (adv.), then, next, afterwards | Penātēs, -ium , m. pl., the Penates, household gods; hearth, home |
| Dictaeus, -a, -um , of Dicte, Cretan | pūrus, -a, -um , clean; pure, uncontaminated |
| distendō, distendere, distendī, distentus , stretch, cause to swell, fill to utmost capacity | repōnō [re + pōnō], put back; put away, store away |
| exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus , keep busy, occupy; exercise | saeptum, -i , n., enclosed space; wall |
| expediō, expedire, expeditiv or expeditiī, expeditus , disentangle; explain | sonitus, -ūs , m., sound, noise |
| favus, -i , m., honeycomb | stīpō (1), fill, pack, stuff, cram |
| fētus, -ūs , m., offspring, young | suspendō, suspendere, suspēndī, suspēnsus , hang, suspend, hang up |
| | tenax, tenācis , holding fast, tenacious, clinging |
| | vīctus, -ūs , m., nourishment, food |

1. **nunc age**, come now, come on

1. *Come, come, come now, come on.*
2. *Saturn (Kronos), knowing one of his children was to depose him, devoured them all as they were born, but the infant Jupiter (Zeus) was concealed by his mother in a cave on Mt. Dicte, and the Curetes drowned out his cries by clashing their cymbals, while the bees fed the baby Jupiter honey.*

3. agitō, here, spend, pass

4. *victu* = *victui*

5. **lacrima**, here, juice or gum (from plants)

6. *ēducō*, here, lead forth; educate

7. *cella*, here, chamber, cell

sunt quibus ad¹ portas cecidit custodia sorti,
 inque vicem speculantur aquas et nubila caeli,
 aut onera accipiunt venientum,² aut agmine facto
 ignavum fucos pecus a praesepibus arcent:
 fervet opus, redolentque thymo fraglantia mella.

Ac veluti lentis Cyclopes fulmina massis
 cum properant,³ alii taurinis follibus auras
 accipiunt redduntque, alii stridentia tingunt
 aera lacu; gemit impositis incudibus Aetna;
 illi inter sese magna vi bracchia tollunt
 in numerum,⁴ versantque tenaci forcipe ferrum;
 non aliter, si parva licet componere magnis,
 Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi
 munere quamque suo. Grandaevis oppida curae
 et munire favos et daedala fingere tecta.
 At fessae multa referunt se nocte⁵ minores,
 crura thymo plenae; pascuntur et arbuta passim

170

175

180

aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze
Aetna, -ae, f. Mt. Aetna, a volcano in Sicily
agmen, -minis, n., line; throng; train
aliter (adv.), otherwise
arbutum, -i, n., wild strawberry, arbutus
arceō, arcēre, arcui, —, keep at a distance,
 keep away
at (conj.), but
bracchium, -i, n., arm, forearm
Cecropius, -a, -um, Cecropian (of Cecrops,
 legendary king of Attica), Attic, Hymettian
compōnō [con + pōnō], place together; compare
crūs, crūris, n., leg; shin
custōdia, -ae, f., watch, guard-duty
Cyclōps, Cyclōpis, m., Cyclops, an assistant of
 Vulcan at his forge under Mt. Aetna
daedalus, -a, -um, skillfully wrought, cunningly
 worked
favus, -i, m., honeycomb
ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī, —, boil; seethe, surge
fessus, -a, -um, weary, exhausted, worn out
tingō, fingere, finxi, fictus, form, fashion,
 make
follis, follis, -ium, m., bag, sack; (pl.) pair of
 bellows
forceps, forcipis, f., tongs
frāglantia = frāgrantia
frāgrō (1), smell strongly, be fragrant
fucus, -i, m., drone
fulmen, -minis, n., lightning bolt
gemō, gemere, gemui, gemitus, groan
grandaevis, -a, -um, of great age, aged
ignāvus, -a, -um, lazy

incūs, incūdis, f., anvil
innātus, -a, -um, inborn
lacus, -ūs, m., lake, pond, pool
lentus, -a, -um, pliant; sticky, clinging; slow,
 indifferent, at leisure
massa, -ae, f., lump, mass (of unworked ore)
mel, mellis, n., honey
mūnus, mūneris, n., service, tribute; gift
nūbila, -ōrum, n. pl., clouds
onus, oneris, n., load, burden
pascor, pasci, pastus sum, feed on, graze on
passim (adv.), everywhere
pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, herd, flock
plēnus, -a, -um, full
praesēpē, praesēpis, n., stall, pen
redoleō, redolēre, —, —, be fragrant, smell of
 (+ abl.)
sēsē = sē
specular (1), examine, observe; watch out for
strīdeō, strīdēre (or strīdō, strīdere), strīdi,
 —, creak; hiss
taurinus, -a, -um, made of ox-hide
tenax, tenācis, holding fast, tenacious, clinging
thymum, -i, n., thyme
tingō or tinguō, tingere or tinguere, tinxī,
 tintus, wet, plunge; dye, color
tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus, raise, lift up
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, press; spur on, urge,
 impel
versō (1), keep turning
***vicis, vicis, f.**, change, alternation, turn
in vicem, in turn, by turns

1. **ad**, here, at2. **venientum** = *venientium*3. **properō**, here, make (with haste)4. **in numerum**, in time, in cadence5. **multā . . . nocte**, late at night

et glaucas salices casiamque crocumque rubentem
et pinguem tiliam et ferrugineos hyacinthos.

Omnibus una quies operum, labor omnibus unus:
mane ruunt portis, nusquam mora; rursus easdem 185
Vesper ubi e pastu tandem decidere campis
admonuit, tum tecta petunt, tum corpora curant;
fit sonitus, mussantque oras et limina circum.

Post, ubi iam thalamis se composuere, siletur
in noctem, fessoque sopor suus occupat artus. 190

Nec vero a stabulis pluvia impendente recedunt
longius, aut credunt caelo adventantibus Euris,
sed circum¹ tutae sub moenibus urbis aquantur
excursusque brevis temptant, et saepe lapillos,
ut cumbae instabiles fluctu iactante saburram, 195
tollunt, his sese per inania nubila librant.

admoneō [*ad* + *moneō*], bring to mind, remind,
suggest
adventō (1), draw near, approach
aquor (1), fetch water
artūs, artuum, *m. pl.*, joints; limbs
brevis, -e, brief, short
casia, -ae, f., cassia, a fragrant shrub
compōnō [*con* + *pōnō*], place together; settle
crocus, -i, m., saffron (the plant)
cumba, -ae, f., small boat, skiff
cūrō (1), care for
dēcēdō [*dē* + *cēdō*], depart, withdraw
Eurus, -i, m., the east wind
excursus, -ūs, m., raid, expedition
ferrūgineus, -a, -um, having a dark purple
color, purple
fessus, -a, -um, weary, exhausted, worn out
flūctus, -ūs, m., wave, billow
glaucus, -a, -um, blue-grey, grey-green
hyacinthus, -i, m., hyacinth
impendeō, impendēre, —, —, hang over,
impend, threaten
inānis, -e, empty; insubstantial, thin
instabilis, -e, tottering, slipping, unsteady
lapillus, -i, m., small stone, pebble

librō (1), balance
limen, -minis, n., threshold; doorway, entrance
māne (adv.), early in the morning
mussō (1), whisper, hum
nūbila, -ōrum, n. pl., clouds
occupō (1), seize, occupy
ōra, -ae, f., border, boundary
pastus, -ūs, m., pasture; feeding
pinguis, -e, fat; rich; luxuriant
pluvia, -ae, f., rain, rainfall
quiēs, quiētis, f., rest, repose
rubēns, -entis, colored or tinged with red
rursus (adv.), again, back again
saburra, -ae, f., saburra, gravel (used as ballast)
salix, salicis, f., willow tree
sēsē = sē
sileō, silēre, silui, —, be silent
sonitus, -ūs, m., sound, noise
sopor, -ōris, m., sleep
stabulum, -i, n., stable, stall, fold
thalamus, -i, m., (marriage) chamber
tilia, -ae, f., linden, lime tree
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, raise, lift up
Vesper, Vesperi, m., Vesper, the Evening Star

1. *circum*, here, adv., round about, all around

Horace

Practically all of Roman literature derives in some sense from its Greek antecedents. Epic, history, drama, philosophy, and lyric had been developed and handled by the Greeks and afterwards adapted by the Romans to their own particular purposes. Yet reliance on previous achievement does not imply slavish imitation. To model one's work on something that went before and even to go so far as to copy or translate portions word for word was considered not a negative or dishonest activity but rather a tribute and compliment to the author of the previous work. And at every turn, the Romans added their own individual stamp to their models in the western literary tradition so as to make their own literature distinctive and unique.

One genre, however, belongs specifically to Rome, and that is satire. Although the Greeks wrote many works that might be termed satirical, such as the plays of Aristophanes, they never developed a formal generic system for satire. This was naturally more suited to the Romans, whose penchant for criticism and bitterness and whose traditional, conservative, and "proper" attitudes (though these were frequently antithetical to the reality of their daily life styles) made them good candidates for the creation of a genre whose basis was invective, criticism, and a strong underlying moral viewpoint. In its most controlled form, satire consists of a medley of episodes or comments that allow the writer to expose social evils and, by inundating readers with them, to influence their correction. It is generally written in dactylic hexameters and so has a somber tone, although the satirists run the whole gamut from downright seriousness to a more jocular, easygoing treatment of theme.

The early history of Roman satire is a difficult subject because of the rather scanty evidence we possess and so will not be of concern to us here. We shall rather consider a specimen of the genre in its developed stage, a satire written by the poet Horace in the Augustan Age. Horace lived from 65 B.C. to 8 B.C., that is, he flourished during the years in which Augustus fought to come to power and indeed established himself firmly as emperor. Born of a poor family and with a father who was a freedman (*libertinus*, "a manumitted slave"), Horace's early life was marked by simplicity but also by an acute sense of values. His father, presumably out of a desire to give his son the benefits that he had never enjoyed, placed a great premium on his education and moral well-being, seeing to it personally that he received the best possible instruction in his early years. Unlike most freeborn Roman youths whose rearing was entrusted to slaves (the *paedagogus*, an educated slave who was responsible for the well-being and education of the young child), Horace enjoyed his father's full attention and concern.

As a contemporary of Vergil, Horace, too, was deeply influenced by the political and social instability which characterized Rome during his early years and so was finally indebted to Augustus when the establishment of the empire ushered in an age of relative calm. Although at an early age Horace had allied himself with Brutus and the opposition to Augustus (Octavian), the subsequent emperor did not hold this against him and, in recognition of his supreme literary talents, raised Horace to the position of *poet laureate* in the imperial court. Throughout his poems, one can sense the poet's deep admiration for the emperor

and, more importantly, for the traditional qualities which characterize the greatness of Rome: *dignitās*, "dignity," *pietās*, "devotion," *frugālitās*, "frugality," *virtūs*, "excellence, manliness," *fidēs*, "faith," *gravitās*, "seriousness," and moderation, as seen in Horace's frequent references, explicit and implicit, to the *aurea mediocritās*, "the golden mean."

Horace is known most widely for his four books of odes (*carmina*), lyric compositions dealing with a wide range of topics from political concerns to the problems of life and love and age and death. They are marked by a striking polish in structure and execution, by their metrical variety and perfection, and by an unequaled, though subtle, sensitivity of soul. But at the moment we are concerned with his satires, or, as he called them, *sermōnēs*, "conversations" on various topics of contemporary concern. He modeled his work largely on that of Lucilius, a first century B.C. writer who had molded ancient satire into the formal genre mentioned earlier.

The following selection from the first book (he wrote two) presents a light account of a bothersome bore Horace met one day while walking down the *Via Sacra*, the main street of ancient Rome. In humorously describing his own attempts to rid himself of this pest, Horace implicitly criticizes those extremely talkative and aggressive Romans who strive to get ahead by pushing themselves on others who have "influence" or "connections." The bore, of course, is interested in befriending Horace primarily because he feels that the poet might be able to introduce him into the circle of Maecenas.

Horace's other works include a collection of seventeen epodes (his earliest literary activity) and a group of epistles written in verse on a variety of topics. Most famous among these is the letter addressed to the Piso brothers which is traditionally known as the *Ars Poetica*, one of the most significant works of literary criticism to have come down to us from Roman antiquity.

Horace, *Sermōnēs* I.9

Ibam forte Via Sacra,¹ sicut meus est mos,
 nescio quid meditans nugarum, totus in illis:
 accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantum,²
 arreptaque manu “quid³ agis, dulcissime rerum?”
 “Suaviter, ut nunc est,” inquam, “et cupio omnia quae vis.” 5
 Cum adsectaretur, “numquid⁴ vis?” occupo. At ille
 “noris nos” inquit; “docti⁵ sumus.” Hic ego “pluris
 hoc” inquam “mihi eris.” Misere discedere quaerens
 ire⁶ modo ocios, interdum consistere,⁶ in aurem
 dicere⁶ nescio quid puer, cum sudor ad imos 10
 manaret talos. “O te, Bolane, cerebri
 felicem”⁷ aiebam tacitus, cum quidlibet ille
 garriret, vicos, urbem laudaret. Ut illi
 nil respondebam, “misere cupis” inquit “abire.
 Iam dudum video;⁸ sed nil agis: usque tenebo; 15
 prosequar hinc quo nunc iter est tibi.” “Nil opus est te
 circumagi;⁹ quendam volo visere non tibi notum;
 trans Tiberim longe cubat is prope¹⁰ Caesaris hortos.”

accurrō [ad + currō], run toward, run up, approach
adsector (1), follow (after)
arripiō, **arripere**, **arripiū**, **arreptus**, grasp, seize
 at (conj.), but
auris, **auris**, -ium, f., ear
Bōlānus, -i, m., Bolanus
Caesar, **Caesaris**, m., Caesar
cerebrum, -i, n., brain; anger
circumagō [circum + agō], lead around; take a roundabout route
cōsistō, **cōsistere**, **cōstiti**, —, stop, pause, halt
cubō, **cubāre**, **cubui** or **cubāvī**, **cubitus**, lie down, sleep; lie in bed; lie sick
cupiō, **cupere**, **cupivī** or **cupiū**, **cupitus**, want, desire
dūdum (adv.), some time ago, before
 iam dūdum, for a long time now
garriō, **garrire**, **garriū** or **garriū**, **garritus**, chatter, talk
hortus, -i, m., garden
īmus, -a, -um, lowest, deepest; bottom of
 inquam (defective verb), I say; **inquit**, he says

mānō (1), trickle, drip; stream, flow
meditor (1), consider; devise
nescio quis, **nescio quid** (indef. pron.), someone, something
nūgae, -ārum, f. pl., trifles, nonsense
ō (interj.), oh
occupō (1), seize, occupy; break in
ōcius (comparative adv.), sooner, more quickly
prōsequor [prō + sequor], escort, follow
quilibet, **quaelibet**, **quidlibet** (indef. pron.), anyone, anything . . . you will; anyone, anything . . . it pleases
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum**, sacred
sicut (conj.), just as
suāviter (adv), sweetly, pleasantly, nicely
sūdor, -ōris, m., sweat
tacitus, -a, -um, silent
tālus, -i, m., ankle, heel
Tiberis, **Tiberis**, m., Tiber river (**Tiberim** = acc. sing.)
ūsque (adv.), continuously; all the way
vīcus, -i, m., small street, row of houses; neighborhood
vīsō, **visere**, **vīsi**, **visus**, go to see, visit; view, behold

1. **Via Sacra**, a street in Rome
2. **tantum** (adv.), only
3. **quid**, here, adverbial accusative, how
4. **numquid**, here, = num quid
5. **doctus**, -a, -um, learned, skilled, clever
6. **īre**, **cōsistere**, **dicere**, historical infinitives
7. **cerebri felicem**, “fortunate in (your) anger”

8. The present tense, when accompanied by some expression of time duration, is often used to denote action that has been going on for some time and is still going on. Translate: “I have been seeing.”
9. **circumagi**, middle voice
10. **prope**, here, (prep. + acc.), near

"Nil habeo quod agam et non sum piger: usque sequar te." 20
 Demitto auriculas, ut iniquae mentis asellus,
 cum gravius dorso subiit¹ onus. Incipit ille:
 "Si bene me novi, non Viscum pluris amicum,
 non Varium facies: nam quis me scribere plures
 aut citius possit versus? Quis membra movere
 mollius? Invideat quod et Hermogenes, ego canto." 25
 Interpellandi locus hic erat "est tibi mater,
 cognati, quis te salvost² opus?" "Haud mihi quisquam.
 Omnes composui." "Felices! Nunc ego resto.
 Confice;³ namque instat fatum mihi triste, Sabella⁴
 quod puero cecinit divina mota anus urna: 30
 hunc neque dira venena nec hosticus auferet ensis
 nec laterum dolor aut tussis nec tarda podagra;
 garrulus hunc quando consumet cumque;⁵ loquaces,
 si sapiat, vitet, simul atque adoleverit aetas."
 Ventum erat ad Vestae⁶ quarta iam parte diei 35

adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvi, adultus, grow up, mature
anus, -ūs, f., old woman
asellus, -ī, m., little ass
auricula, -ae, f., (little) ear
citius (comparative adv.), more quickly
cognātus, -ī, m., kinsman, relative
compōnō [*com*+*pōnō*], place together; make peaceful; bury
cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsi, cōnsūptus, destroy
dēmittō [*dē*+*mittō*], send down, let fall
dirus, -a, -um, terrible, dire, dreadful
divīnus, -a, -um, divine
dorsum, -ī, n., back
ēnsis, ēnsis, -ium, m., sword
fātum, -ī, n., destiny, fate
garrulus, -a, -um, talkative
haud (adv.), not at all, by no means
Hermogenēs, Hermogenis, m., Hermogenes
hosticus, -a, -um, hostile
iniquus, -a, -um, uneven; discontented, resentful
instō, instāre, institi, —, press (up)on, pursue; threaten
interpellō (1), interrupt, break in
invideō [*in*+*videō*], look askance at; begrudge, envy
latus, lateris, n., side
loquāx, loquācis, talkative, loquacious

membrum, -ī, n., limb
mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft
namque (conj.), for in fact
nī = nītī
onus, oneris, n., load, burden
piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy, slow
podagra, -ae, f., gout
quandōcumque (adv.), at some time or other, some day
quartus, -a, -um, fourth
quis (archaic) = *quibus*
restō, restāre, restiti, —, be left
Sabellus, -a, -um, Sabine, of the Sabines, a people of Italy
salvus, -a, -um, safe, sound
sapiō, sapere, sapīvī or sapīlī, —, be sensible, be wise
subeō [*sub*+*eō*], go underneath; assume, take on
tardus, -a, -um, slow, lingering
tristis, -e, sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
tussis, tussis, -ium, f., cough
ūsque (adv.), continuously; all the way
Varius, -ī, m., Varlus
venēnum, -ī, n., poison
versus, -ūs, m., line of poetry, verse
Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta, goddess of the hearth
Viscus, -ī, m., Viscus
vītō (1), avoid

1. The final syllable here scans long: *subiīt*.2. *salvōst* = *salvō est*.3. *cōficiō*, here, do in, kill

4. The Sabines were known for occult practices.

5. **quandō . . . cumque**, tmesis6. **ad Vestae** = *ad Vestae templum*

praeterita, et casu tunc respondere vadato¹
debebat; quod ni fecisset,² perdere² litem.
"Si me amas," inquit "paulum³ hic⁴ ades."⁵ "Inteream, si
aut valeo stare⁶ aut novi civilia iura;
et propero quo scis." "Dubius sum, quid faciam," inquit, 40
"tene relinquam an rem." "Me, sodes." "Non faciam" ille,
et praecedere coepit; ego, ut contendere durumst⁷
cum victore," sequor. "Maecenas quomodo tecum?"
Hinc repetit; "paucorum hominum et mentis bene sanae;
nemo dexterius⁸ fortunast⁹ usus. Haberes 45
magnum adiutorem, posset qui ferre secundas,¹⁰
hunc hominem velles si tradere:¹¹ dispeream, ni
summosse omnes." "Non isto vivimus illic,
quo tu rere, modo; domus hac nec purior ullast¹²
nec magis his aliena malis; nil mi officit," inquam, 50
"ditior hic aut est quia doctior;¹³ est locus uni
cuique suus." "Magnum narras, vix credibile." "Atqui
sic habet."¹⁴ "Accendis, quare cupiam magis illi
proximus esse." "Velis tantummodo: quae tua virtus,

accendō, accendere, accendi, accēnsus, set
fire to, kindle; arouse, inflame
adiūtor, -ōris, *m.*, helper, assistant; supporting
actor
atqui (conj.), but, and yet
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus,
exert oneself, strive, contend
cupiō, cupere, cupivī or cupiī, cupitus, want,
desire
dispereō [*dis+pereō*], perish
dives, dīvitīs, rich, wealthy; *comp.* **dī(vi)tior**,
dī(vi)tius
fortūna, -ae, f., fortune, chance
inquam (defective verb), I say; **inquit**, he says
intereō [*inter+eō*], perish, be destroyed
līs, lītīs, f., strife, dispute; lawsuit
Maecēnās, -ātīs, *m.*, Maecenas, adviser to
Augustus and patron of Vergil and Horace

1. The plaintiff accepted a surety (bond money) from the defendant to guarantee the defendant's appearance in court.
2. **fēcisset** and **perdere** are both used in implied indirect statement. *Fēcisset* represents the protasis of a future more vivid conditional sentence with an emphatic protasis; *perdere* represents the apodosis: (*dīxit*) *nī fēcisset*, (*sē*) *perdere* . . . The direct form would have been "*Quod nī fēcerō, perdō lītem.*" The present indicative in the apodosis is used colloquially for added vividness.
3. **paulum**, *here*, adv., a little
4. **hic**, *here*, in the place just mentioned, i.e., in court

mī = mihi
nī = nisi
officiō [*ob+faciō*], get in the way of
praeteritus, -a, -um, (having) passed by, past
pūrus, -a, -um, clean, pure, uncontaminated
reor, rērī, ratus sum, think, judge, imagine
repetō [*re+petō*], seek again; repeat; resume
asking
secundus, -a, -um, following, second
sōdēs = sī audēs (colloquially), please
summōveō [*sub+moveō*], remove; banish
tantummodo (adv.), only, merely, just
vador (1), bind over by bail, accept (one's)
surety
valeō, valēre, valui, valitus, be strong, be able;
fare well

5. **ades**, 2nd sing. present imperative of **adsum**; **adsum**, *here*, give support (by one's presence in court)
6. **stō here**, stand as an advocate in court
7. **dūrumst** = *dūrum est*
8. **dexter**, *here*, skillful
9. **fortūnāst** = *fortūnā est*
10. **ferre secundās** (sc., *partēs*), play the second part (Actors playing secondary parts supported the chief actors.)
11. **trādō**, *here*, introduce
12. **ullast** = *ulla est*
13. **doctus, -a, -um**, learned; skilled, clever
14. **sic habēre**, be so, be this way

expugnabis; et est qui vinci possit, eoque¹ 55
 difficiles aditus primos habet." "Haud mihi dero:
 muneribus servos corrumpam; non, hodie si
 exclusus fuerō,² desistam; tempora quaeram,
 occurram in trivis, deducam. Nil sine magno
 vita labore dedit mortalibus." Haec dum ait, ecce
 60 Fuscus Aristius occurrit, mihi carus, et illum
 qui pulchre³ nosset. Consistimus. "Unde venis?" et
 "quo tendis?" rogit et respondet. Vellere coepi
 et pressare manu lentissima bracchia, nutans,
 distorquens oculos, ut me eriperet. Male salsus
 65 ridens dissimulare;⁴ meum iecur urere⁴ bilis.
 "Certe nescio quid secreto velle loqui te
 aiebas mecum." "Memini bene, sed meliore
 tempore dicam; hodie tricesima sabbata: vin tu
 70 curtis Iudaeis oppedere?" "Nulla mihi" inquam
 "relligiost."⁵ "At mi: sum paulo infirmior, unus
 multorum. Ignoscet; alias⁶ loquar." Huncine⁷ solem

aditus, -ūs, m. , approach at (conj.), but	infirmus, -a, -um , weak inquam (defective verb), I say
bilis, bilis, -ium, f. , gall, bile; anger	Iūdaeus, -a, -um , Jewish
bracchium, -ī, n. , arm, forearm	lentus, -a, -um , pliant; slow, indifferent
cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstiti, — , stop, pause, halt	mī = mihi
corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpi, corruptus , corrupt, entice; bribe	mortālis, -e , mortal
curtus, -a, -um , circumcised	mūnus, mūneris, n. , service, tribute; gift
dēducō [dē + dūcō] , lead down; accompany	nescio quis, nescio quid (indef. pron.), someone, something
dērō = dēerō	nūtō (1), nod
dissimulō (1), disguise, conceal; pretend not to notice, ignore	occurrō [ob + currō] , run up (to), run to meet
distorqueō, distorquēre, distorsi, distortus , twist in different directions, roll	oppēdō, oppēdere, —, — , fart at; mock, insult
ecce (interj.), lo! behold!	relligiō = <i>relligiō</i>
ēripō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus , tear away, snatch away, take away	sabbata, -ōrum, n. pl. , the Jewish sabbath
exclūdō, exclūdere, exclūsi, exclūsus , exclude, shut out	salsus, -a, -um , salty; witty
expūgnō (1), break down, overcome; take by storm	sēcrētō (adv.), secretly, in private
Fuscus Aristius, -ī, m. , Fuscus Aristius	tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus , exert oneself; aim, head for
haud (adv.), not at all, by no means	tricēsimus, -a, -um , thirtieth
hodiē (adv.), today	trivium, -ī, n. , crossroads, intersection
iecur, iecoris, n. , liver	ūrō, ūrere, ūssi, ustus , burn, scorch, inflame, consume; sting
	vellō, vellere, velli or vulsi, vulsus , pluck, pull
	vin = vīsne

1. **eō**, for that reason, therefore5. **relligiōst** = *relligiō est*2. **exclūsus fuerō** = *exclūsus erō*6. **aliās, here**, adv., at another time3. **pulchrē**, *here*, thoroughly, very well7. **huncine**, archaic and emphatic form of4. **dissimulāre**, *ūrere*, historical infinitives

huncine

tam nigrum surrexe¹ mihi! Fugit improbus ac me
 sub cultro linquit. Casu venit obvius illi
 adversarius et "quo tu, turpissime?" magna
 inclamat voce, et "licet antestari?" Ego vero
 oppono auriculam.² Rapit in ius; clamor utrimque,
 undique concursus. Sic me servavit Apollo.

75

adversārius, -ī, *m.*, antagonist, opponent (in a court case)
antestor (1), call as a witness
Apollō, Apollinis, *m.*, Apollo, god of divination, poetry, music, and medicine
auricula, -ae, *f.*, (little) ear
concurrus, -ūs, *m.*, gathering, throng
culte^r, cultri, *m.*, knife
improbus, -a, -um, wicked, immoral; shameless, wanton
inclāmō (1), shout out, cry aloud

linquō, linquere, liqui, —, leave (behind), abandon
niger, nigra, nigrum, dark, black; unlucky
obvius, -a, -um, in the way, so as to meet
oppōnō [*ob+pōnō*], offer, touch
rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptus, seize, carry off, snatch
surgō, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctus, rise, rise up
undique (adv.), from all sides, on all sides
utrimque (adv.), from both sides, on both sides

1. **surrēxe** (= *surrēxisse*) is an infinitive used in an exclamation. Translate: "O, for this sun so black to have risen..."

2. **oppōnere auriculam**, touch the ear (in agreeing to be a witness)

Propertius

Sextus Propertius (c. 51 B.C.—?), born in Umbria, was one of the lucky young writers who, after moving to Rome, came under the patronage of Maecenas, a wealthy endower of the arts who had subsidized the work of such famous poets as Horace. Deeply entrenched in the tradition of the Alexandrian School of Greece, Propertius viewed himself as a Roman Callimachus, which accounts, in part, for the frequency of mythological references in his poems and the display of learning which permeates the whole. All the poetic compositions which we have are written in elegiac couplets, the normal scheme for amatory poetry in the Augustan period. As an elegiac poet, Propertius positioned himself in the tradition established in Roman literature by Catullus and the *poëtae novi* who, in a sense, revived Callimachus' perspective that a big book was a big evil [$\muέγα βιβλίον μέγα κακόν$ (mega biblion mega kakon)]. The small, more personal poem, studded with references to myth and legend, was meant to supplant the more sedate and grandiose epic.

The greater number of his poems concern his love affair with one Cynthia, in reality named Hostia, the daughter of a man of letters and a poet in his own right. As a courtesan in Rome, she had an establishment of considerable size and her reputation was certainly widespread. The rocky and uneven course of this affair caused much anguish for Propertius. Each partner was apparently moody, uncertain, jealous and yet possessive, characteristics which were explosive for both. Most of the erotic poems are marked by sadness, frustration and anxiety, by traces of the poet's own fears, masochism, and neurosis, and occasionally by his hostility. The introductory poem of the first book, inspired by Propertius' desire to end a year-long separation, illustrates many of these features. The twenty-sixth poem of the second book is a masterful account of a dream in which the poet's hostilities and ambivalent feelings towards his love are unmasked.

Propertius I.1

Cynthia prima suis miserum me cepit ocellis,
contactum nullis ante cupidinibus.

Tum mihi constantis deiecit lumina¹ fastus
et caput impositis pressit Amor pedibus,
donec me docuit castas odisse puellas
improbus, et nullo vivere consilio.

Et mihi iam toto furor hic non deficit anno,
cum tamen adversos cogor habere deos.

Milanion nullos fugiendo, Tulle, labores
saevitiam durae contudit Iasidos.

Nam modo Partheniis amens errabat in antris,
ibat et hirsutas ille videre² feras;
ille etiam Hylaei percussus verbere rami
saucius Arcadiis rupibus ingemuit.

Ergo velocem potuit domuisse puellam:
tantum in amore preces et benefacta valent.

āmēns, amentis, mad, insane
antrum, -i, n., cave, cavern, grotto
Arcadius, -a, -um, Arcadian
caput, capitīs, n., head
castus, -a, -um, chaste
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, drive together; compel
cōstāns, -antis, firm, steady, invariable, constant
contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus, touch; pollute, defile
contundō, contundere, contudi, contūsus, pound, crush; subdue
cupidō, cupidinis, f., desire, passion
Cynthia, -ae, f., Cynthia, Propertius' poetic name for his beloved
dēficiō [dē+faciō], fail, be lacking; weaken, fade, run out
dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēlectus, hurl down, cast down
domō, domāre, domui, domitus, tame, subdued, overcome
ergō (adv.), therefore
fastus, -ūs, m., pride, arrogance
fera, -ae, f., wild animal

furor, -ōris, m., madness
hirsūtus, -a, -um, hairy, shaggy
Hylaeus, -i, m., Hylaeus, a centaur
Iasis, Iasidos, f., the daughter of Iasius, i.e., Atalanta
improbus, -a, -um, wicked, immoral; shameless, wanton
ingemō, ingemere, ingemui, —, sigh, groan
labor, -ōris, m., work, exertion; trouble, effort
Milanion, -ōnis, m., Milanion, husband of Atalanta
ocellus, -i, m., (little) eye
Parthenius, -a, -um, Parthenian, referring to a mountain in Greece
percutiō, percutere, percussi, percussus, strike, pierce
prex, precis, f., prayer
rāmus, -i, m., branch; club
rūpēs, rūpis, f., cliff, crag
saucius, -a, -um, wounded
Tullus, -i, m., Tullus, addressee of the poem
valeō, valēre, valui, valitus, be able; have force, be effective
vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift, rapid
verber, verberis, n., lash, blow

1. **lūmina**, here and frequently in poetry, eyes

2. **vidēre**, here and frequently in poetry, an infinitive expressing purpose

In¹ me tardus Amor non ulla cogitat artes,
 nec meminit notas, ut prius, ire vias.
 At vos, deductae quibus est fallacia lunae
 et labor in magicis sacra piare foci, 20
 en agedum dominae mentem convertite nostrae,
 et facite² illa meo palleat ore magis!
 Tunc ego crediderim vobis et sidera et amnes
 posse Cytaeines ducere carminibus.
 Aut vos, qui sero lapsum revocatis, amici, 25
 quaerite non sani pectoris auxilia.
 Fortiter et ferrum saevos patiemur et ignes,
 sit modo libertas quae velit ira loqui.
 Ferte per extremas gentes et ferte per undas,
 qua³ non ulla meum femina norit iter: 30
 vos remanete, quibus facili deus annuit aure,
 sitis et in tuto semper amore pares.

In¹ me nostra Venus noctes exercet amaras,
 et nullo vacuuus tempore defit Amor.
 Hoc, moneo, vitate malum: sua quemque moretur 35
 cura, neque assueto mutet amore locum.
 Quod si quis monitis tardas adverterit aures,
 heu referet quanto verba dolore mea!

agedum (interj.), come on!
amārus, -a, -um, bitter
amnis, amnis, *-ium, m., river, torrent
annuō, annuere, annui, —, nod assent to, give approval
assuētus, -a, -um, accustomed, usual
at (conj.), but
auris, auris, -ium, f., ear
Cytaeinē, Cytaeinēs, f., daughter of Cytae (a city in Colchis); *here*, referring to Medea
dēdūcō {dē + dūcō}, lead down; bring down, draw down
dēfiō, dēfieri, —, be lacking, run out
domina, -ae, f., mistress
ēn (interj.), look! behold!
exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus, keep busy, occupy; exercise; harass, trouble
extrēmus, -a, -um, remotest, farthest, utmost

fallācia, -ae, f., fraud, deceit; trick, craft
focus, -i, m., fireplace, hearth; altar
heu (interj. of grief or pain), ah!, oh!, alas!
labor, -ōris, m., work, exertion; trouble, effort
magicus, -a, -um, magic
monitum, -i, n., warning; advice
palleō, pallēre, palluī, —, be pale
pār, paris, equal
piō (1), propitiate; perform
sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred
sacra, -ōrum, n. pl., sacred rites
sērō (adv.), late, too late
tardus, -a, -um, slow, lingering; dull, tardy
vacuus, -a, -um, empty; free, available; carefree, disengaged
Venus, Veneris, f., Venus, goddess of love
vītō (1), avoid

1. **in**, *here*, in the case of
 2. **facite**, sc., *ut*

3. **quā**, *here*, adv., where

Propertius I.3

5

10

15

Qualis Thesea iacuit cedente carina
 languida desertis Cnossia litoribus;
 qualis et accubuit primo Cepheia somno
 libera iam duris cotibus Andromede;
 nec minus assiduis Edonis fessa choreis
 qualis in herboso concidit Apidano:
 talis visa mihi mollem spirare quietem
 Cynthia non certis nixa caput manibus,
 ebria cum multo traherem vestigia Baccho,
 et quaterent sera nocte facem pueri.
 Hanc ego, nondum etiam sensus deperditus omnes,
 molliter impresso conor adire toro;
 et quamvis dupli correptum ardore iuberent
 hac¹ Amor hac¹ Liber, durus uterque deus,
 subiecto leviter positam temptare² lacerto

accumbō, accumbere, accubui, accubitus, lie down
Andromedē, -ae, f., Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus and Cassiope, rescued by Perseus from a sea monster
Āpidanus, -ī, m., the Apidanus, a river in Thessaly
ardor, -ōris, m., burning, passion, desire
assiduus, -a, -um, continuous, constant
Bacchus, -ī, m., Bacchus, god of wine; wine
carīna, -ae, f., keel, hull; ship
Cēphēius, -a, -um, descended from Cepheus, father of Andromeda
chorēa, -ae, f., dance
Cnōsius or Gnōsius, -a, -um, of or pertaining to Cnossus, ancient capital of Crete; **Cnōsia** = Ariadne, daughter of King Minos of Crete
concidō, concidere, concidi, —, fall down, collapse
corripō, corripere, corripui, correptus, attack suddenly, seize, overcome
cōs, cōtis, f., whetstone; rock, cliff, crag
Cynthia, -ae, f., Cynthia, Propertius' poetic name for his beloved
dēperdō [dē + perdō], lose, be deprived of
dēserō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertus, desert, abandon, forsake

duplex, duplicitis, double
ēbrius, -a, -um, drunk, intoxicated
Ēdōnis, Ēdōnidōs, f., Edonian woman, a worshipper of Bacchus
fax, facis, f., torch
fessus, -a, -um, weary, exhausted, worn out
herbōsus, -a, -um, grassy
iaceō, iacēre, iacui, —, lie
imprimō [in + premō] press (upon)
lacertus, -ī, m., (upper) arm
languidus, -a, -um, exhausted, faint, weary
leviter (adv.), lightly
Liber, Liberi, m., Bacchus (Free One)
nītor, nīti, nīxus or nīsus sum, rest upon, rely on (+abl.)
quatiō, quatere, —, **quassus**, shake, brandish
quiēs, quiētis, f., rest, repose
sērus, -a, -um, late, too late
spirō (1), breathe, breathe out; exhale
subiciō, subicere, subiēci, subiectus, place underneath
Thēsēus, -a, -um, of or relating to Theseus, hero of Attic legend, slayer of the Minotaur
→torus, -ī, m., couch, bed
vestigium, -ī, n., footprint, trace, track

1. **hāc**, here, adv., on this side

2. **temptō**, here, handle in an exploratory manner, feel, test; make an attempt or sexual assault on

20

25

30

luna moraturis sedula luminibus,

osculaque admota sumere et arma manu,
 non tamen ausus eram dominae turbare quietem,
 expertae¹ metuens iurgia saevitiae;
 sed sic intentis haerebam fixus ocellis,
 Argus ut ignotis² cornibus Inachidos.

Et modo solvebam nostra de fronte corollas
 ponebamque tuis, Cynthia, temporibus;³
 et modo gaudebam lapsos formare capillos;
 nunc furtiva cavis poma dabam manibus;
 omniaque ingrato largabar⁴ munera somno,

munera de prono saepe voluta sinu;
 et quotiens raro duxti⁵ suspiria motu,
 obstupui vano credulus auspicio,
 ne qua tibi insolitos portarent visa⁶ timores,
 neve quis invitam cogeret esse suam:

donec diversas praecurrentes luna fenestras,

Argus, -i, m., Argus, hundred-eyed monster sent by Juno to watch over Io and later killed by Mercury

capillus, -i, m., hair

cavus, -a, -um, hollow; cupped

cōgō, **cōgere**, **coēgi**, **coactus**, drive together; compel

cornū, -ūs, n., horn

corolla, -ae, f., small wreath of flowers, garland

crēdulus, -a, -um, trusting, credulous

Cynthia, -ae, f., Cynthia, Propertius' poetic name for his beloved

domina, -ae, f., mistress

fenestra, -ae, f., window

figō, **figere**, **fixi**, **fixus**, fix; transfix

formō (1), mold, fashion, shape

frōns, **frontis**, -ium, m. or f., forehead, brow

furtivus, -a, -um, stolen; secret, clandestine

gaudeō, **gaudēre**, **gāvisus sum**, be glad, be pleased, rejoice

haereō, **haerēre**, **haesi**, **haesus**, stick, cling; remain

Inachis, **Inachidos**, f., a female descendant of the river Inachus, often applied to Io

ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful; thankless; displeasing, unpleasant

insolitus, -a, -um, unaccustomed, unfamiliar, unusual

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling

iurgium, -i, n., quarrel; abuse

largior, **largiri**, **largitus sum**, give generously, bestow, lavish

→ **mūnus**, **mūneris**, n., service, tribute; gift
obstipēscō, **obstipēscere**, **obstipui or ob-**

stupui, —, be struck dumb, be stunned

ocellus, -i, m., (little) eye

→ **ōsculum**, -i, n., kiss

pōnum, -i, n., fruit

praecurrō [prae + currō], run in front, run past

prōnus, -a, -um, leaning or bending forward; sloping

quiēs, **quiētis**, f., rest, repose

rārus, -a, -um, loose-knit; widely spaced; infrequent, rare

sēdulus, -a, -um, attentive, painstaking, sedulous

sinus, -ūs, m., fold; bosom, breast

sūmō, **sūmēre**, **sūmpsi**, **sūmptus**, take, take up

suspirium, -i, n., sigh

turbō (1), confuse, trouble, disturb

vānus, -a, -um, empty; vain, meaningless

-ve (enclitic conj.), or

volvō, **volvere**, **volvi**, **volūtus**, roll

1. **expertus**, -a, -um, *here*, well-proved, tested

2. **ignōtus**, -a, -um, *here*, unknown, strange, unfamiliar

3. **tempora**, *here*, temples (of the head)

4. **largībar** = *largīēbar*

5. **dūxti** = *dūxistī*

6. **visum**, -i, n., appearance, vision, sight

compositos levibus radiis patefecit ocellos.
 Sic ait in molli fixa toro cubitum:
 "Tandem te nostro referens iniuria lecto 35
 alterius clausis expulit e foribus?
 Namque ubi longa meae consumpstī¹ tempora noctis,
 languidus exactis, ei mihi, sideribus?
 O utinam tales perducas, improbe, noctes,
 me miseram quales semper habere iubes! 40
 Nam modo purpureo fallebam stamine somnum,
 rursus et Orpheae carmine, fessa, lyrae;
 interdum leviter mecum deserta querebar
 externo longas saepe in amore moras:
 dum me iucundis lapsam sopor impulit alis. 45
 Illa fuit lacrimis ultima cura meis."

āla, -ae, f. , wing	fessus, -a, -um , weary, exhausted, worn out
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus , close	figō, figere, fixī, fixus , fix; place, plant
compōnō [<i>com+pōnō</i>], place together; make	foris, foris, -ium, f. , door
peaceful	languidus, -a, -um , exhausted, faint, weary
cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsi, cōn-	levis, -e , light
sūmptus , consume, squander, use up	lyra, -ae, f. , lyre
cubitum, -ī, n. , elbow	ocellus, -ī, m. , (little) eye
dēserō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertus , desert,	Orphēus, -a, -um , of or belonging to Orpheus
abandon, forsake	patefaciō, patefacere, patefēci, patefactus , lay
ei (interj., expressing anguish or distress), oh!	open, disclose; open
alas!	purpureus, -a, -um , dark red, crimson, purple
exigō, exigere, exēgī, exāctus , drive out	queror, queri, questus sum , complain, lament
externus, -a, -um , situated outside; not one's → rursus (adv.), again; in addition	
own	
fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus , deceive; cheat	sopor, -ōris, m. , sleep
	stāmen, -minis, n. , thread

1. **cōnsūmpsti**=*cōnsūmpsistī*

Propertius, II.26

Vidi te in somnis fracta, mea vita, carina
 Ionio lassas ducere rore manus,
 et quaecumque in¹ me fueras mentita² fateri,
 nec iam umore graves tollere posse comas,
 qualem purpureis agitatam fluctibus Hellen,
 aurea quam molli tergore vexit ovis
 quam timui, ne forte tuum mare nomen haberet,
 atque tua labens navita fleret aqua!
 Quae tum ego Neptuno, quae tum cum Castore fratri,
 quaeque tibi excepisti, iam dea, Leucothoe!
 At tu vix primas extollens gurgite palmas
 saepe meum nomen iam peritura vocas.
 Quod si forte tuos vidisset Glaucus ocellos,
 essem Ionii facta puella maris,
 et tibi ob invidiam Nereides increpitarent,
 candida Nesaei, caerula Cymothoe.
 Sed tibi subsidio delphinum currere vidi,
 qui, puto, Arioniam vexerat ante lyram
 iamque ego conabar summo me mittere saxo,
 cum mihi discussit talia visa metus.

5

10

15

20

Arionius, -a, -um, belonging to Arion, mythical
 musician and inventor of the dithyramb, who
 was saved from drowning by a dolphin
 at (conj.), but
caeruleus, -a, -um, sea-blue
candidus, -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant
carīna, -ae, f., keel, hull; ship
Castor, -oris, m., Castor, twin brother of Pollux;
 together patron deities of mariners
coma, -ae, f., hair (of the head); (pl.), locks, hair
Cymothoē, -ēs, f., Cymothoë, a Nereid
delphinus, -i, m., dolphin
discutiō, discutere, discussi, discussus, shat-
 ter; disperse, dispel
excipiō [ex+capiō], take out; utter (as an
 appeal)
extollō, extollere, —, —, raise up
fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētus, weep (for)
fluctus, -ūs, m., wave, billow
frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctus, break, shatter,
 crush
Glaucus, -i, m., Glaucus, a fisherman who was
 changed into a sea-god
gurges, gurgitis, m., whirlpool; sea
Hellē, -ēs, f., Helle, who fled from her step-
 mother Ino on a golden sheep, fell off, and
 drowned in the Hellespont, thus giving her
 name to the body of water (**Hellēn**=acc. sing.)

increpitō (1), reproach (+dat.)
Ionius, -a, -um, Ionian
lassus, -a, -um, weary, exhausted, worn out
Leucothoē, -ēs, f., Leucothoë, the name of Ino
 after she had been turned into a sea-deity
lyra, -ae, f., lyre
mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum, lie, tell a
 falsehood; invent
mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft
nāvita, -ae, m., sailor
Neptūnus, -i, m., Neptune, god of the sea
Nērēis, Nērēidis, f., daughter of sea-god Nereus;
 a Nereid, water-nymph (**Nērēides**=acc.pl.)
Nēsacē, -ēs, f., Nesaei, a Nereid
ocellus, -i, m., (little) eye
ovis, ovis, -iūm, m. or f., sheep
palma, -ae, f., palm (of the hand)
purpureus, -a, -um, dark red, crimson, purple
quicunque, quaecumque, quodcumque
 (indef. rel. pron. or adj.), whoever, whatever
rōs, rōris, m., dew; moisture; water
subsidiū, -i, n., aid, help, protection
tergus, tergoris, n., back
tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus, raise, lift up
ūmor, -ōris, m., moisture
vehō, vehere, vexi, vectus, carry, convey

1. *in, here*, against2. *fuerās mentita* = *erās mentita*3. *agitō, here*, toss4. *visum, -i, n.*, appearance, vision, sight

Ovid

Publius Ovidius Naso (43 B.C.–A.D. 17?) was born at Sulmo, 90 miles to the east of Rome, to an equestrian family. Educated both in Rome and in Athens, he abandoned early a public career for a poetic one when, in 16 B.C., he published the first edition of the *Amores*, a group of elegiac poems in the tradition of the love poetry of Catullus and Propertius. Over the next twenty years, Ovid's circle included the chief poets of the Roman world. He knew Horace, was friendly with Propertius and Tibullus, and was patronized by Messala. His career was perhaps the most prolific of any Roman writer, and he was the leading poet in Rome in A.D. 8 when he was banished by Augustus to the town of Tomis on the Black Sea, a community made famous by Ovid for its miserable climate and lack of culture. The cause of his banishment is uncertain, though Ovid himself attributes it to a *carmen* and an *error*, words that have received diverse interpretations. He continued to write in exile, producing among other works the *Epistulae ex Ponto* and the *Tristia*, from which most of our biographical information about Ovid derives. Despite his attempts to secure his homecoming through poetic appeals to important personages at Rome, Ovid died in exile.

Of the many works of Ovid that survive, the best known are the *Amores*; the *Ars Amatoria*, a mock didactic work; and his masterpiece, the *Metamorphoses*. In all of these works, Ovid's extraordinary erudition combines with his almost unparalleled imagination to produce a poetic style that is varied, complex, and allusive, yet strikingly facile. It employs a simplicity of syntax and word choice to produce a smoothness and immediate intelligibility that belies the complexity of the material. More so than even his predecessors, Ovid inextricably binds thematic considerations of genre, poetics, and the power of art with his interest in human nature, passion, and the gods. Perhaps because he came so late in the poetic tradition in which he wrote, Ovid's work displays an archness and playful detachment that often intrude at the most heightened emotional moments to direct the reader's attention away from the scene itself and towards the art—and artificer—that describes it. Nevertheless, as the stories of the *Metamorphoses* demonstrate, few poets are capable of isolating the crucial moment of an episode with Ovid's skill and lucidity. Ovid's variations in pace, color, and tone allow him to distinguish subtly each of the hundreds of tales, and his attention to visual detail has made him certainly the Roman poet who most influenced Renaissance art. His hexameter represents a refinement and simplification of Vergil's, replacing Vergilian loftiness with light versatility. The regularity of Ovid's metrical patterns forms the backdrop for constant word and sound play through which his thematic interests come to light.

The first selection that follows is the opening poem of the *Amores*, in which the poet gives a fanciful account of how Cupid compelled him to write elegiac love poetry rather than epic verse. In the second selection, also from the *Amores*, Ovid addresses a ring he is sending to his beloved, but soon imagines the consequences of becoming the ring itself. The third selection, Ovid's version of the Pygmalion story from the *Metamorphoses*, is particularly concerned with the complex effects of art on human desire.

Ovid, *Amores* I.1

Arma gravi numero¹ violentaque bella parabam
 edere, materia conveniente modis.²
 Par erat inferior versus; risisse Cupido
 dicitur atque unum surripuisse pedem.
 "Quis tibi, saeve puer, dedit hoc in³ carmina iuris? 5
 Pieridum vates, non tua turba sumus.
 Quid si praeripiāt flavae Venus arma Minervae,
 ventilet accensas flava Minerva faces?
 Quis probet in silvis Cererem regnare iugosis,
 lege pharetratae virginis arva coli? 10
 Crinibus insignem quis acuta cuspide Phoebum
 instruat, Aoniam Marte movente⁴ lyram?
 Sunt tibi magna, puer, nimiumque potentia regna:
 cur opus adfectas, ambitiose, novum?
 An,⁵ quod ubique, tuum est? Tua sunt Heliconia Tempe? 15
 Vix etiam Phoebo iam lyra tuta sua est?
 Cum bene surrexit versu nova pagina primo,
 attenuat nervos proximus ille meos.

accendō, accendere, accendi, accēnsus, set
 fire to, kindle; arouse, inflame
acūtus, -a, -um, sharp, pointed
adfectō (1), strive after, aspire to
ambitiōsus, -a, -um, vain, eager for honor
Aonius, -a, -um, Aonian, Boeotian
arvum, -i, n., arable land, field
attenuō (1), make thin, weaken, diminish
Cerēs, Cereris, f., Ceres, goddess of agriculture
colō, colere, colui, cultus, till, tend; cultivate
conveniō [con + veniō], suit, fit (+dat.)
crinis, crīnis, -ium, m., hair, lock
Cupidō, Cupidinis, m., Cupid
cuspis, cupidis, f., point; spear
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus, give out, put forth,
 produce, publish
fax, facis, f., torch
flāvus, -a, -um, golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
Helicōnius, -a, -um, Heliconian, of Mt. Helicon
inferior, -ius (comparative adj.), lower
insignis, -e, marked, distinguished
instruō, instruere, instrūxi, instrūctus,
 furnish, equip
iugōsus, -a, -um, mountainous, hilly
lyra, -ae, f., lyre
māteria, -ae, f., (raw) material; (subject) matter
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom
 and arts

nervus, -i, m., sinew, nerve; bowstring; force,
 power
nimium (adv.), too, too much, excessively
pāgina, -ae, f., (written) page
pār, paris, equal
pharetrātus, -a, -um, equipped with a quiver
 (epithet of Diana)
Phoebus, -i, m., Phoebeus Apollo, god of
 divination, poetry, music, and medicine
Pieridēs, -um, f. pl., the Pierides, the Muses
potēns, -entis, powerful
praeripiō, praeripere, praeripuī, praereptus,
 snatch away, carry off
probō (1), approve
rēgnō (1), rule
silva, -ae, f., forest, woods
surgō, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctus, rise, rise up
surripiō, surripere, surripuī, surreptus,
 snatch away, steal
Tempē (indecl.), n. pl., Tempe, a valley in
 Thessaly
vātēs, vātis, m. or f., seer, prophet; poet, bard
ventilō (1), toss, swing, brandish
versus, -ūs, m., line of poetry, verse
virgō, virginis, f., maiden, virgin

1. *numerus, here*, meter4. *moveō, here*, wield, ply, strike (a musical instrument)2. *modus, here*, measure, meter5. *an, here*, or can it be that3. *in, here*, against

Nec mihi materia est numeris¹ levioribus apta,
 aut puer aut longas compta puella comas." 20
 Questus eram, pharetra cum protinus ille soluta
 legit in² exitium spicula facta meum
 lunavitque genu sinuosum fortiter arcum
 "quod"que "canas, vates, accipe" dixit "opus."
 Me miserum! Certas habuit puer ille sagittas: 25
 uror, et in vacuo pectore regnat Amor.
 Sex mihi surgat opus numeris,¹ in quinque residat;
 ferrea cum vestris bella valete modis.³
 Cingere litorea flarentia tempora⁴ myrto,
 Musa per undenos emodulanda pedes. 30

aptus, -a, -um, suitable**arcus, -ūs, m.**, bow**coma, -ae, f.**, hair (of the head); (pl.), locks, hair
comptus, -a, -um, adorned, ornamented**ēmodulor** (1), sing, celebrate**exitium, -i, n.**, destruction, ruin**ferreus, -a, -um**, made of iron; cruel**flāvēns, -entis**, yellow, golden**genū, -ūs, n.**, knee**levis, -e**, light, not weighed down; slight, trivial**litoreus, -a, -um**, of the shore**lūnō** (1), bend, curve, crook**māteria, -ae, f.**, (raw) material; (subject) matter**Mūsa, -ae, f.**, Muse, one of the nine Muses**myrtus, -i, f.**, myrtle**pharetra, -ae, f.**, quiver**prōtinus** (adv.), forthwith, immediately**queror, querī, questus sum**, complain, lament**rēgnō** (1), rule**residō, residere, resēdī**, —, settle down, sink**sagitta, -ae, f.**, arrow**sex** (indecl. numerical adj.), six**sinuōsus, -a, -um**, curved, bent**spīculum, -i, n.**, dart, arrow**surgō, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctus**, rise, rise up**undēni, -ae, -a**, eleven**ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus**, burn, scorch, inflame,
consume; sting**vacuus, -a, -um**, empty; free, available; carefree,
disengaged**valeō, valēre, valuī, valitus**, be strong, be able;
fare well**vātēs, vātis, m. or f.**, seer, prophet; poet, bard1. **numeris**, here, meter2. **in**, here, for the purpose of3. **modus**, here, measure, meter4. **tempora**, here, temples (of the head)

Ovid, *Amores* II.15

Anule, formosae digitum vincture puellae,
 in quo censendum nil nisi dantis amor,
 munus eas gratum; te laeta mente receptum
 protinus articulis induat illa suis;
 tam bene convenias quam mecum convenit illi,
 et digitum iusto commodus orbe teras.

5

Felix a domina tractaberis, anule, nostra:
 invideo donis iam miser ipse meis.

O utinam fieri subito mea munera possem
 artibus Aeaea Carpathiive senis!

10

Tunc ego te cupiam, domina, et tetigisse papillas
 et laevam tunicis inseruisse manum:
 elabar digito quamvis¹ angustus et haerens
 inque sinum mira laxus ab arte cadam.

Idem² ego, ut arcana possim signare tabellas
 neve tenax ceram siccaque gemma trahat,
 umida formosae tangam prius ora puellae;
 tantum ne signem scripta dolenda mihi.

15

Aeaeus, -a, -um, belonging to Aeaea in Colchis,
 pertaining to Circe
angustus, -a, -um, narrow, tight, close-fitting
ānulus, -i, m., ring
arcānus, -a, -um, secret
articulus, -i, m., knuckle; (pl.) fingers
Carpathius, -a, -um, of Carpathia, an island in
 the Aegean, referring to Proteus
cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, think, deem;
 value
cēra, -ae, f., wax
commodus, -a, -um, affable, gentle, easy
conveniō [con + veniō], suit, fit (+ dat.)
 convenient (impersonal), it is fitting
cupiō, cupere, cupiūl or cupili, cupitus, want,
 desire
digitus, -i, m., finger
doleō, dolēre, dolui, —, feel pain, suffer;
 grieve over
domina, -ae, f., mistress
elabor [ē + lābor], slip from, slip off
gemma, -ae, f., gem, jewel
haereō, haerēre, haesi, haesus, stick, cling,
 hold fast
induō, induere, indui, indūtus, put on
inserō, inserere, inserui, insertus, put in,
 insert

invideō [in + videō], look askance at; begrudge,
 envy
iūstus, -a, -um, just, fair; fitting
laevus, -a, -um, left
laxus, -a, -um, loose, free
mīrus, -a, -um, remarkable, surprising, strange
mūnus, mūneris, n., service, tribute; gift
papilla, -ae, f., breast
prōtinus (adv.), forthwith, immediately
siccus, -a, -um, dry
signō (1), seal, affix a seal to
sinus, -ūs, m., fold; bosom
subitō (adv.), suddenly
tabella, -ae, f., small board; (wax writing) tablet
tangō, tangere, tetigi, tāctus, touch
tenax, tenācis, holding fast; tenacious, clinging
terō, terere, trīvī, trītus, rub, wear down, wear
 away
tractō (1), touch, handle, mould
trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus, draw, drag;
 attract
tunica, -ae, f., Roman undergarment, tunic
ūmidus, -a, -um, moist
-ve (enclitic conj.), or
vinciō, vincere, vīnxī, vinctus, bind, tie;
 surround, encircle

1. **quamvis**, here, adv., however much, very
 much, ever so

2. **Idem**, here, used with the emphatic pronoun
ego, also, the same

Si dabor ut condar loculis, exire negabo
adstringens digitos orbe minore tuos. 20

Non ego dedecori tibi sim, mea vita, futurus,
quodve tener digitus ferre recuset onus.

Me gere cum calidis perfundes imbris artus,
damnaque sub gemma perfer euntis aquae.

Sed, puto,¹ te nuda mea membra libidine surgent, 25
et peragam partes anulus ille viri.

Inrita quid voveo? Parvum proficiscere munus:
illa datam tecum sentiat esse fidem.

adstringō, adstringere, adstrīnxī, adstrictus,
bind up, tie fast; check, confine
ānulus, -ī, m., ring
artus, -ūs, m., limb; joint
calidus, -a, -um, warm
condō, condere, condidī, conditus, found,
build; hide
dāmnum, -i, n., injury, harm, loss
dēdecus, dēdecoris, n., shame, disgrace
digitus, -i, m., finger
gemma, -ae, f., gem, jewel
imber, imbris, m., rain; water
inritus, -a, -um, useless, vain
libidō, libidinis, f., desire, pleasure, passion,
lust

loculī, -ōrum, m. pl., receptacle with compartments, casket; satchel
membrum, -i, n., limb
mūnus, mūneris, n., service, tribute; gift
nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked, nude
onus, oneris, n., load, burden
perfundō, perfundere, perfūdī, perfūsus, pour over, spray, drench
recūsō (1), refuse
surgō, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctus, rise, rise up
tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, soft, delicate,
young
-ve (enclitic conj.), or
voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, pray for

1. The final *-o* in *putō* here scans short.

Ovid, *Metamorphoses* X.243-297

<p>Quas¹ quia Pygmalion aevum per crimen agentis viderat, offensus vitiis, quae plurima menti femineae natura dedit, sine coniuge caelebs vivebat thalamique diu consorte carebat.</p> <p>Interea niveum mira feliciter arte sculpsit ebur formamque dedit, qua² femina nasci nulla potest, operisque sui concepit amorem.</p> <p>Virginis est verae facies, quam vivere credas et, si non obstet reverentia, velle moveri: ars adeo latet arte sua. Miratur et haurit pectore Pygmalion simulati corporis ignes.³</p> <p>Saepe manus operi temptantes admovet, an sit corpus, an illud ebur, nec adhuc⁴ ebur esse fatetur.</p> <p>Oscula dat reddique putat loquiturque tenetque et credit tactis digitos insidere membris et metuit, pressos veniat ne livor in artus, et modo blanditias adhibet, modo grata puellis munera fert illi conchas teretesque lapillos et parvas volucres et flores mille colorum</p>	245
	250
	255
	260

adhibeō [*ad+habeō*], hold out, stretch out;
apply; offer
aevum, -ī, *n.*, lifetime; life
artūs, artuum, *m. pl.*, joints; limbs
blanditia, -ae, f., flattery, allurement
caelebs, caelibis, unmarried
color, -oris, m., color
concha, -ae, f., conch shell
concipiō [*con+cipiō*], take hold of; conceive,
imagine
cōnsors, cōsortis, -ium, m. or f., sharer,
partner
crīmen, -minis, n., charge; crime
→**digitus, -i, m.**, finger
ebur, eboris, n., ivory
flōs, flōris, m., flower, blossom
hauriō, haurire, hausī, haustus, drink up,
consume
insidō, insidere, insēdi, insessus, settle on,
adhere to, sink in (+dat.)
intereā (adv.), meanwhile
lapillus, -i, m., small stone, pebble

lateō, latēre, latui, —, lurk, be concealed, lie
 hidden
livor, -ōris, m., bruise
membrum, -ī, n., limb
mille (indecl. numerical adj.), a thousand
mīrus, -a, -um, remarkable, surprising, strange
niveus, -a, -um, snowy, snow-white
offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus, injure,
 offend
Pygmalion, -ōnis or -ōnos, m., Pygmalion, a
 king of Cyprus
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus, give back,
 return; render
reverentia, -ae, f., respect, awe
sculpō, sculpere, sculpsī, sculptus, carve,
 fashion
simulō (1), copy, represent; feign, pretend
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, touch
teres, teretis, smooth, polished
thalamus, -ī, m., (marriage) chamber
volucris, volucris, -ium or -um, f., bird

1. The antecedent is a group of women in Cyprus who so aroused the anger of Venus by their crimes that she turned them into stone.

their names that

3. **ignēs**, here, gleam, radiance; fire of love, passion

4. **adhūc**, here, still

liliaque¹ pictasque pilas et ab arbore lapsas
 Heliadum lacrimas; ornat quoque vestibus artus:
 dat digitis gemmas, dat longa monilia collo;
 aure leves bacae, redimicula pectore pendent: 265
 cuncta decent;² nec nuda minus formosa videtur.
 Conlocat hanc stratis concha Sidonide tinctis
 appellatque tori sociam adclinataque colla
 mollibus in plumis tamquam sensura reponit.
 Festa dies Veneris tota celeberrima Cypro 270
 venerat, et pandis inductae cornibus aurum
 conciderant ictae nivea cervice iuvencae,
 turaque fumabant, cum munere functus ad³ aras
 constituit et timide "si, di, dare cuncta potestis,
 sit coniunx, opto," non ausus "eburnea virgo" 275
 dicere Pygmalion "similis mea" dixit "eburnae."
 Sensit, ut ipsa suis aderat Venus aurea festis,
 vota quid illa velint, et, amici numinis omen,

adclīnō (1), lean on, lean against
appellō (1), name, call
arbor, -oris, f., tree
artūs, artuum, m. pl., joints; limbs
auris, auris, -ium, f., ear
bāca, -ae, f., berry; pearl
celeber, celebris, celebre, much-visited; famous
cervīx, cervīcis, f., neck
collum, -ī, n., neck
concha, -ae, f., conch shell
concidō, concidere, concidī, —, fall down, collapse; fall lifeless, die
conlocō (1), place
cōnsistō, cōsistere, cōnstīti, —, stop, pause, halt
cornū, -ūs, n., horn
Cyprus, -ī, f., Cyprus
decet, decēre, decuit (impersonal), it is seemly, it is becoming
eburneus, -a, -um, ivory, of ivory
eburnus, -a, -um, ivory, of ivory
festum, -ī, n., festival, feast
festus, -a, -um, festive, festal, merry
fūmō, fūmāre, fūmāvī, —, smoke, fume
fungor, fungī, fūnc̄tus sum, perform, administer; complete (+abl.)
gemma, -ae, f., gem, jewel
Hēliadēs, -um, f. pl., the Heliades, daughters of Helios, whose tears for their brother Phaethon were turned into amber

īciō or īcō, īcere, īcī, ictus, strike, hit
indūcō [in + dūcō], lead in; spread over, cover
iuvēnca, -ae, f., heifer, cow
levis, -e, light
līlium, -ī, n., lily
monīle, monīlis, -ium, n., necklace
nīveus, -a, -um, snowy, snow-white
nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked, nude
ōmen, ōminis, n., sign, omen
ornō (1), adorn, decorate
pandus, -a, -um, bent, curved
pendēō, pendēre, pependī, —, hang (down), be suspended
pictus, -a, -um, painted, of various colors
pila, -ae, f., ball
plūma, -ae, f., feather, plume
Pygmaliōn, -ōnis or -ōnos, m., Pygmalion, a king of Cyprus
redimiculum, -ī, n., necklace, pendant
Sidōnis, Sidōnidis, of Sidon, Sidonian, Phoenician
strātum, -ī, n., covering, spread
timidus, -a, -um, fearful
tingō or tinguō, tingere or tinguere, tīnxi, tintus, wet, plunge; dye, color
tūs, tūris, n., incense, frankincense
vestis, vestis, -ium, f., clothing, garment
vōtum, -ī, n., pledge, prayer, vow

1. The syllable **-que** here scans *long*.
 2. Although **decet** is an impersonal verb, it here appears in the 3rd personal plural with an

expressed subject
 3. **ad**, here, at

flamma ter accensa est apicemque per aera duxit.
 Ut rediit, simulacra suae petit ille puellae 280
 incumbensque toro dedit oscula: visa tepere est;
 admovet os iterum, manibus quoque pectora temptat:
 temptatum mollescit ebur positoque rigore
 subsidit digitis ceditque, ut Hymettia sole
 cera remollescit tractataque pollice multas 285
 flectitur in facies ipsoque fit utilis usu.
 Dum stupet et dubie gaudet fallique veretur,
 rursus amans rursusque manu sua vota retractat;
 corpus erat: saliunt temptatae pollice venae.
 Tum vero Paphius plenissima concipit heros 290
 verba, quibus Veneri grates agat,¹ oraque tandem
 ore suo non falsa premit dataque oscula virgo
 sensit et erubuit timidumque ad lumina² lumen²
 attollens pariter cum caelo vidi amantem.
 Coniugio, quod fecit, adest dea, iamque coactis 295
 cornibus in plenum noviens lunaribus orbem
 illa Paphon genuit, de qua tenet insula nomen.

accendō, accendere, accendi, accēnsus, set fire to, kindle; arouse, inflame
āēr, āeris, m. air (*āera*=acc. sing.)
apex, apicis, m. peak, top, tip
attollō, attollere, —, —, lift, raise
cēra, -ae, f. wax
cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, coāctus, drive together, bring together
concipiō [*con+capiō*], take hold of; conceive, imagine
coniugium, -i, n. marriage
cornū, -ūs, n. horn
ebur, eboris, n. ivory
ērubēscō, ērubēscere, ērubui, —, grow red, blush
fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus, deceive
flectō, flectere, flexi, flexus, bend, turn; shape
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, be glad, be pleased, rejoice
gignō, gignere, genui, genitus, produce, give birth to
grātēs, -ium, f. pl., thanks
hērōs, hērois, m., hero
Hymettius, -a, -um, of or from Hymettus (near Athens)

incumbō, incumbere, incubui, incubitus, lie down on, settle on, rest upon
iterum (adv.), again
lūnāris, -e, lunar, of the moon
noviēns (adv.), nine times
Paphius, -a, -um, of Paphos, a city on Cyprus
Paphos, -i, m. or f., Paphos, child of Pygmalion (*Paphon*=acc. sing.)
plēnus, -a, -um, full
pollex, pollicis, m., thumb
retractō (1), touch again, handle again
rigor, -ōris, m., stiffness
saliō, salire, salui, saltus, leap, jump
simulācrum, -i, n., likeness, image, statue
stupeō, stupēre, stupui, —, be stunned, be paralyzed, be astounded
subsidō, subsidere, subsedī, —, subside, give way
tepeō, tepēre, —, —, be warm
ter (adv.), three times, thrice
timidus, -a, -um, fearful
tractō (1), touch, handle, mould
vēna, -ae, f., vein
vōtum, -i, n., pledge, prayer, vow

1. **grātēs agere**, thank, give thanks to (+dat.)

2. **lūmina**, frequently in poetry and perhaps here, eyes; **lūmen**, *here*, eye; glance

Part V

Horace:
Selected Poems

Horace: The Odes

The greatest achievement of Horace and one of the greatest masterpieces to come from Roman antiquity is his collection of odes (*Carmina*). These appear in four books, the first three of which were published together, to be followed about ten years later by the fourth. The odes are remarkable for their technical perfection, for the depth of feeling which informs them, and for the verbal virtuosity which, many would agree, has been unequaled in western literature.

The lyric movement initiated by Catullus and continued and perfected by Horace was modeled largely on the meters and idiom of the Greek lyric poets of the seventh century B.C., although some influences are also felt from the Alexandrian period. Although Catullus had dabbled in lyric rhythms before (but not nearly so extensively), Horace claimed that he was the first to introduce to the Latin language Aeolic measures, that is, the rhythms which derive from those poets who wrote in Aeolia in the seventh century B.C.:

. . .
princeps Aeolium carmen ad Italos
deduxisse modos.¹

(Carmina, III.30.13-14)

Aeolius, -a, -um, Aeolic, Aeolian, of Aeolia (a Greek region of northwest Asia Minor, supposed birthplace of Greek lyric poetry)
dēdūcō [dē + dūcō], lead down; introduce, convert, adapt
Italus, -a, -um, Italian

1. **modus**, here, measure, meter; verse

Despite Catullus' earlier contributions to lyric poetry, in a sense Horace is justified in making his statement, but not only in terms of metrical diversity. Catullus, unlike Horace, did not adapt Greek measures specifically to Roman themes. He used them to express, by and large, more personal thoughts. Horace, on the other hand, is thoroughly Roman in theme and attitude, as can be seen not only in the poems which are politically oriented and so openly extol Rome and the Augustan achievement, but also in those on more personal or erotic themes, frequently informed by viewpoints which are in sharp contradistinction to those in Greek. For example, a distinct tone of subjective melancholia emerges in his compositions on the brevity of life which, although the general theme is derived from the Greek antecedents, strikes a unique note in western literature up to his time, a note which is quite obviously Roman and not Greek.

The rhythmical diversity found in the odes makes possible a very broad range of theme and treatment. Some of the odes are based on variations on dactylic, iambic, and trochaic rhythms, as, for example, the spring poems (I.4 and IV.7). [See *An Introduction to Lyric Meters*, pages 193-199, for discussion of these meters.] Others are more obviously Aeolic in inspiration because of the prominence of the choriamb (—~—) in the rhythmic scheme. Among these, the asclepiadean meters (because of the flexible use of the choriamb) are perhaps the lightest in movement, although they are capable of serious and heavy tones. They range from themes on love (I.5) and the caution which would-be lovers should exercise if they are to protect themselves from destructive grief and pain, to the beautiful apostrophe, tinged with an implicit recognition of the sadness of life,

addressed to the crystal-clear fountain of Bandusia (III.13), to a wild, frenetic piece of possession, intoxication, and inspiration (III.25), the only ode in the Horatian corpus which might qualify for the label *dithyramb* (an orgiastic hymn dedicated to the god Bacchus [Dionysus]).

Perhaps the most weighty and versatile of all Horatian meters is the Alcaic, modeled on the poems of Alcaeus of Lesbos. The strophe itself is filled with diversity and change, and so, even more than the other Horatian rhythms, admits of a broad spectrum of themes. In the selections which follow, we see the alcaic at work in a variety of settings. I.9, II.3, II.13, and II.14 deal variously with winter hospitality, the sad, melancholic recognition of the passing years (combined with cold resignation to the limitations of human existence), and the need for moderation in charting the course of one's life. In addition, we encounter the *carpe diem*¹ theme, stated or implied in so many of his poems, that is, an admonition to make the most of the present while health and prosperity abide. Political overtones appear in I.37, the famous Cleopatra ode in which the poet celebrates the death of the eastern potentate and the consequent deliverance of the Roman world. At the same time, the tone gives expression to Horace's tenderness of heart and his own compassion and respect for the heroic spirit and courage of this remarkable woman. Although no examples are included in this book, the alcaics appear at their most somber in the first six odes of the third book, the so-called Roman odes which expound the major Roman virtues and the new stability which Augustus had imposed on the state.

The sapphic strophe, derived from Sappho, the poetess of Lesbos (seventh century B.C.), generally exhibits less versatility, while its rhythms are somewhat lighter and predictable. The possibilities of this rhythm, when applied to erotic themes, are suggested by Catullus LI (p. 30), a fairly direct translation (except for the fourth strophe) of a Greek original by Sappho. In the selections which follow, the only poem in this rhythm is IV.2, a formal *recusatio*, "refusal," in which Horace declines an invitation to write a poem celebrating an Augustan military victory. He claims that only a Pindar² could attempt so magnificent and glorious a theme. However, in developing a comparison between himself and the great master of fifth century B.C. lyric and choral poetry, he implicitly shows himself equal to the task. The fact that the exceptional inventive power of the poem emerges despite the rather undiversified sapphic rhythm³ which the poet has chosen serves all the more to throw into relief Horace's own poetic gifts.

1. The term *carpe diem* comes from Odes I.11, lines 7-8 of which are reproduced in *An Introduction to Lyric Meters*, page 198.
2. See footnote *ad loc.*, page 227.

3. One of the features that characterize Pindar's lyric compositions is the diversity and unrestrained nature of the rhythmic structure.

An Introduction to Lyric Meters

A. A Reference List of Terms

acephalous, "headless," with the first element(s) removed
adonic, - - - x (= the last two feet of a dactylic hexameter)
anapaest, ---
bacchiac, --- (or, sometimes the final syllable is shortened: - - -)
catalectic, "chopped off, incomplete," with the final element(s) removed
choriamb, - - -
cretic, ---
dactyl, ---
dimeter, consisting of two metra; in the case of dactyls, one dactyl (foot) is considered to be a metron; in the case of iambs, trochees, anapaests, and other major feet, two feet are considered to make up a metron
glyconic, xx - - - - x
hemiepes, - - - - - (= a hypothetical dactylic hexameter up to the principal caesura in the third foot)
hexameter, consisting of six metra; see under *dimeter* above
hipponactean, xx - - - - x (= a glyconic lengthened, at the end, by one element)
iamb, --
iambic metron, x - - -
metron, a measure consisting of the smallest metrical unit allowed by convention in a given scheme (*i.e.*, one dactyl = one dactylic metron, or a dactylic monometer; two iambs = one iambic metron, or an iambic monometer; four iambs = two iambic metra, or an iambic dimeter, etc.; see under *dimeter* above)
pherecratean, xx - - - x (a glyconic shortened at the end by one element)
spondee, --
tetrameter, consisting of four metra; see under *dimeter* and *metron* above
trimeter, consisting of three metra; see under *dimeter* above
trochaic metron, - - - x
trochee, --

B. General Observations

The dactylic rhythm (see *An Introduction to Quantitative Rhythm*, pages 1-4) was among the first of the quantitative sequences to be developed in Latin.¹ This came about as a result of the Roman authors' desire to recreate the elevated and controlled flavor of the Greek epic. The other early quantitative rhythms were the iambic and the trochaic, especially natural to comedy and tragedy because of their proximity to the stress accent of normal word pronunciation. Such rhythms, by themselves, never achieved the high degree of artistic polish enjoyed by the dactylic hexameter, although they did serve as the bases for some lyric rhythms.

Because the dactyl is unnatural to the Latin language and because of its generic association with themes of epic scope, it became a serious and weighty

1. This statement is based on the hypothesis that the original Latin meter (Saturnian) was indeed accentually-based (see introduction to

Livius Andronicus). Although there are some scholars who dispute this, we shall assume that the hypothesis is true.

meter, removed, subdued, and grand. Some authors who wished to write on lighter subjects such as love chose another rhythm based on the hexameter but with some respite from the sustained elevation which the hexameter affords. At the beginning of his *Amōrēs*, Ovid tells us jokingly that he intended to write an epic, but Cupid laughed and stole a foot away from every other line:

Arma gravi numero violentaque bella parabam
edere, materia conveniente modis.¹
Par erat inferior versus—risisse Cupido
dicitur atque unum surripuisse pedem.

(Ovid, *Amōrēs*, I.1-14)

conveniō [*con+veniō*], suit, fit (+dat.)
Cupidō, **Cupidinis**, *m.*, Cupid, god of love, son of Venus
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus, give out, put forth, produce, publish
inferior, *-ius* (comparative adj.), lower
māteria, -ae, f., (raw) material; (subject) matter
surripiō, surripere, surripui, surreptus, snatch away, steal
versus, -ūs, m., line of poetry, verse
violentus, -a, -um, violent, tempestuous

1. **modus, -i**, here, measure, meter

The rhythm here, common to Latin love elegy, is dactylic,¹ but with a hexameter followed by a pentameter, one foot of which is split into two:²

- ≈ | - ≈ | - ≈ | - ≈ | - ≈ | - x
1 2 3 4 5 6

- ≈ | - ≈ | - || - ≈ | - ≈ | x
1 2 2½ 3½ 4½ 5

Such rhythms are not totally confined to erotic themes in Latin. The elegiac couplet occasionally reverts to one of its original uses in Greek, to the death elegy or poem commemorating someone who has died, as in Catullus' poem on the death of his brother:

- - | - - | - - | - - | - - | -
Multas per gentes et multa per aequora vectus
- - - | - - - | - - || - - - | - - - | -
advenio has miseras, frater, ad inferias,
- - - | - - - | - - - | - - - | - - - | -
ut te postremo donarem munere mortis
- - - | - - - | - - - | - - - | - - - | -
et mutam nequiquam adloquerer cinerem . . .

(Catullus CI.1-4)

Variations of dactylic rhythms came to be used by the lyric poets when they began to seek new meters appropriate to shorter lyric poems. Lyric meters based on dactylic sequences are called Archilochean. The seventh poem of Horace's fourth book of *Odes* is composed of couplets made up of a dactylic hexameter

1. In a dactylic meter, a *spondee* may replace a *dactyl* in virtually any foot. Such a foot is regularly represented: - ≈ | - ≈ | - ≈ | - ≈ | - ≈ | - x.

2. A pentameter is in fact made up of two hemiepes, the first of which allows spondaic substitution.

followed by a hemiepes:

- - | - - - | - - - | - - | - - - | - -
 Diffugere nives, redeunt iam gramina campis
 - - - | - - - | - - | - -
 arboribusque comae;
 - - | - - - | - - | - - | - - - | - -
 mutat terra vices et decrescentia ripas
 - - - | - - - | - -
 flumina praetereunt . . .

(Horace, *Odes*, IV.7.1-4)

While the associations of such poetry with epic are clear in a broad sense (what could be more majestic than the cycle of nature?), the variation is adequate to dissociate the poem from the strict elevation of the more august genre and to create a rhythm suitable to other themes as well (i.e., the implied contrast between the grandness of nature and the meanness of human life).

The variations are even more pronounced when a dactylic line is made to alternate with an iambic one, as in the following example:

- - - | - - - | - - - | - - | - - - | - -
 Nox erat et caelo fulgebat Luna sereno
 - - | - - | - - | - -
 Inter minora sidera . . .

(Horace, *Epodes*, 15.1-2)

The iambic dimeter following each dactylic hexameter creates a contrast or tension between elevated epic associations on the one hand and more natural, mundane sequences on the other. This tension is carried to even further lengths when, as in *Odes* I.4, the dactylic rhythm breaks into something else (in this case, trochees) even before the full hexameter has been completed. The shift occurs after the fourth foot of what otherwise would have been the hexameter line, where the four dactyls are followed by a trochaic rhythm.

The second line of each couplet is also iambic (trimeter catalectic). The metrical variation is especially appropriate to a poem which contrasts the grandeur and constancy of the cycle of nature with the commonness and ephemeral quality of the life of man:

- - - | - - - | - - | - - - | - - | - - | - -
 Solvitur acris hiems grata vice veris et Favoni,
 - - - | - - - | - - - | - - | - - | - - | - -
 trahuntque siccas machinae carinas . . .

(Horace, *Odes*, I.4.1-2)

Yet the real excursions into lyricism were based on the Greek rhythms of Sappho and Alcaeus, Aeolian poets of the seventh century B.C. These rhythms are marked by great diversity and variation, but the nucleus in all of them is the choriamb (---). This is obvious in the scansion of the following lines, all of which are basically Aeolic, yet decidedly different. The technical names given by convention to each rhythm are included.

Phalaean Hendecasyllable

Adeste hendecasyllabi quot estis
 omnes undique, quotquot estis, omnes.

(Catullus, XLII, 1-2)

Lesser Asclepiad

Maecenas atavis edite regibus,
ōset praesidium et dulce decus meum . . .

({ indicates *hiatus*) (Horace, *Odes*, I.1.1-2)***Greater Asclepiad***

Tu ne quaesieris - scire nefas - quem mihi, quem tibi
 finem di dederint, Leuconoe, nec Babylonios
 temptaris numeros . . .

(Horace, *Odes*, I.11.1-3)***Sapphic Strophe***

Ille mi par esse deo videtur,
 ille, si fas est, superare divos
 qui sedens adversus identidem te
 spectat et audit . . .

(Catullus, LI, 1-4)

Alcaic Strophe

Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede libero
 pulsanda tellus, nunc Saliaribus
 ornare pulvinar deorum
 tempus erat dapibus, sodales . . .

(Horace, *Odes*, I.37.1-4)

These examples, far from exhaustive, clearly show that the variation derives (1) from expansion of the choriamb into two or more choriams or, sometimes, a dactylic flow (as in the fourth line of the alcaic strophe; see under C below), and (2) from placing several kinds of sequences before or after the central nucleus. Sometimes, as in the alcaic strophe, Aeolic lines appear in the same stanza along with iambic ones — the third line of the alcaic strophe, for instance, is iambic.

The technical names for the Aeolic sequences (some are listed in sections A and C for reference) need not be memorized. What matters is that readers respond to the choriamb as the symbol of Aeolic lyricism, and that they be aware of the basic distinctions between some of the rhythms and strophes. For example, the sapphic stanza (strophe) differs markedly from the alcaic in its greater control and repetitive quality; the alcaic is all contrast and diversity. This elementary distinction is important when we realize that authors deliberately chose metrical schemes to enhance the theme and tone of their lyrics.

To the beginner, metrical analyses may seem needlessly complex and pointless. Both these reactions, however, are not based on truth. Lyric measures in Latin can be diagrammed and understood with only a moderate degree of effort. As for their importance, we need only remind ourselves of some of the observations stressed in the early chapters of this book — of the generic and metrical associations so important to the ancient writers, and of their persistent concern with decorum and propriety in the fusion of form and meaning. The music of the poetry, and so a good part of its tone, is, especially for an ancient, in the meter. It is toward an appreciation of this that the following schematic representations are offered.

C. The General Observations Applied

1. **Archilochian Rhythms** are based on dactylic sequences and compounds of dactylic sequences set into stanzas. For example,

First Archilochian:

dactylic hexameter -oo| -oo| -oo| -oo| -oo| -x
hemiepes -oo| -oo| -

- - | -oo| - oo| - - | - oo| - -
Quis scit an adiant hodiernae crastina summae

- - | - - - | -
Tempora di superi?

(Horace, *Odes*, IV.7.17-18)

Fourth Archilochian:

dactylic tetrameter +

trochaic dimeter catalectic -oo| -oo| -oo| -oo| - - - | -x
iambic trimeter catalectic x -oo| x -oo| x - x

- - - | - oo| - oo| - - - | - -
Nunc decet aut viridi nitidum caput impedire myrto

- - - - | - - | - - - | - - -
Aut flore, terrae quem ferunt solutae . . .

(Horace, *Odes*, I.4.9-10)

2. **Aeolic Rhythms** are lyric rhythms which have the choriamb or some variation of the choriamb at their cores.

a. **Asclepiadean Rhythms** are composed largely of glyconic (and, in the case of the fifth asclepiadean, pherecratean) cores. For example,

Lesser Asclepiadean (First Asclepiadean):

glyconic with two choriamsbs xx - - - | - - - | ~ x

Quodsi me lyricis vatibus inseris
sublimi feriam sidera vertice.

(Horace, *Odes*, I.1.35-36)

feriō, ferire, —, —, strike
inserō, inserere, inserū, insertus, put in, insert; associate, enroll
lyricus, -a, -um, lyric
sublimis, -e, exalted, lofty, uplifted
vātēs, vātis, m. or f., seer, prophet; poet, bard

Greater Asclepiadean (Fifth Asclepiadean):

glyconic with three choriamsbs xx - - - | - - - | - - - | ~ x

spem longam reseces. Dum loquimur, fugerit invida
aetas: carpe diem, quam minimum credula postero.

(Horace, *Odes*, I.11.7-8)

carpō, carpere, carpsi, carptus, pick, pluck; take advantage of
crēdulus, -a, -um, trusting (in) (+dat.)
invidus, -a, -um, envious
posterus, -a, -um, next, following
resecō, resecāre, resecū, resectus, cut back, prune, trim

Fourth Asclepiadean:

There are expansions and variations of these basic asclepiadean themes. Some poems consist solely of lesser or greater asclepiadean lines, as we have seen above. Others, like the so-called Fourth Asclepiadean strophe, vary the system within the strophe. It is obvious (from the presence of the choriamb in each line) that the rhythm is totally aeolic. For example:

glyconic with two choriamsbs (Lesser Asclepiadean) xx - - - | - - - | ~ x

glyconic with two choriamsbs (Lesser Asclepiadean) xx - - - | - - - | ~ x

pherecratean xx - - - x

glyconic xx - - - - x

Quis multa gracilis te puer in rosa
perfusus liquidis urget odoribus
grato, Pyrrha, sub antro?
Cui flavam religas comam . . .

(Horace, *Odes*, I.5.1-4)

- b. **Phalaean Hendecasyllable.** The favorite rhythm of Catullus, containing eleven syllables in each line (Gk. eleven = ἑνδεκά), has a glyconic rhythm at its core. For example:

glyconic + bacchiac x x - - - - | - - x

Vivamus, meā Lesbia, atque amemus,
rumoresque sēnum severiorum
omnes unius aestimemus assis.

(Catullus 5.1-3)

- c. **Sapphic Strophe:**

cretic + acephalous hippoactean - - - | x - - - - - x
cretic + acephalous hippoactean - - - | x - - - - - x
cretic + acephalous hippoactean - - - | x - - - - - x
adonic - - - x

Pindarum quisquis studet aemulari,
Iule, ceratis ope Daedalea
nititur pennis vitreo daturus
nomina ponto.

(Horace, *Odes*, IV.2.1-4)

- d. **Alcaic Strophe:**

iambic metron + acephalous glyconic x - - - | x - - - - - x
iambic metron + acephalous glyconic x - - - | x - - - - - x
iambic dimeter + one additional syllable x - - - | x - - - | x
hemiepes + bacchiac - - - - - | - - x

Eheu fugaces, Postume, Postume,
labuntur anni, nec pietas moram
rugas et instanti senectae
adferet indomitaeque morti . . .

(Horace, *Odes*, II.14.1-4)

Horace, *Carmina*

I.4

Solvitur acris hiems grata vice veris et Favoni,
 trahuntque siccas machinae carinas,
 ac neque iam stabulis gaudet pecus aut arator igni,
 nec prata canis albicant pruinis.
 Iam Cytherea choros dicit Venus imminentे Luna, 5
 iunctaeque Nymphis Gratiae decentes
 alterno terram quatiant pede, dum gravis Cyclopum
 Volcanus ardens visit officinas.
 Nunc decet aut viridi nitidum caput impedire¹ myrto
 aut flore terrae quem ferunt solutae; 10

albicō (1), be white	māchina , -ae, f., machine; <i>here</i> , windlass
alternus , -a, -um, one after another, alternating	myrtus , -i, f., myrtle
arātor , -ōris, m., ploughman	nitidus , -a, -um, shining
cānus , -a, -um, white, hoary	nymphā , -ae, f., nymph
chorus , -i, m., dance, chorus, troop of dancers	officina , -ae, f., workshop
Cyclōps , Cyclōpis , m., Cyclops, an assistant of	pecus , pecoris , n., cattle, herd, flock
Vulcan at his forge under Mt. Aetna	prātum , -i, n., meadow
Cytherēus , -a, -um, of Cythera, an island	pruīna , -ae, f., frost
southeast of the Peloponnesus, said to be the	quatiō , quatere , —, quassus , shake, bran-
birthplace of Venus	dish; beat, strike
decēns , -entis, seemly, beautiful	siccus , -a, -um, dry
decet , decēre , decuit (impersonal), it is seemly,	stabulum , -i, n., stable, stall
it is becoming; it is proper	→ vēr , vēris , n., spring
Favōnius , -i, m., Favonius, the West Wind	* vicis , vicis , f., change, alternation, turn
→ flōs , flōris , m., flower, blossom	→ viridis , -e, green
gaudeō , gaudēre , gāvisus sum , be glad, be	→ visō , visere , visi , visus , go to see, visit; view,
pleased, rejoice	behold
Grātiae , -ārum, f. pl., the Graces, goddesses of	Volcānus , -i, m., Vulcan, god of fire
charm and beauty and attendants of Venus	
immineō , imminēre , —, —, overhang,	
threaten	

1. **impediō**, *here*, bind

nunc et in umbrosis Fauno decet immolare lucis,
 seu poscat agna sive malit haedo.

Pallida Mors aequo pulsat pede pauperum tabernas
 regumque turris. O beate Sesti,
 vitae summa¹ brevis spem nos vetat incohare longam. 15

Iam te premet nox fabulaeque Manes²
 et domus exilis Plutonia; quo simul³ mearis,
 nec regna vini⁴ sortiere talis
 nec tenerum Lycidan mirabere, quo calet iuventus
 nunc omnis et mox virgines tepebunt. 20

aequus, -a, -um, level, equal; fair
agna, -ae, f., lamb
beatus, -a, -um, happy, blessed, fortunate
caleō, **calēre**, **calui**, **calitus**, be warm, be hot;
 glow, be roused
decet, **decēre**, **decuit** (impersonal), it is seemly,
 it is becoming; it is proper
exilis, -e, thin, narrow; ill-provided, poor
fabula, -ae, f., story, tale
Faunus, -i, m., Faunus, god of woods and
 shepherds, equivalent to the Greek Pan
haedus, -i, m., young goat, kid
immolō (1), sacrifice
incohō (1), begin
lucus, -i, m., sacred grove, wood
Lycidās, -ae, m., Lycidas, a boy's name com-
 mon in pastoral poetry (**Lycidān**=acc. sing.)

meō (1), go, wander
pallidus, -a, -um, pale
Plütōnius, -a, -um, Plutonian, of Pluto, god of
 the underworld
pulsō (1), keep hitting, strike (upon), beat
Sestius, -i, m., Sestius, addressee of the poem
 → **sive or seu** (conj.), or if
 sive (seu) ... sive (seu or -ve), whether ... or (if)
sortior, **sortiri**, **sortitus sum**, draw lots for,
 select
taberna, -ae, f., hut
tālus, -i, m., knuckle-bone, die
 → **tener**, **tenera**, **tenerum**, tender, soft, delicate,
 young
tepeō, **tepēre**, —, —, be warm, glow
turris, **turris**, -iūm, f., tower, castle, palace

1. **summa**, -ae, f., sum, whole, total

4. *rēgna vīnī*. At Roman banquets it was the custom to choose one person by lot as the *magister bibendī*, leader of the drinking.

2. **fabulae** ... **Mānēs**, fabled shades

→ 3. **simul**, here and frequently, conj., as soon as

Horace, *Carmina*

I.5

Quis¹ multa gracilis te puer in rosa
perfusus liquidis urget odoribus
grato, Pyrrha, sub antro?
Cui flavam religas comam,

simplex munditiis? Heu quotiens fidem
mutatosque deos flebit et aspera
nigris aequora ventis
emirabitur insolens,

qui nunc te fruitur credulus aurea,
qui semper vacuam, semper amabilem
sperat, nescius aurae
fallacis. Miseri, quibus

intemptata nites. Me tabula sacer
votiva paries indicat uvida
suspendisse potenti
vestimenta maris deo.

5

10

15

antrum, -ī, *n.*, cave, cavern, grotto
crēdulus, -a, -um, trusting, credulous
fallāx, **fallācis**, deceptive, treacherous, false
flāvus, -a, -um, golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
fleō, **fliēre**, **fliēvi**, **fliētus**, weep (for)
indicō (1), declare, indicate
insolēns, -entis, unaccustomed, unfamiliar
intemptātus, -a, -um, untried
liquidus, -a, -um, liquid; fluid
munditia, -ae, *f.*, elegance, neatness
nescius, -a, -um, unknowing, ignorant
niteō, **nitēre**, **nituī**, —, shine, sparkle
odor, -ōris, *m.*, odor, scent
pariēs, **parietis**, *m.*, wall (of a building)
perfundō [*per*+*fundō*], pour over, spray, drench

→**potēns**, -entis, powerful, having power over
(+gen.)
Pyrrha, -ae, *f.*, Pyrrha, addressee of the poem
religō (1), bind back, bind up; unbind
rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose
simplex, **simplicis**, simple, plain
suspendō, **suspendere**, **suspēndi**, **suspēnsus**,
hang, suspend, hang up
tabula, -ae, *f.*, board; tablet
urgeō, **urgēre**, **ursī**, —, press; beset, hem in
ūvidus, -a, -um, moist, wet, damp
→**vacuus**, -a, -um, empty; free, available; carefree, disengaged
vestimentum, -ī, *n.*, garment, clothing
votīvus, -a, -um, votive, offered in fulfillment of a vow

1. *quis*, interrogative pronoun used adjectively

Horace, *Carmina*

I.6

Scriberis Vario fortis et hostium
 victor Maeonii carminis alite,
 quam rem cumque¹ ferox navibus aut equis
 miles te duce gesserit.

Nos, Agrippa, neque haec dicere nec gravem
 Pelidae stomachum cedere nescii
 nec cursus duplicitis per mare Ulixei
 nec saevam Pelopis domum

5

conamur, tenues grandia, dum pudor
 inbellisque lyrae Musa potens vetat
 laudes egregii Caesaris et tuas
 culpa deterere ingeni.

10

Agrippa, -ae, m., M. Vipsanius Agrippa, general, friend, and son-in-law of Augustus
āles, ālitis, m. or f., bird
Caesar, **Caesaris**, m., Caesar; *here*, Augustus Caesar
dēterō, **dēterere**, **dētrīvī**, **dētrītus**, wear down or away, rub off, remove; lessen, impair, detract from
duplex, **duplicis**, double; divided, deceitful
ēgregius, -a, -um, outstanding, distinguished
ferōx, **ferōcis**, fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
grandis, -e, great, large; important, distinguished
inbellis (=imbellis), -e, not suited to warfare, unwarlike

lyra, -ae, f., lyre
Maeonius, -a, -um, of Maeonia, Maeonian, Lydian (esp. of Homer)
Mūsa, -ae, f., Muse, one of the nine Muses
nescius, -a, -um, unknowing, ignorant
Pēlidēs, -ae, m., the son of Peleus, Achilles
Pelops, **Pelopis**, m., Pelops, son of Tantalus and father of Atreus and Thyestes
stomachus, -i, m., gullet, stomach; ill-temper
tenuis, -e, slender, fine; slight; trivial; shallow; plain, simple
Ulixēs, **Ulixei**, m., Ulysses (Odysseus)
Varius, -i, m., L. Varius Rufus, an Augustan elegiac and epic poet and tragedian

1. **quam . . . cumque**, tmesis for *quamcumque*

Quis Martern tunica tectum adamantina
 digne scripserit aut pulvere Troico
 nigrum Merionen aut ope¹ Palladis
 Tydiden superis parem?

15

Nos convivia, nos proelia virginum
 sectis in iuvenes unguibus acrimum
 cantamus vacui, sive quid urimur,
 non praeter solitum leves.

20

adamantinus, -a, -um, of adamant or steel
convivium, -i, n., dinner-party, feast, banquet
levis, -e, light, not weighed down; slight, trivial;
 unreliable; fickle, shallow
Mérionēs, -ae, m., Meriones, a Cretan comrade
 of Idomeneus (**Mérionēn**=acc. sing.)
Pallas, **Palladis**, f., Pallas Athena, Minerva
pulvis, **pulveris**, m., dust
solitum, -i, n., what is customary or normal, the
 usual

Trōicus, -a, -um, of or relating to Troy, Trojan
tunica, -ae, f., Roman undergarment, tunic;
 tunic worn as armor
Tydiđēs, -ae, m., the son of Tydeus, Diomedes
 (**Tydiđēn**=acc. sing.)
unguis, **unguis**, -ium, m., (finger-) nail
ürō, **ürere**, **ussi**, **ustus**, burn, scorch, inflame,
 consume; sting

1. **ops**, here, aid, assistance

Horace, *Carmina*

I.9

Vides ut¹ alta stet nive candidum
 Soracte, nec iam sustineant onus
 silvae laborantes² geluque
 flumina constiterint acuto.

Dissolve frigus ligna super foco
 large reponens atque benignius
 deprome quadrum Sabina,
 o Thaliarche, merum diota.

5

Permitte divis cetera, qui simul
 stravere ventos aequore fervido
 deproeliantis, nec cupressi
 nec veteres agitantur orni.

10

- acūtus, -a, -um**, sharp; piercingly cold
benignē (adv.), kindly, generously
 → **candidus, -a, -um**, white, clear, bright, radiant
cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitti, —, stop, pause, halt; stand still
cupressus, -i, f., cypress tree
dēproelior (1), battle violently
dēprōmō, dēprōmere, dēprōmpsī, dēprōmp- tus, bring out, draw forth
dīota, -ae, f., two-handled vessel, wine-jar
dissolvō [dis + solvō], break up, dissolve; melt
fābula, -ae, f., story, tale
fervidus, -a, -um, boiling, seething
focus, -i, m., fireplace, hearth
 → **frigus, frigoris, n.**, cold, coldness, chill; cold weather
gelus, -ūs, m., frost, ice
largē (adv.), abundantly

- lignum, -i, n.**, wood, piece of wood; (pl.) firewood
 → **merum, -i, n.**, unmixed wine
nix, nivis, f., snow
onus, oneris, n., load, burden
ornus, -i, f., wild mountain-ash
permittō [per + mittō], allow; entrust
quadrīmus, -a, -um, of four winters, four years old
Sabinus, -a, -um, Sabine, of the Sabines, a people of Italy
Sōracte, Sōractis, n., Soracte, a mountain in Etruria that can be seen from Rome
sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus, lay out, spread; cause to subside
Thaliarchus, -i, m., Thaliarchus, addressee of the poem

1. **ut**, here, adv., how2. **laborō**, here, suffer strain, be hard pressed

Quid sit futurum cras fuge¹ quaerere et
 quem² Fors dierum cumque² dabit lucro
 adpone, nec dulcis amores
 sperne puer neque tu choreas,

15

donec virenti canities abest
 morosa. Nunc et campus et areae
 lenesque sub noctem³ susurri
 composita repetantur hora,

20

nunc et latentis proditor intimo
 gratus puellae risus ab angulo
 pignusque dereptum lacertis
 aut digito male pertinaci.

adpōnō [*ad* + *pōnō*], put to, assign
angulus, -i, m., angle, corner
ārea, -ae, f., open space; playground
cānitēs, -ēi, f., gray or white hair
chorēa, -ae, f., dance
compōnō [*com* + *pōnō*], appoint, agree upon
crās (adv.), tomorrow
dēripīō, dēripere, dēripui, dēreptus, snatch
 from, take violently
intimus, -a, -um, innermost
lacertus, -i, m., (upper) arm

lēnis, -e, gentle, kind, soft
lucrum, -i, n., gain, profit
mōrōsus, -a, -um, hard to please, difficult
pertināx, **pertinācis**, holding fast, unyielding
pignus, **pignoris** or **pigneris**, n., pledge; token
prōditor, -ōris, m., betrayer
risus, -ūs, m., laugh, laughter
spernō, spernere, **sprēvi**, **sprētus**, scorn, reject
susurrus, -i, m., whispering
vireō, virēre, —, —, be green, be vigorous

1. **fugiō**, here, avoid, shun (+inf.)2. **quem . . . cumque**, tmesis for **quemcumque**3. **sub noctem**, just before night, approaching nightfall

Horace, *Carmina*

I.19

Mater saeva Cupidinum

Thebanaeque iubet me Semelae puer
et lasciva Licentia
finitis animum reddere amoribus.

Urit me Glycerae nitor,

5

splendentis Pario marmore purius
urit grata protervitas
et vultus nimium lubricus aspici.

In me tota ruens Venus

Cyprum deseruit, nec patitur Scythas
et versis animosum equis
Parthum dicere, nec quae nihil attinent.

10

Hic vivum mihi caespitem, hic

verbenas, pueri, ponite turaque
bimi cum patera meri:
mactata veniet lenior hostia.

15

attineō [*ad + teneō*], pertain, apply, be relevant
bīmus, -a, -um, two-year old
caesp̄es, **caesp̄itis**, *m.*, sod, grass (often heaped up for an improvised altar)
Cupidō, **Cupidinis**, *m.*, Cupid; passion, desire
Cyprus, -i, *m.*, (the island of) Cyprus
fīniō, **finire**, **fīnīv̄i**, **fīnītus**, finish
Glycera, -ae, *f.*, Glycera
hostia, -ae, *f.*, sacrificial victim
lascivus, -a, -um, frisky, playful; wanton, lustful
lēnis, -e, gentle, kind
Licentia, -ae, *f.*, the goddess of licentiousness
lūbricus, -a, -um, slippery; deceitful, treacherous
mactō (1), sacrifice, kill
marmor, -oris, *n.*, marble
nīmīum (adv.), too, too much, excessively

nītor, -ōris, *m.*, gleam, brightness
Parius, -a, um, Parian, of Paros
Parthus, -a, um, Parthian
patera, -ae, *f.*, bowl
protervitās, -tātis, *f.*, brazenness, boldness
pūrus, -a, -um, clean, pure, uncontaminated
Scythaē, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Scythians, a tribe on the Black sea
Semelē, -ae, *f.*, Semele, mother of Bacchus
splendēns, -entis, shining, gleaming
Thēbānus, -a, -um, Theban
ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus, burn, scorch, inflame, consume; sting
verbēna, -ae, *f.*, vervain, a sacred plant worn by priests
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living

Horace, *Carmina*

I.23

Vitas innuleo me similis, Chloe,
 quaerenti pavidam montibus aviis
 matrem non sine vano
 aurarum et silvae¹ metu.

Nam seu mobilibus veris inhorruit
 adventus foliis seu virides rubum
 dimovere lacertae,
 et corde et genibus tremit.

Atqui non ego te tigris ut aspera
 Gaetusve leo frangere persequor:
 tandem desine matrem
 tempestiva sequi viro.

adventus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , arrival	pavidus , -a, -um, trembling, frightened
atqui (conj.), but, and yet	persequor [<i>per+sequor</i>], follow earnestly, pursue
āvius , -a, -um, pathless, trackless	rubus , -i, <i>m.</i> , bramble, blackberry bush
Chloē , Chloēs , <i>f.</i> , Chloe, addressee of the poem	seu (conj.), or if
dimoveō [<i>dis+moveō</i>], separate, move apart, put in motion	seu . . . seu , whether . . . or (if)
folium , -i, <i>n.</i> , leaf	silva , -ae, <i>f.</i> , forest, woods
frangō , frangere , frēgi , frāctus , break, shatter, crush	tempestivus , -a, -um, timely, ripe, ready
Gaetus , -a, -um, Gaetulian, Moroccan	tigris , tigris , -ium, <i>m. or f.</i> , tiger
genū , -ūs, <i>n.</i> , knee	tremō , tremere , tremui , —, tremble, quake, quiver
(h)innuleus , -i, <i>m.</i> , young deer	vānus , -a, -um, empty, vain, meaningless
inhorreō , inhorrē , inhorruī , —, bristle, quiver, shudder	-ve (enclitic conj.), or
lacerta , -ae, <i>f.</i> , lizard	vēr , vēris , <i>n.</i> , spring
leō , -ōnis, <i>m. or f.</i> , lion	viridis , -e, green

1. For purposes of scansion, *silvae* = *siluae*.

Horace, *Carmina*

I.37

Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede libero
pulsanda tellus, nunc Salaribus
ornare pulvinar deorum
tempus erat dapibus, sodales.

Ante hac¹ nefas depromere Caecubum
cellis avitis, dum Capitolio
regina dementis ruinas
funus et imperio parabat

5

contaminato cum grege turpium
morbo virorum, quidlibet impotens
sperare fortunaque dulci
ebria. Sed minuit furorem

vix una sospes navis ab ignibus,
mentemque lymphatam Mareotico
redegit in veros timores

15

Caesar ab Italia volantem

antehāc (adv.), before this time, previously
avītus, -a, -um, of a grandfather, ancestral
bibō, **bibere**, **bibi**, —, drink
Caecubum, -i, n., Caecuban wine, from the plain of Caecubum in Latium
Caesar, **Caesaris**, m., Caesar; **here**, Octavian
Capitōlium, -i, n., the Capitoline Hill in Rome
contāminō (1), defile, pollute
daps, **dapis**, f., feast, banquet
dēprōmō, **dēprōmēre**, **dēprōmpsī**, **dēprōmp-**
 tus, bring out, draw forth
ēbrius, -a, -um, drunk, intoxicated
grex, **gregis**, m., flock, herd; swarm, crowd
impotens, -entis, powerless, helpless; violent, unrestrained, unbridled
lymphātus, -a, -um, frenzied, deranged
Mareōticum, -i, n., Mareotic wine, from the district of Mareotis in Egypt

minuō, minuere, minuī, minutus, reduce, diminish
morbus, -i, m., disease, sickness
ornō (1), adorn, decorate
pulsō (1), keep hitting, strike (upon), beat
pulvīnar, pulvīnarīs, n., couch (of the gods)
quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (indef. pron.), anyone, anything . . . you will; anyone, anything . . . it pleases
redigō, redigere, redēgī, redactus, bring back (down), force, subdue
Saliāris, -e, Salian, of the Salii, a college of priests in the service of Mars noted for their sumptuous processions through the city every March
sodālis, sodālis, -ium, m., comrade, companion
sōspes, sōspitis, safe, unharmed, spared

1. *antehāc* scans *an-te-hac* by synizesis (two vowels contracted, in pronunciation, into one)

remis adurgens, accipiter velut
 mollis columbas aut leporem citus
 venator in campis nivalis
 Haemoniae, daret ut catenis

20

fatale monstrum; quae generosius
 perire querens nec muliebriter
 expavit ensem nec latentis
 classe cita reparavit oras;

ausa et iacentem visere regiam
 vultu sereno, fortis et asperas
 tractare serpentis, ut atrum
 corpore combiberet venenum,

25

deliberata morte ferocior,
 saevis Liburnis¹ scilicet invidens
 privata deduci superbo
 non humilis mulier triumpho.

30

accipiter, accipitris, m., bird of prey, hawk
adurgeō, adurgēre, —, —, press on, pursue
 closely
catēna, -ae, f., chain
citus, -a, -um, swift, fast
columba, -ae, f., dove
combibō, combibere, combibī, —, drink
 (deeply)
dēdūcō [*dē + dūcō*], lead down, lead away; bring
 back to Rome
dēliberō (1), weigh, consider; resolve,
 determine
expavēscō, expavēscere, expāvī, —, become
 frightened (of), take fright (at)
fatalis, -e, fated, destined; deadly, dangerous
generōsē (adv.), nobly

Haemonia, -ae, f., Haemonia, old name of Thes-
 saly
iaceō, iacēre, iacui, —, lie; lie in ruins
lepus, leporis, m., hare
Liburnus, -a, -um, of the Liburnians, who dwelt
 on the east coast of the Adriatic
muliebriter (adv.), like a woman
nivālis, -e, snowy
rēgia, -ae, f., palace
reparō (1), recover; take in exchange
scilicet (adv.), obviously, certainly
serpēns, -entis, -ium, m. or f., serpent
tractō (1), touch, handle
triumphus, -i, m., triumphal procession, tri-
 umph
venēnum, -i, n., poison

1. **Liburnis** (sc., *nāvibus*), the Liburnian galleys
 were noted for their speed.

Horace, *Carmina*

II.3

Aequam memento¹ rebus in arduis
 servare mentem, non secus in bonis
 ab insolenti temperatam
 laetitia, moriture Delli,

seu maestus omni tempore vixeris,
 seu te in remoto² gramine per dies
 festos reclinatum bearis
 interiore nota Falerni.

5

Quo³ pinus ingens albaque populus
 umbram hospitalem consociare amant
 ramis? Quid obliquo laborat
 lympha fugax trepidare rivo?

10

Huc vina et unguenta et nimium brevis
 flores amoenae ferre iube rosae,
 dum res et aetas et sororum
 fila trium⁴ patiuntur atra.

15

- aequus**, -a, -um, level, equal; fair; calm, composed
albus, -a, -um, white
amoenus, -a, -um, pleasing (to the senses), beautiful, attractive, charming
arduis, -a, -um, steep; difficult, arduous
beō (1), make happy
cōnsociō (1), make common, share, unite
Dellius, -i, m., Dellius, addressee of the poem
Falernum, -i, n., Falernian wine, from a district in Campania famous for its wine
festus, -a, -um, festive, festal, merry
filum, -i, n., thread
fugāx, **fugācis**, swift, fleeting, transitory
grāmen, -minis, n., grass; pasture
hospitālis, -e, hospitable
insolēns, -entis, unaccustomed, unfamiliar; excessive

- interior**, -ius (comparative adj.), inner; (of wine) longest in the cellar
lympa, -ae, f., clear (spring) water
nimium (adv.), too, too much, excessively
nota, -ae, f., mark, sign; brand, stamp
obliquus, -a, -um, sidelong, crosswise; *here*, twisting, meandering
pinus, -īs, f., pine tree
pōpulus, -ī, f., poplar tree
rāmus, -ī, m., branch
reclīnō (1), recline
rīvus, -ī, m., brook, stream, water-course
rosa, -ae, f., rose
secus (adv.), otherwise, differently
temperō (1), restrain
trepidō (1), tremble, quiver; move rapidly
unguentum, -ī, n., ointment, perfume

1. **mementō**, 2nd sing. future imperative active of *memini*
 2. **remōtus**, -a, -um, remote, distant, out-of-the-way

3. **quō**, *here*, to what purpose, why
 4. **sorōrum . . . trium**, the Fates who spin, measure out, and cut the threads (*fila*) of life.

Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo
 villaque flavus quam Tiberis lavit,
 cedes et exstructis in altum
 divitiis potietur heres.

20

Divesne prisco natus ab Inacho
 nil interest an pauper et infima
 de gente sub divo¹ moreris,
 victima nil miserantis Orci.

Omnes eodem cogimur, omnium
 versatur urna serius ocius²
 sors exitura³ et nos in aeternum⁴
 exsiliū impositura cumbae.

25

coēmō, coēmere, coēmī, coēmptus, purchase,
 buy up
cōgō, cōgere, coēgl, coāctus, drive together;
 collect; compel
cumba, -ae, f., small boat, skiff
dives, dīvitīs, rich, wealthy
exstruō, exstruere, exstrūxi, exstrūctus, build
 up; pile up, accumulate
flāvus, -a, -um, golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
hērēs, hērēdis, m. or f., heir, heiress
Inachus, -ī, m., Inachus, mythical king of Argos
infīmus, -a, -um, lowest, meanest, humblest
lavō, lavere or lavāre, lāvī, laetus or lōtus,
 wash, bathe

miseror (1), pity, take pity on
ōcius (comparative adv.), sooner, more quickly
Orcus, -ī, m., Orcus, the underworld; the god of
 the infernal regions, Orcus or Pluto
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, become master of,
 gain possession of (+ abl.)
prīscus, -a, -um, of former times, old, ancient
saltus, -ūs, m., pasture, woodland
sērō (adv.), late, too late
Tiberis, Tiberis, m., Tiber river
versō (1), keep turning, turn over, stir
victima, -ae, f., (sacrificial) victim

1. **sub dīvō**, under the sky

them into an urn, and then shaking the urn
 until one pebble fell out (*exeō*).

2. **serius ūcius**, sooner or later

4. Line 27 is *hypermetric*: the last syllable in
 the line elides with the first syllable in line 28.

3. **sors exitūra.** The ancients cast lots by writing names or symbols on pebbles, casting

Horace, *Carmina*

II.9

Non semper imbres nubibus hispidos
manant in agros aut mare Caspium
vexant inaequales procellae
usque nec Armeniis in oris,

amicus Valgi, stat glacies iners
mensis per omnis aut Aquilonibus
querqueta Gargani laborant^l
et foliis viduantur orni;

tu semper urges flebilibus modis²
Mysten ademptum nec tibi Vespero
surgente deceidunt amores
nec rapidum fugiente solem.

5

10

adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptus, take away
Aquilō, -ōnis, *m.*, Aquilon, the North Wind
Armenius, -a, -um, Armenian
Caspious, -a, -um, Caspian
flēbilis, -e, plaintive; tearful
folium, -i, n., leaf
Gargānus, -i, m., Garganus, a mountain in
 Horace's home district of Apulia
glaciēs, -ēi, f., ice
hispidus, -a, -um, rough, bristly
→imber, imbris, m., rain; water
inaequālis, -e, uneven, unlike; that roughens
 the sea
iners, inertis, inactive, sluggish, motionless

mānō (1), trickle, drip; stream, flow
mēnsis, **mēnsis**, -ium, *m.*, month
Mystēs, -ae, *m.*, Mystes (**Mystēn**=acc. sing.)
ornus, -i, *f.*, wild mountain-ash
procella, -ae, *f.*, blast (of wind), windstorm
querquētūm, -i, *n.*, oak forest, oak grove
surgō, **surgere**, **surrēxi**, **surrēctus**, rise, rise up
urgeō, **urgēre**, **ursī**, —, press; weigh down,
 oppress
Valgius, -i, *m.*, Gaius Valgius Rufus, an
 Augustan elegiac poet
Vesper, **Vesperī**, *m.*, Vesper, the Evening Star
viduō (1), deprive of (+ abl.)

1. **laborō**, here, suffer strain, be hard pressed

→2. **modus**, here and frequently, measure, meter; verse

At non ter aevo functus amabilem
 ploravit omnis Antilochum senex
 annos nec inpubem parentes
 Troilon aut Phrygiae sorores

15

flevere semper. Desine mollium
 tandem querellarum¹ et potius nova
 cantemus Augusti tropaea
 Caesaris et rigidum Niphaten.

20

Mediumque flumen gentibus additum
 victis minores volvere vertices
 intraque praescriptum Gelonos
 exiguis equitare campis.

addō, addere, addidī, additus, add
aevum, -i, n., lifetime; generation
Antilochus, -i, m., Antilochus, son of Nestor,
 slain by Memnon
Augustus Caesar, Augustī Caesaris, m.,
 Augustus Caesar
equitō (1), ride (on horseback)
fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētus, weep (for)
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, perform,
 administer; complete (+abl.)
Gelōni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Geloni, a nomadic
 tribe of Scythians who often made raids into
 Roman territory on horseback
inpūbēs (=impūbēs), impūbis, underage,
 youthful, beardless
intrā (prep. + acc.), within

Medus, -a, -um, Persian; *Medium flumen* = the
 Euphrates, by which dwelled the Parthians
Niphātēs, -ae, m., the Niphates, a mountain
 range in Armenia (**Niphātēn** = acc. sing.)
Phrygius, -a, -um, Phrygian, Trojan
plōrō (1), weep for, mourn
potius (comparative adv.), rather
praescriptum, -i, n., boundary line, limit
querella, -ae, f., complaint, lament
rigidus, -a, -um, stiff, frozen
Trōilus, -i, m., Troilus, youngest son of Priam
 and Hecuba, killed by Achilles (**Trōillon** = acc.
 sing.)
tropaeum, -i, n., trophy; victory
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus, roll

1. **querellārum**, genitive of separation, as found
 in Greek

2. **vertex**, here, whirlpool, eddy

Horace, *Carmina*

II.13

Ille et nefasto te posuit die,
 quicumque primum, et sacrilega manu
 produxit, arbos, in¹ nepotum
 perniciem opprobriumque pagi;

illum et parentis crediderim sui
 fregisse cervicem et penetralia
 sparsisse nocturno cruento
 hospitis; ille venena Colcha

5

et quicquid usquam concipitur nefas
 tractavit, agro qui statuit meo
 te, triste lignum, te caducum
 in domini caput immerentis.

10

Quid quisque vitet, numquam homini satis
 cautum est in horas.² Navita Bosporum
 Poenus perhorrescit neque ultra
 caeca timet³ aliunde fata;

15

aliunde (adv.), from elsewhere, from another source

Bosporus, -i, m., the Bosporus strait

cadūcus, -a, -um, falling, fallen; inclined to fall

caveō, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautus**, take precautions, guard against

cervix, **cervīcīs**, f., neck

Colchus, -a, -um, Colchian, of Colchis, province in Asia and home of Medea

concipiō [con + captiō], take hold of; conceive, imagine

cruor, -ōris, m., blood, bloodshed, gore

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus**, break, shatter, crush

immerēns, -entis, undeserving, innocent

lignum, -i, n., wood, piece of wood; (pl.) firewood

nāvita, -ae, m., sailor

nefastus, -a, -um, contrary to divine law; unpropitious

nepōs, -ōtis, m., grandson, descendant

nocturnus, -a, -um, at night, nocturnal

opprobrium, -i, n., reproach, scandal, disgrace

pāgus, -i, m., district, region

penetrālis, -e, penetrating; internal, innermost; (subst.) inner part, inner chamber

perhorrēscō, **perhorrēscere**, **perhorruī**, —, shudder (at); tremble greatly (at)

Poenus, -a, -um, Phoenician

prōducō [prō + dūcō], lead forward; produce; raise

quisquis, **quidquid** (**quicquid**) (indef. pron.), whoever, whatever

sacrilegus, -a, -um, impious, sacrilegious

statuō, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtus**, establish, erect, plant

tractō (1), touch, handle, mould

ultrā (adv.), beyond, farther, besides

usquam (adv.), in any place, anywhere

venēnum, -i, n., poison

1. **in**, here, for

2. **in hōrās**, from hour to hour

3. The final syllable here scans long: *timēt*.

miles sagittas et celerem fugam
 Parthi, catenas Parthus et Italum
 robur: sed improvisa leti
 vis rapuit rapietque gentis.

20

Quam paene furvae regna Proserpinæ
 et iudicantem vidimus Aeacum
 sedesque descriptas piorum et
 Aeoliis fidibus querentem

Sappho puellis de popularibus,
 et te sonantem plenius aureo,
 Alcaee, plectro dura navis,
 dura fugae mala, dura belli.

25

utrumque sacro digna silentio
 mirantur umbrae dicere; sed magis
 pugnas et exactos tyrannos
 densum umeris bibit aure volgus.

30

Aeacus, -i, m., Aeacus, judge (with Minos and Rhadamanthus) in the underworld
Aeolius, -a, -um, Aeolic, Aeolian, of Aeolia (a Greek region of northwest Asia Minor, supposed birthplace of Greek lyric poetry)
Alcaeus, -i, m., Alcaeus, Greek lyric poet of Mytilene, contemporary of Sappho; he invented the meter of this poem, which bears his name
bibō, bibere, bibi, —, drink
catēna, -ae, f., chain
dēnsus, -a, -um, dense, thick; crowded, close
discribō [*dis+scribō*], mark out, assign
exigō [*ex+agō*], drive out
fidēs, fidium, f. pl., stringed instrument, lyre, strings (of a lyre)
furvus, -a, -um, dark, dusky, somber
imprōvisus, -a, -um, not foreseen, unexpected
Italus, -a, -um, Italian

lētum, -i, n., (violent) death, destruction
paene (adv.), almost
Parthus, -i, m., Parthian, of a Scythian people, famed as roving warriors and skillful archers
plectrum, -i, n., plectrum, instrument used for striking the strings of a lyre
plēnē (adv.), fully, completely, thoroughly
populāris, populāris, -ium, m., compatriot
Proserpina, -ae, f., Proserpina, daughter of Ceres, wife of Pluto
queror, queri, questus sum, complain, lament
sagitta, -ae, f., arrow
Sapphō, -ūs, f., Sappho, Greek lyric poet of Mytilene on the island of Lesbos (**Sapphō** = acc. sing.)
sonō, sonare, sonuī, sonitus, sound, resound
tyrannus, -i, m., absolute ruler; tyrant
volgus (=vulgus), -i, n., the multitude, the public; crowd, mob

quid mirum, ubi illis carminibus stupens
demittit atras belua centiceps
auris et intorti capillis
Eumenidum recreantur angues?

35

Quin et Prometheus et Pelopis parens
dulci laborem decipitur sono,
nec curat Orion leones
aut timidos agitare lyncas.

40

anguis, anguis, -iūm, m. or f., snake
bēlua, -ae, f., wild beast, brute
capillus, -i, m., hair (of the head); (pl.) hair
centiceps, centicipitis, hundred-headed
cūrō (1), care, undertake
dēcipiō [dē + captiō], deceive, beguile
dēmittō [dē + mittō], send down, let fall
Eumenidēs, -um, f. pl., the Eumenides (Greek
 for "benevolent ones"), euphemistic name for
 the Furies
intorquēo, intorquēre, intorsi, intortus, twist,
 entwine
leō, -ōnis, m. or f., lion
lynx, lyncis, m. or f., lynx (*lyncas* = acc. pl.)

mīrus, -a, -um, remarkable, surprising, strange
Ōriōn, -ōnis, m., the constellation Orion, the Hunter
Pelops, Pelopis, m., Pelops, son of Tantalus, punished for abusing his privileged position among the gods
Promētheus, -i, m., Prometheus, a Titan who stole fire from heaven and gave it to man
quīn (adv.), in fact, indeed
recreō (1), revive; relax
sonus, -i, m., noise, sound
stupeō, stupēre, stupui, —, be stunned, be paralyzed, be astounded
timidus, -a, -um, fearful, cowardly

Horace, *Carmina*

II. 14

Eheu fugaces, Postume, Postume,
labuntur anni, nec pietas moram
rugis et instanti senectae
adferet indomitaeque morti;

non si trecenis quotquot eunt dies,
amice, places inlacrimabilem
Plutona tauris, qui ter amplum
Geryonen Tityonque tristi

5

compescit unda, scilicet omnibus,
quicumque terrae munere vescimur,
enaviganda, sive reges
sive inopes erimus coloni.

10

Frustra cruento Marte carebimus
fractisque rauci fluctibus Hadriae,
frustra per autumnos nocentem
corporibus metuemus Austrum.

15

Auster, Austrī, m., Auster, the South Wind
autumnus, -i, m., autumn
colōnus, -i, m., peasant
compescō, compescere, compescui, —, confine, restrain
cruentus, -a, -um, bloody
cheu (interj.), alas!
ēnāvigō (1), sail across
frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctus, break, shatter, crush
fugāx, fugācis, swift, fleeting, transitory
Gēryōn, -onis, m., Geryon, a three-bodied giant
 (**Gēryonēn** = acc. sing.)
Hadria, -ae, m. or f., the Adriatic sea
indomitus, -a, -um, indomitable, unconquerable
inlacrimābilis, -e, pitiless, unmoved by tears
inops, inopis, poor
instō, instāre, institi, —, press (up)on, pursue; threaten

piet s, -t t s, f., dutifulness, devotion, loyalty
pl c  (1), appease, calm
Pl t , - n s, m., Pluto, god of the underworld
 (**Pl t n ** = acc. sing.)
Postumus, - , m., Postumus, addressee of the poem
quotquot (indecl. adj.), however many, of whatever number
raucus, - , -um, hoarse; roaring
r uga, - e, f., wrinkle
scilicet (adv.), obviously, certainly
senect , - e, f., old age
 → **taurus, - , m.**, bull
Tityos, - , m., Tityos, a giant punished in the underworld (**Tity n ** = acc. sing.)
trec n , trec nae, trec na, three hundred each
vescor, vesci, —, feed upon, eat; enjoy (+ abl.)

Visendus ater flumine languido
Cocytos errans et Danai genus
infame damnatusque longi
Sisyphus Aeolides laboris.

20

Linquenda tellus et domus et placens
uxor, neque harum quas colis arborum
te praeter invisas cupressos
ulla brevem dominum sequetur.

Absumet heres Caecuba dignior
servata centum clavibus et mero
tinguet pavimentum superbo,
pontificum potiore cenis.

25

absūmō, absūmere, absūmpsi, absūmptus,
consume, use up, exhaust
Aeolidēs, Aeolidae, m., son of Aeolus, mythical
ruler of Thessaly
Caecubum, -i, n., Caecuban wine, from the
plain of Caecubum in Latium
clāvis, clāvis, *-ium, f., key, bolt
Cōcȳtos or Cōcȳtus, -i, m., Cocytus, a river of
the underworld
cupressus, -i, f., cypress tree
Danaus, -i, m., Danaus, mythical king of Argos.
His daughters, the Danaids, killed their hus-
bands on their wedding night, except for one.
hērēs, hērēdis, m. or f., heir, heiress

īnfāmis, -e, infamous, disreputable, disgraced
īnvisus, -a, -um, hateful, detested
languidus, -a, -um, exhausted, weary; slow,
sluggish
pavimentum, -i, n., floor, pavement
pontifex, pontificis, m., priest; pontifex
potior, potius, better, superior, preferable
Sisyphus, -i, m., Sisyphus, mythical founder of
Corinth, known for his cunning and con-
demned to eternal suffering in the underworld
tingō or tinguō, tingere or tinguere, tīnxi,
tinctus, wet, plunge; dye, color
uxor, -ōris, f., wife

Horace, *Carmina*

III.9

Donec gratus eram tibi
nec quisquam¹ potior bracchia candidae
cervici iuvenis dabat,
Persarum vigui rege beatior.

“Donec non alia magis
arsisti neque erat Lydia post Chloen,
multi Lydia nominis
Romana vigui clarior Ilia.”

5

Me nunc Thressa Chloe regit,
dulcis docta² modos³ et citharae sciens,
pro qua non metuam mori,
si parcent animae fata superstiti.

10

"Me torret face mutua
Thurini Calais filius Ornyti,
pro quo bis patiar mori,
si parcent puero fata superstiti."

15

beātus, -a, -um, happy, blessed, fortunate
bis (adv.), two times, twice
bracchium, -i, n., arm, forearm
Calais, Calais, m., Calais
candidus, -a, -um, white, clear, bright, radiant
cervix, cervicis, f., neck
Chloē, Chloēs, f., Chloe (**Chloēn**=acc. sing.)
cithara, -ae, f., cithara, lute
fax, facis, f., torch
Ilia, -ae, f., Ilia, mother of Romulus and Remus
Lýdia, -ae, f., Lydia
mūtuus, -a, -um, borrowed, lent; reciprocal,
 mutual, shared

Ornytus, *i*, *m.*, Ornytus
pateō, *patēre*, *patui*, —, lie open
Persac, *-ārum*, *m. pl.*, the Persians
superstes, *superstitis*, standing by, present,
 surviving
Thressa, *-ae*, *f.*, a Thracian woman
Thūrīnus, *-a*, *-um*, of Thurii, a city in Magna
 Graecia
torreō, *torrēre*, *torruī*, *tostus*, parch, roast,
 scorch, burn
vigeō, *vigēre*, *vigiū*, —, thrive, flourish; live

1. **quisquam**, indefinite pronoun used adjectively

2. **doctus**, -a, -um, learned, skilled, clever
 3. **modus**, here, measure, meter; verse

Quid si prisca redit Venus
diductosque iugo cogit aeneo,
si flava excutitur Chloe
reiectaeque patet ianua Lydiae?

20

"Quamquam sidere pulchrior
ille est, tu levior cortice et improbo
iracundior Hadria,
tecum vivere amem, tecum obeam lubens."

aēneus, -a, -um, of bronze
Chloē, Chloēs, f., Chloe
cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus, drive together
cortex, corticis, m. or f., cork
dīdūcō [dis+dūcō], draw apart, separate
excutiō, excutere, excussi, excussus, shake
off, cast out
flāvus, -a, -um, golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
Hadria, -ae, m. or f., the Adriatic Sea
ianua, -ae, f., door
inprobus (=improbus), -a, -um, wicked;
shameless; restless, indomitable

irācundus, -a, -um, irascible, angry, moody
iugum, -i, n., yoke
levis, -e, light; slight, trivial; fickle
lubēns (=libēns), -entis, willing, glad, with
readiness, with pleasure
Lydia, -ae, f., Lydia
obeō [ob+eō], go to meet; fall, perish, die
pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open
priscus, -a, -um, of former times, old, ancient
Venus, Veneris, f., Venus, goddess of love

Horace, *Carmina*

III.13

O fons Bandusiae, splendidior vitro,
 dulci digne mero non sine floribus,
 cras donaberis haedo,
 cui frons turgida cornibus

primis et venerem¹ et proelia destinat;
 frustra: nam gelidos inficiet tibi
 rubro sanguine rivos,
 lascivi suboles gregis.

5

Te flagrantis atrox hora Caniculae
 nescit² tangere, tu frigus amabile³
 fessis vomere tauris
 praebes et pecori vago.

10

Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium,
 me dicente cavis impositam ilicem
 saxis unde loquaces
 lymphae desiliunt tuae.

15

atrōx, atrōcis, cruel, harsh, horrible
Bandusia, -ae, f., Bandusia, site of the spring
 addressed in the poem, located near the town
 of Venusia, birthplace of Horace in Apulia
canīcula, -ae, f., the dog-star, Sirius
cavus, -a, -um, hollow
cornū, -ūs, n., horn
crās (adv.), tomorrow
dēsilō, dēsilīre, dēsilui, dēsultus, leap down
dēstīnō (1), determine, destine, presage
flagrō (1), flame, blaze
frōns, frontis, -iūm, m. or f., forehead, brow
gelidus, -a, -um, cold, icy
grex, gregis, m., flock, herd
haedus, -i, m., young goat, kid
īlex, īlicis, f., oak

inficiō [*in+faciō*], disolor, stain, taint
lascivus, -a, -um, frisky, playful
loquāx, loquācis, talkative, loquacious
lympha, -ae, f., clear (spring) water
pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, herd, flock
praebeō, praebēre, praebui, praebitus, give,
 grant, furnish, supply
rīvus, -i, m., brook, stream, water-course
ruber, rubra, rubrum, red
splendidus, -a, -um, brilliant, glittering; mag-
 nificent
subolēs, subolis, f., offspring
turgidus, -a, -um, swollen
vagus, -a, -um, wandering, roaming
vitrum, -i, n., glass
vōmer, vōmeris, m., ploughshare

1. *venus*, here, love, beauty; sexual love
 2. *nesciō*, here, not know how

3. *amābilis*, here, welcome, refreshing

Horace, *Carmina*

III.25

Quo me, Bacche, rapis tui
plenum? Quae nemora aut quos agor in specus,
velox mente nova? Quibus
antris egregii Caesaris audiar
aeternum meditans decus 5
stellis inserere et consilio¹ Iovis?
Dicam insigne, recens, adhuc
indictum ore alio. Non secus in iugis
exsommnis stupet Euhias,
Hebrum prospiciens et nive candidam 10
Thracen ac pede barbaro
lustratam Rhodopen, ut mihi devio
ripas et vacuum nemus
mirari libet. O Naiadum potens
Baccharumque valentium 15
proceras manibus vertere² fraxinos
nil parvum aut humili modo,
nil mortale loquar. Dulce periculum est,
O Lenae, sequi deum
cingentem viridi tempora³ pampino. 20

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| antrum , -i, n., cave, cavern, grotto | Iustrō (1), traverse |
| Baccha , -ae, f., Bacchante, a devotee of Bacchus | Nāis , Nāiadis , f., a Naiad, a water nymph |
| Bacchus , -i, m., Bacchus (Dionysus or Liber), god of wine | pampinus , -i, m. or f., vine-leaf |
| barbarus , -a, -um, barbarian, foreign | plēnus , -a, -um, full |
| Caesar , Caesaris , m., Caesar; <i>here</i> , Augustus Caesar | prōcérus , -a, -um, high, tall |
| dēvius, -a, -um, off the road, out of the way | prōspiciō , prōspicere , prōspexi , prōspectus , look out at, behold |
| ēgregius, -a, -um, outstanding, distinguished | recēns , -entis, recent, fresh, new |
| Euhias , Euhiadis , f., Bacchante, a devotee of Bacchus | → ripa , -ae, f., bank (of a river) |
| exsomnis , -e, sleepless, watchful | Rhodopē , -ēs, f., Rhodope, a high mountain in Thrace (Rhodopēn =acc. sing.) |
| fraxinus , -i, f., ash tree | secus (adv.), otherwise, differently |
| Hebrus , -i, m., the Hebrus river in Thrace | specus , -ūs, m., cavern |
| indictus, -a, -um, unsaid | stella , -ae, f., star |
| inserō , inserere , inserui , insertus , put in, insert; associate, enroll | stupeō , stupēre , stupui , —, be stunned, be paralyzed, be astounded |
| iugum , -i, n., ridge, mountain-top | Thrācē , -ēs, f., Thrace, a region in north-eastern Greece (Thrācēn =acc. sing.) |
| Lēnaeus , -a, -um, Lenaean, an epithet of Bacchus | vēlōx , vēlōcis , swift, rapid |
| libet , libēre , libuit or libitum est , it is pleasing, it is agreeable | |

1. **cōsiliūm**, *here*, council
2. **vertō**, *here*, overturn, tear up

3. tempora, temples (of the head)

Horace, *Carmina*

III.30

Exegi monumentum aere perennius
 regalique situ pyramidum altius,
 quod non imber edax, non Aquilo impotens
 possit diruere aut innumerabilis
 annorum series et fuga temporum. 5

Non omnis moriar multaque pars mei
 vitabit Libilitam; usque ego postera
 crescam laude recens, dum Capitolium
 scandet cum tacita virgine pontifex;
 dicar, qua¹ violens obstrepit Aufidus 10
 et qua pauper aquae Daunus agrestium
 regnavit populorum, ex humili potens
 princeps Aeolium carmen ad Italos
 deduxisse modos. Sume superbiam
 quaesitam meritis et mihi Delphica 15
 lauro cinge volens, Melpomene, comam.

Aeolius, -a, -um, Aeolic, Aeolian, of Aeolia (a Greek region of northwest Asia Minor, supposed birthplace of Greek lyric poetry)
aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; money
agrestis, -e, rustic
Aquilō, -onis, m., Aquilon, the North Wind
Aufidus, -i, m., the Aufidus river in Apulia
Capitōlium, -i, n., the Capitoline Hill in Rome
Daunus, -i, m., Daunus, legendary king of Apulia
dēdūcō [dē + dūcō], lead down; introduce, convert, adapt
Delphicus, -a, -um, Delphic, of Delphi, sacred to Apollo
diruō [dis + ruō], demolish, destroy
edāx, edācis, corrosive
exigō, exigere, exēgi, exāctus, drive out; finish, complete
impotēns, -entis, powerless, helpless; violent, unrestrained, unbridled
innumerābilis, -e, countless, unable to be counted
Italus, -a, -um, Italian
laurus, -i, f., laurel

Libilita, -ae, f., Libilita, goddess of corpses, at whose temple funeral requisites were stored
Melpomenē, -ēs, f., Melpomene, a Muse
meritum, -i, n., merit, service
monumentum, -i, n., monument
obstrepō, obstrepere, obstrepūi, obstrepitus, roar
perennis, -e, everlasting, perpetual, perennial
pontifex, pontificis, m., priest; pontifex
posterus, -a, -um, later, following, future
pȳramis, pȳramidis, f., pyramid
recēns, -entis, recent, fresh, new
rēgalis, -e, royal, kingly
rēgnō (1), rule, rule over (+gen.)
scandō, scandere, —, —, climb, mount, ascend
seriēs, -ēi, f., series, chain
situs, -ūs, m., position, structure; neglect, disuse, decay
sūmō, sūmēre, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take, take up, adopt as suitable
superbia, -ae, f., pride, haughtiness, arrogance
violēns, -entis, violent, forceful

1. quā, here, adv., where

Horace, *Carmina*

IV.1

Intermissa, Venus, diu
 rursus bella moves? Parce, precor, precor.
 Non sum qualis eram bonae
 sub regno Cinarae. Desine, dulcium
 mater saeva Cupidinum, 5
 circa lustra decem¹ flectere mollibus
 iam durum imperiis; abi
 quo blanda iuvenum te revocant preces.
 Tempestivius in domum
 Pauli, purpureis ales oloribus, 10
 comissabere Maximi
 si torrere iecur quaeris idoneum.
 Namque et nobilis et decens
 et pro sollicitis non tacitus reis
 et centum puer artium 15
 late signa² feret militiae tuae,
 et quandoque potentior
 largi muneribus riserit aemuli,
 Albanos prope te lacus
 ponet marmoream sub trabe citrea. 20

aemulus, -ī, *m.*, rival
Albānus, -ā, -ūm, Alban, of Alba, an old town
 built according to legend, by Ascanius
āles, ālitis, winged
blandus, -ā, -ūm, charming, ingratiating, alluring
Cinara, -ae, *f.*, Cinara
circā (prep. + acc.), around, about
citreus, -ā, -ūm, made of citrus-wood; belonging
 to the citrus tree
cōmissor (1), revel; go carousing
Cupīdō, Cupīdinis, *m.*, Cupid; passion, desire
decem (indecl. numerical adj.), ten
decēns, -ēntis, seemly, beautiful
flectō, **flectere**, **flexi**, **flexus**, bend; change;
 influence
idōneus, -ā, -ūm, suitable, appropriate
iecur, **iecoris**, *n.*, liver
intermittō [*inter* + *mittō*], discontinue, interrupt; leave temporarily

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake
largus, -ā, -ūm, abundant, plentiful; rich,
 bountiful
lustrum, -ī, *n.*, ceremony of purification per-
 formed every five years; period of five years
marmoreus, -ā, -ūm, made of marble
olor, olōris, *m.*, swan
Paulus, -ī, Paulus Fabius Maximus, consul in
 11 B.C.
prex, **precis**, *f.*, prayer
prope (prep. + acc.), near, near to
purpureus, -ā, -ūm, dark red, crimson, purple
quandōque (conj.), at whatever time, whenever
reus, -ī, *m.*, defendant
sollicitus, -ā, -ūm, disturbed, uneasy, troubled
tempestivē (adv.), opportunely, seasonably
torreō, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostus**, parch, roast,
 scorch, burn
trabs, **trabis**, *f.*, beam (of wood), tree-trunk;
 tree

1. **circā lustra decem**, about fifty years old2. **signum**, here, standard

25

Illic plurima naribus
 duces¹ tura, lyraeque et Berecyntiae
 delectabere tibiae
 mixtis carminibus non sine fistula;
 illic bis pueri die
 numen cum teneris virginibus tuum
 laudantes pede candido
 in morem² Salium ter quatent humum.
 Me nec femina nec puer
 iam nec spes animi credula mutui
 nec certare iuvat mero
 nec vincire novis tempora³ floribus.
 Sed cur heu, Ligurine, cur
 manat rara meas lacrima per genas?
 Cur facunda parum decoro⁴
 inter verba cadit lingua silentio?
 Nocturnis ego somniis
 iam captum teneo, iam volucrem sequor
 te per gramina Martii
 Campi, te per aquas, dure, volubilis. 40

Berecyntius, -a, -um, of Berecyntus, a mountain in Phrygia, sacred to Cybele, the Earth Mother
bis (adv.), two times, twice
crēdulus, -a, -um, trusting, credulous
fācundus, -a, -um, eloquent
fistula, -ae, f., pipe, reed-pipe
gena, -ae, f., cheek
humus, -i, f. ground
Ligurīnus, -i, m., Ligurinus, addressee of the poem
lyra, -ae, f., lyre
mānō (1), trickle, drip; stream, flow
Martius Campus, **Martii Campi**, m., the Campus Martius, an area in Rome used for various exercises and for the assembly of the Roman people
mūtuus, -a, -um, borrowed, lent; reciprocal, mutual, shared

1. **dūcō**, here, inhale
 2. **in mōrem**, in the manner, according to the practice

nāris, **nāris**, -ium, f., nostril
nocturnus, -a, -um, at night, nocturnal
quatiō, **quatre**, —, **quassus**, shake, brandish; beat, strike
rārus, -a, -um, loose-knit; widely spaced; infrequent, rare
Salii, -ōrum, m., the Salii, a college of priests in the service of Mars, noted for their sumptuous processions through the city every March
somnium, -i, n., dream
tibia, -ae, f., pipe, flute
vinciō, **vincire**, **vīnxī**, **vinctus**, bind, tie; surround, encircle
volūbilis, -e, turning, rolling, flowing; changeable
volucer, **volucris**, **volucre**, winged; fleeting, swift

3. **tempora**, temples (of the head)
 4. Line 35 is hypermetric: the last syllable in line 35 elides with the first syllable in line 36.

Horace, *Carmina*

IV.2

Pindarum¹ quisquis studet aemulari,
Iule, ceratis ope² Daedalea
nititur pennis, vitreo daturus
nomina ponto.

Monte decurrens velut amnis, imbris
quem super notas aluere ripas,
fervet immensusque ruit profundo

Pindarus ore,

5

laurea donandus Apollinari,
seu per audacis nova dithyrambos
verba devolvit numerisque³ fertur

lege solutis,

10

aemular (1), rival, emulate
alō, alere, alui, altus or alitus, nourish, sup-

port; increase

Apollināris, -e, of Apollo

cératus, -a, -um, covered with wax, waxed

Daedalēus, -a, -um, of Daedalus, legendary
Athenian architect, father of Icarus, builder of
the Cretan labyrinth

dēvolvō, dēvolvere, dēvolvi, dēvolūtus, roll
down, roll forth

dithyrambus, -i, m., dithyramb, dithyrambic
poem; a frenzied and impassioned hymn in
honor of Bacchus (Dionysus), suggesting the
frenzy and madness of the god's orgiastic rites

ferveō, fervēre, ferbui, —, boil; seethe, surge

immēnsus, -a, -um, immeasurable, vast,
boundless, immense

Iūlus Antōnius, -i, m., Iulus Antonius, addres-

see of the poem, himself a poet

laurea, -ae, f., laurel (tree, branch, or garland)

nītor, nīti, nīxus or nīsus sum, rest upon, rely
on (+abl.)

penna, -ae, f., feather; wing

Pindarus, -i, m., Pindar, a Greek lyric poet

pontus, -i, m., sea

profundus, -a, -um, deep, profound

quisquis, quidquid (quicquid) (indef. pron.),
whoever, whatever

vitreus, -a, -um, of glass; brilliant, splendid

1. Pindar (518-438 B.C.) was perhaps the greatest of the Greek lyric poets. The only poems of his to survive in their entirety are the *Epinicia*, which commemorate victories in the

public games and are marked by linguistic difficulty and technical polish.

2. **ops**, here, aid, assistance

3. **numerus**, here, rhythm, meter

seu deos regesve canit, deorum
 sanguinem, per quos cecidere iusta
 morte Centauri, cecidit tremendae
 flamma Chimaerae,

15

sive quos Elea domum reducit
 palma caelestis pugilemve equumve
 dicit¹ et centum potiore signis²
 munere donat,

20

flebili sponsae iuvenemve raptum
 plorat et viris animumque moresque³
 aureos educit in astra nigroque³
 invidet Orco.

Multa Dircaeum levat aura cycnum,
 tendit, Antoni, quotiens in altos
 nubium tractus: ego apis Matinae
 more modoque

25

Antōnius, -ī, m., Antonius
apis, apis, -ium or -um, f., bee
caelestis, -e, heavenly, celestial, god-like
Centaurus, -ī, m., Centaur, a mythic creature,
 half man, half horse
Chimaera, -ae, f., a fabulous monster (part lion,
 part dragon, part goat) that vomited fire
cycnus or cygnus, -ī, m., swan
Dircaeus, -a, -um, Dircean; of Dirce, a fountain
 near Thebes, the city of Pindar's birth
Elēus, -a, -um, Elean, of Elis, district and city in
 the Peloponnesus, site of Olympic games
flebilis, -e, pitiable; plaintive; tearful
levō (1), lift up, raise, elevate
Matinus, -a, -um, Matinian, of *Matinus* (-ī, m.),
 a mountain in Apulia, where Horace was born

Orcus, -ī, m., Orcus, the underworld; the god of
 the infernal regions, Orcus or Pluto
palma, -ae, f., palm
palma Elēa, Elean palm, palm of victory
plōrō (1), weep for, mourn
potior, potius, better, superior, preferable
pugil, pugilis, m., boxer, puglist
reducō [*re + dūcō*], lead back, bring back,
 accompany
spōnsa, -ae, f., betrothed woman, bride
tractus, -ūs, m., course
tremendus, -a, -um, dreadful, formidable,
 tremendous

1. **dicō**, here, tell of, describe
 2. **signum**, here, statue
 3. Lines 22 and 23 are *hypermetric*: the last

syllable of line 22 elides with the first syllable
 of line 23, and the last syllable of line 23 elides
 with the first syllable of line 24.

- 30
- grata carpentis thyma per laborem
 plurimum circa nemus uvidique
 Tiburis ripas operosa parvus
 carmina fingo.
- 35
- Concines maiore poeta plectro
 Caesarem, quandoque trahet ferocis
 per sacrum clivum merita decorus
 fronde Sygambros,
- 40
- quo nihil maius meliusve terris
 fata donavere bonique divi
 nec dabunt, quamvis redeant in aurum
 tempora priscum.
- Concines laetosque dies et urbis
 publicum ludum super impetrato
 fortis Augusti reditu forumque
 litibus orbum.¹

Augustus, -i, m., Augustus
Caesar, Caesaris, m., Caesar; *here*, Augustus
 Caesar, whose triumphs over the Sygambri
 are celebrated
carpō, **carpere**, **carpsi**, **carptus**, pick, pluck;
 gather
circā (prep. + acc.), around, about
clivus, -i, m., slope, ascent, hill
concinō, **concinere**, **concinui**, —, celebrate in
 song
impetrō (1), gain one's request, obtain
līs, **lītis**, f., strife, dispute; lawsuit
lūdus, -i, m., play, game; place for exercise or
 practice
lūdus pūblicus, public game(s)
meritus, -a, -um, deserving; proper, deserved,
 just

orbus, -a, -um, deprived, bereft (+abl.)
plēctrum, -i, m., plectrum, instrument used for
 striking the strings of a lyre
priscus, -a, -um, of former times, old, ancient
quandōque (conj.), at whatever time, whenever
reditus, -ūs, m., return
Sygambri, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sygambri, a
 German tribe which resisted Roman rule in 16
 B.C., but hastily made peace when Augustus
 set out against them
thymum, -i, n., thyme
Tibur, Tiburis, n., Tibur, a town of Latium, on
 both sides of the Anio river, north-east of
 Rome (modern Tivoli)
ūvidus, -a, -um, moist, wet, damp

1. *orbus lītibus*, devoid of litigation, since law
 courts closed on public holidays

Tum meae, si quid loquar audiendum,
vocis accedet¹ bona pars, et "o Sol
pulcher, o laudande!"² canam, recepto
Caesare felix.

45

Tuque dum procedis, "io triumphe!"
non semel dicemus "io triumphe!"
civitas omnis, dabimusque divis
tura benignis.

50

Te decem tauri totidemque vaccae,
me tener solvet vitulus, reicta
matre qui largis iuvenescit herbis
in³ mea vota,

55

fronte curvatos imitatus ignis
tertium lunae referentis ortum,
qua⁴ notam duxit⁵ niveus videri,⁶
cetera fulvus.

60

-
- benignus**, -a, -um, kind, generous
Caesar, **Caesaris**, m., Caesar; *here*, Augustus
 Caesar
curvō (1), bend, curve
decem (indecl. numerical adj.), ten
fulvus, -a, -um, deep yellow, tawny
herba, -ae, f., grass
imitor (1), imitate, represent
io (interj. to express joy) **triumphe** [*triumphus*,
 -ī, m., triumph], ho triumph! (the cry of the
 people saluting the conqueror)
iuvenēscō, **iuvenēscere**, —, —, attain youth,
 grow up

1. **accēdō**, *here* and frequently, be added
2. "ō sōl pulcher, ō laudande!" "O beautiful
 sun (day), o (you) deserving to be praised!" is a
 rustic formula, often sung by soldiers.
3. **in**, *here*, for

- largus**, -a, -um, abundant, plentiful
niveus, -a, -um, snowy, snow-white
nota, -ae, f., mark, sign
ortus, -ūs, m., rising
semel (adv.), once, a single time; once and for
 all
tertius, -a, -um, third
totidem (indecl. numerical adj.), just so many,
 just as many
→tūs, **tūris**, n., incense, frankincense
vacca, -ae, f., cow, heifer
vitulus, -ī, m., male-calf, bull-calf
vōtum, -ī, n., pledge, prayer, vow
-

4. **quā**, *here*, adv., where
5. **dūcō**, *here*, produce
6. *vidērī*, epexegetical infinitive (see Moreland
 and Fleischer, page 381).

Horace, *Carmina*

IV.7

Diffugere nives, redeunt iam gramina campis
 arboribusque comae;
 mutat terra vices et decrescentia ripas
 flumina praetereunt;
 Gratia cum Nymphis geminisque sororibus audet 5
 ducere nuda choros.
 Immortalia ne speres, monet annus et alnum
 quae rapit hora diem:
 frigora mitescunt Zephyris, ver proterit aestas,
 interitura simul 10
 pomifer autumnus fruges effuderit, et mox
 bruma recurrit iners.
 Damna tamen celeres reparant caelestia lunae:
 nos ubi decidimus
 quo pater Aeneas, quo Tullus dives et Ancus, 15
 pulvis et umbra sumus.

aestās , -tatis, f., summer	iners , inertis , inactive, sluggish, motionless
almus , -a, -um, nourishing; bountiful	intereō [inter + eō], perish, be destroyed, dis-
Ancus , -i, m., Ancus Martius, fourth of the	appear
legendary kings of Rome	
autumnus , -i, m., autumn	mitēscō , mitēscere , —, —, grow mild,
brūma , -ae, f., winter	become gentle
caelestis , -e, heavenly, celestial, god-like	nūdus , -a, -um, bare, naked, nude
chorus , -i, m., dance, chorus, troop of dancers	nymphā , -ae, f., nymph
dāmnum , -i, n., injury, harm, loss	pōmifer , pōmifera , pōmiferum , fruit-bearing
dēcidō , dēcidere , dēcidi , —, fall down	praetereō [praeter + eō], go by, pass by; pass
dēcrēscō , dēcrēscere , dēcrēvi , dēcrētus ,	over
diminish, decrease	prōterō , prōtere , —, prōtritus , tread under
diffugiō [dis + fugiō], scatter	foot, tramp down
dives , divitis , rich, wealthy	pulvis , pulveris , m., dust
frūx , frūgis , f., fruit	reparō (1), recover, restore, repair
geminus , -a, -um, twin, double	Tullus , -i, m., Tullus Hostilius, third of the
Grātia , -ae, f., Grace, one of three goddesses of	legendary kings of Rome
charm and beauty, the attendants of Venus	* vīcis , vīcis , f., change, alternation, turn
	Zephyrus , -i, m., Zephyr, the West Wind

1. **coma**, here, foliage

Quis scit an adiciant¹ hodiernae crastina summae²
 tempora di superi?

Cuncta manus avidas fugient heredis, amico
 quae dederis³ animo.⁴

Cum semel occideris⁵ et de te splendida Minos
 fecerit arbitria,
 non, Torquate, genus, non te facundia, non te
 restituet pietas.

Infernus neque enim tenebris Diana pudicum
 liberat Hippolytum,
 nec Lethaea valet Theseus abrumpere caro
 vincula Pirithoo.

20

25

abrumpō, abrumpere, abrūpī, abruptus,
 break off, sever
adiciō, adicere, adiēci, adiectus, add to
 arbitrium, -i, n., judgment
avidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager, greedy
crāstinus, -a, -um, of tomorrow
Dīana, -ae, f., Diana, goddess of the moon and
 the hunt
fācundia, -ae, f., eloquence
hērēs, hērēdis, m. or f., heir, heiress
Hippolytus, -i, m., Hippolytus, son of Theseus
hodiernus, -a, -um, of today
infernus, -a, -um, lower, infernal
Lēthaeus, -a, -um, of Lethe, the river of forget-
 fulness in the underworld
Minōs, -ōis, m., Minos, judge (with Aeacus and
 Rhadamanthus) in the underworld

pietās, -tatis, f., dutifulness, devotion, loyalty
Pirithoūs, -i, m., Pirithous, friend of Theseus
pudicus, -a, -um, modest, chaste, pure
restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus,
 restore, revive
semel (adv.), once, a single time; once and for
 all
splendidus, -a, -um, brilliant, glittering; mag-
 nificent
tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., shadows, darkness
Thēseus, -i, m., Theseus, super-hero from
 Athenian myth and close friend of Pirithous
Torquātus, -i, m., Torquatus, addressee of the
 poem

1. *adiciant* scans *ādīciānt*. The first syllable is long because the *-i-* in syllable two is really a conflation of *-ī-*, both a consonantal and a vocalic *-i-* (consider the etymology of the word, from *ad+iaciō*, so, *adiiciō*). As a result, the *a-* is felt to be followed by two consonants and the word might well have been written *adictiant*.

2. **summa, -ae, f.,** sum, whole, total
 3. The final syllable here scans *long*: *dederīs*.
 4. *amīcō . . . antmō*, "to your own soul"
 5. The final syllable here scans *long*: *occiderīs*.

Appendix:

*Selected Rhetorical
and
Grammatical Terms*

Selected Rhetorical Terms

"Figurative language" is a term used to describe any deviation from the ordinary significance or sequence of words whose purpose is to create special meaning or effect. Such deviations, called *figures*, were classically described as "ornaments" of language, but the modern student of language and literature should in no way think of figures as mere accessories to meaning, like rings or bracelets, to be slipped on or off for a passing occasion. They are fundamental and integral to the classical use of language, indispensable not only to poetry, but to all modes of discourse.

Among ancient rhetoricians, most notably the Roman Quintilian [in his *Institutes of Oratory*, Books 8 and 9], figurative language was usually divided into (1) *figures of thought*, or tropes (from Greek, meaning "turns" or "conversions"), and (2) *figures of speech*, or schemes (from Greek, meaning "shapes" or "arrangements"). The distinction is not always a precise one, nor do ancient authorities always agree in dividing the various kinds of figurative language. In a trope, words are used in a way that results in a conspicuous change in their ordinary meaning. (The ordinary meaning of a word is its *literal meaning*, in contrast to its *tropic meaning*.) In a figure of speech, the deviation from ordinary language is primarily in the order of the words rather than in their meaning.

alliteration: repetition of the same sound at the beginning of several words in sequence:

Sober he seemde, and very sagely sad.

Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, I.i.29, line 5

O wild West Wind, thou breath of Autumn's being...

Shelley, "Ode to the West Wind," line 1

Interea magno misceri murmure caelum...

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.160

Various other repetitions of speech sounds are identified by special terms. **Consonance** is the repetition of a sequence of consonants, but with a change in the intervening stressed vowel (e.g., "I cannot leave my love and live"). **Assonance** is the repetition of identical or similar vowel sounds (especially in stressed syllables) in a sequence of nearby words (e.g., the long *i* sound in the opening lines of Keats's "Ode on a Grecian Urn": "Thou still unravished bride of quietness,/ Thou foster child of silence and slow time"). **Rhyme** itself depends generally on the special combination of consonance and assonance.

anacoluthon: lack of grammatical sequence; a sharp change of grammatical construction within the same sentence:

Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,
That he which hath no stomach to this fight,
Let him depart.

Shakespeare, *Henry V*, IV, iii

Quis novus hic nostris successit sedibus hospes,
quem sese ore ferens, quam forti pectore et armis!

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.10-11

anadiplosis (*geminatio*): doubling, immediate repetition of a word; using the last word of one clause to begin the next clause

The same that oft-times hath
 Charm'd magic casements, opening on the foam
 Of perilous seas, in faery lands forlorn.
 Forlorn! the very word is like a bell
 To toll me back from thee to my sole self.

Keats, "Ode to a Nightingale," 68-72

Senatus haec intellegit, consul videt; hic tamen vivit. Vivit?
 Immo vero etiam in senatum venit....

Cicero, *In Catilinam*, I.2

anaphora: the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive phrases, clauses, or lines

'Phebus,' quod he, 'for al thy worthynesse,
 For al thy beautee and thy gentilesse
 For al thy song and al they minstralcye,
 For al thy waiting, blered is thyn ye.'

Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*,
 "Manciple's Tale," 249-252

monstrum horrendum, ingens, cui quot sunt corpore plumae,
 tot vigiles oculi subter (mirabile dictu),
 tot linguae, totidem ora sonant, tot subrigit auris.

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.181-183

anastrophe: (1) properly, the transposition of two words; most frequently found in Latin in the case of prepositions and the words they control (e.g., *te propter* for *propter te*). In a broader sense, anastrophe is a form of hyperbaton. (2) Sometimes used as a synonym for anadiplosis, *q.v.*

The helmsman steered, the ship moved on;
 Yet never a breeze up blew . . .

Coleridge, "Rime of the Ancient Mariner," V, 45-6

Oceani finem iuxta solemque cadentem
 Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.480

antithesis: opposition, or contrast of ideas or words in a balanced or parallel construction

Thou kill'st me in his life; giving him breath,
 The traitor lives, the true man's put to death.
 Shakespeare, *Richard II*, V.iii.72-73

tam facti pravique tenax quam nuntia veri...
 Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.188

aposiopesis: breaking off before the close of a sentence

Yet I fear him,
 For in the ingrafted love he bears to Caesar—
 Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*, II.i.183-184

Quos ego—! sed motos praestat componere fluctus.
 Vergil, *Aeneid*, 1.135

apostrophe (*aversio*): breaking off discourse to address directly some person or thing either present or absent

And am I then revenged,
To take him in the purging of his soul,
When he is fit and seasoned for his passage?
No!
Up, sword, and know thou a more horrid hent . . .

Shakespeare, *Hamlet*, III.iii.84-88

illa subit mediaeque minans inlabitur urbi.
O patria, O divum domus Ilium . . .

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 2.240-241

archaism: the use of an old or obsolete form

But come thou Goddess fair and free,
In Heav'n yclep'd Euphrosyne...
Milton, "L'Allegro," 11-12

excubias divum aeternas . . .
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.201

asyndeton (*dissolutio*): the omission of conjunctions between phrases, clauses, or words

Faynt, wearie, sore, emboyled, grieved, brent
With heat, toyle, wounds, armes, smart, and inward fire...
Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, I.xi.28, lines 1-2

ancora de prora jacitur, stant litora puppes.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 3.277

huc illuc volvens oculos totumque pererrat . . .
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.363

brachylogy (*breviloquentia*): general term for abbreviated or condensed expression, of which asyndeton, ellipsis, syllepsis, and zeugma are types. Usually the missing word or words are to be supplied from another word or words in the context.

Some for the Glories of This World; and some
Sigh for the Prophet's Paradise to come...
Fitzgerald (trans.), *Rubaiyat of Omar Khayyam*, xi

. . . aut graviora timet quam morte Sychaei
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.502

catachresis (*abusio*): implied metaphor, using words wrenched from common usage and applied beyond their strict sphere of reference

Wind whose soft-tickling genitals rub against me it shall be you!
Whitman, "Song of Myself," *Leaves of Grass*, 541

I will speak daggers to her, but use none.
Shakespeare, *Hamlet*, III.ii.396

indulge hospitio causasque innecte morandi
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.51

. . . vocemque his auribus hausit
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.359

chiasmus (*commutatio*): the term derives from the Greek letter X (chi) and involves two corresponding pairs arranged not in parallel but in inverted order

... what Timotheus was, is Dryden now.

Pope, *Essay on Criticism*, II, 382-383

...pars agmina cogunt

castigantque moras, opere omnis semita fervet

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.406-407

clausula: rhythmic close of a sentence in prose

Quod ego praetermitto et facile patior sileri
ne in hac civitate tanti facinoris immanitas aut
exstisisse aut non vindicata esse videatur.

Cicero, *Oratio in Catilinam*, I.14.2

climax (*gradatio*): a steady increase or expansion of emphasis, meaning, and weight in successive parallel phrases or clauses, repeating the same word or sound in each succeeding phrase or clause – an intensified form of anadiplosis.

One equal temper of heroic hearts,
Made weak by time and fate, but strong in will
To strive, to seek, to find, and not to yield.

Tennyson, "Ulysses," 68-70

We rejoice in our sufferings, knowing that suffering produces endurance, and endurance produces character, and character produces hope, and hope does not disappoint us . . .

Romans, v.3-4

Nihilne te nocturnum praesidium Palati, nihil urbis vigiliae,
nihil timor populi, nihil concursus bonorum omnium, nihil hic
munitissimus habendi senatus locus, nihil horum ora vultusque
moverunt?

Cicero, *Oratio in Catilinam*, I.1, lines 3-6

By contrast, an **anticlimax** descends from the emphatic to the less important or even trivial, often building to the penultimate term in a listing whose ultimate term detracts rather than adding to the emphasis. (A dictionary prepared by Harvard scholars offers as example: "For God, for country, and for Yale."

elision: omission in scansion of a final vowel, diphthong, or vowel + "m" before a word beginning with a vowel or "h."

I shall th'effect of this good counsel keep . . .

Shakespeare, *Hamlet*, I.iii.45

ut mihi, quem nemo gravius nec acerbius urget

quam modo qui me unum atque unicum amicum habuit.

Catullus, LXXIII.5-6

ellipsis: omission of a grammatical element essential to complete the sense

And he to England shall along with you.

Shakespeare, *Hamlet*, III.iii.4

dum pelago desaevit hiems et aquosus Orion,
quassataeque rates, dum non tractabile caelum.

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.52-53

enallage: substitution of one case, person, gender, number, tense, mood, or part of speech, for another

... father and mother is man and wife, man and wife is one flesh . . .
Shakespeare, *Hamlet*, IV.iv.51-52

it nigrum campis agmen praedamque per herbas
convevant calle angusto: pars grandia trudunt . . .
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.404-405

figura etymologica: use of different words having the same root. If done with punning effect, where difference of form creates difference of meaning, as in the example from Milton, the figure is *antanaclasts*. If different cases of a noun or pronoun are used, the figure is *polyptoton*, q.v.

But lest I should be condemned of introducing license,
when I oppose licensing . . .
Milton, *Areopagitica*

Nondum amabam, et amare amabam, quaerebam quid amarem,
amans amare.

St. Augustine, *Confessiones*, III.i

hellenism (graecismus): use of Greek forms or constructions. While this term is more pertinent to Latin poetry than to English, it is applicable to the use of Greek phrases and terms in a modern poet such as Ezra Pound.

Even the Christian beauty
Defects — after Samothrace;
We see τὸ καλόν
Decreed in the market-place.
Pound, "Hugh Selwyn Mauberly," III, 45-58

instauratque choros, mixtique altaria circum
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.145

hendiadys: the use of two nouns and a conjunction instead of a single noun modified by an adjective

I love the Lord, because he hath heard my voice and my
supplications

Psalms, 116.1

. . . paulum lacrimis et mente morata
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.649

homoeoteleuton: repetition of the same ending on several words; more strictly, on words that conclude phrases or clauses; in English, synonymous with *rhyme*

By adding one thing to my purpose nothing.
Shakespeare, *Sonnets*, XX.12

Quid proxima, quid superiore nocte egeris, ubi fueris,
quos convocaveris, quid consili ceperis, quem nostrum
ignorare arbitraris?

Circero, *In Catilinam*, I.6

hypallage: (1) a transferred epithet (e.g., "a hot cup of coffee" for "a cup of hot coffee"); (2) the grammatical agreement of a word with another word which it does not logically qualify

But wherefore let we then our faithful friends,
The associates and co-partners of our loss,
Lie thus astonished on the oblivious pool . . .
Milton, *Paradise Lost*, I.264-266

Massylique ruunt equites et odora canum vis
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.132

Audiit exanimis trepidoque exterrita cursu
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.672

hyperbaton: the transposition of words out of normal order

. . . that whiter skin of hers than snow . . .
Shakespeare, *Othello*, V.ii.5

Speluncam Dido dux et Troianus eandem
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.124 and 165
spumantemque dari pecora inter intertia votis
optat aprum, aut fulvum descendere monte leonem.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.318-319

hyperbole: exaggeration for emphasis or for rhetorical effect

And the seas of pity lie
Locked and frozen in each eye.
Auden, "In Memory of W. B. Yeats," 23-24

Franguntur remi, tum proira avertit et undis
dat latus, insequitur cumulo praeruptus aquae mons.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 1.104-105

hypotaxis: syntactical subordination (opposite of *parataxis*)

hysteron proteron: a temporal reversal of the natural or logical sequence of events

Th'Antoniad, the Egyptian admiral,
With all their sixty, fly and turn the rudder.
Shakespeare, *Antony and Cleopatra*, III.x.2-3

Migrantis cernas totaque ex urbe ruentis.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.401
. . . Moriamur et in media arma ruamur.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 2.353

isocolon: a clause equal in length to the preceding one (usually in the number of syllables, but sometimes in the number of words)

[Romeo:] Have not saints lips, and holy palmers too?
[Juliet:] Ay, pilgrim, lips that they must use in pray'r.
Shakespeare, *Romeo and Juliet*, I.v.101-102

Dicit Servius, negat Tullius.
Cicero, in Quintilian, *Institutio Oratoria*, IX.iii.22

kuklos: beginning and ending a clause or sentence with the same word or phrase; also called *epanalepsis*

Blood hath bought blood, and blows have answer'd blows;
Strength match'd with strength, and power confronted power.
Shakespeare, *King John*, II.i.329-330

Superiora illa, quamquam ferenda non fuerunt, tamen,
ut potui, tuli; nunc vero me totam esse in metu propter
unum te; quicquid increpuerit, Catilinam timeri; nullum
videri contra me consilium iniri posse, quod a tuo scelere
abhorreat, non est ferendum.

Cicero, *In Catilinam*, I.18

litotes: affirmation expressed by the negation of its opposite; deliberate understatement, often ironic

To write, is indeed, no unpleasing employment.
Johnson, *Adventurer*, No. 138

Last week I saw a woman flayed, and you will hardly believe
how much it altered her appearance for the worse.

Swift, *A Tale of the Tub*
cum sic unanimam adloquitur male sana sororem
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.8

metaphor: an implied comparison between two things of unlike nature that yet have something in common

Life's but a walking shadow; a poor player,
That struts and frets his hour upon the stage
Shakespeare, *Macbeth*, V.v.24-25

Quam simul ac tali persensit peste teneri
cara Iovis coniunx nec famam obstare furori
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.90-91

At vero nos vicesimum iam diem patimur hebescere
aciem horum auctoritatis.
Cicero, *In Catilinam*, I.4

metonymy: the use of the name of one thing for another thing to which it is closely related

. . . I, that with my sword
Quarter'd the world, and o'er green Neptune's back
With ships made cities . . .
Shakespeare, *Antony and Cleopatra*, IV.xiv.57-58

The student may read Homer or Aeschylus in the Greek without
danger of dissipation or luxuriousness . . .
Thoreau, *Walden* ("Reading")

et mediis properas Aquilonibus ire per altum
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.310

Postera Phoebea lustrabat lampade terras
umentemque Aurora polo dimoverat umbram
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.6-7

onomatopoeia: the use of words to imitate the sound which they represent

The moan of doves in immemorial elms,
And murmuring of innumerable bees.

Tennyson, *The Princess*, VII.206-207

... summaque ulularunt vertice nymphae
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.168

At tuba terribili sonitu taratantara dixit.
Ennius 451

oxymoron: an apparent paradox achieved by the juxtaposition of words which seem to contradict one another

I must be cruel only to be kind.
Shakespeare, *Hamlet*, III.iv.178

O miserable abundance, O beggarly riches!
Donne, *Devotions Upon Emergent Occasions*

neququam horremus, caecique in nubibus ignes
terrificant animos et inania murmura miscent?

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.209-210

... cum tacent, clamant . . .
Cicero, *In Catilinam*, 1.21

parataxis: syntactical coordination (opposite of *hypotaxis*)

paronomasia: the use of words of similar sound; a pun or play on words

Thou art Peter (Greek = Petros) and upon this rock
(Greek = petra) I will build my church.
Matthew, xvi:18

Were it not here apparent that thou art heir apparent...
Shakespeare, *1 Henry IV*, I.ii.

gaudens, et pariter facta atque infecta canebat
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.190

Illam Terra parens ira irritata deorum
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.178

period, periodic sentence: strictly, any complete sentence; but applied usually to a sentence the clauses of which are arranged to arouse expectation of meaning not fulfilled until the close

pleonasm: the use of superfluous or redundant words

He hears with ears.
Shakespeare, *The Merry Wives of Windsor*, I.i.148

This was the most unkindest cut of all . . .
Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*, III.ii.183

His etiam struxi manibus patriosque vocavi
voce deos, sic te ut posita, crudelis, abessem.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.680-681

Nam oculis nostris videmus.
Selection from *Gesta Romanorum*, line 40

polypptoton: the use of a noun or pronoun in several cases; in English, the repetition of words derived from the same root (see *figura etymologica*)

The Greeks are strong, and skillful to their strength.
Fierce to their skill, and to their fierceness valiant . . .
Shakespeare, *Troilus and Cressida*, I.i.7-8

Pater hic tuus? patrem nunc appellas? patris tui filius es?
Rutilius, in Quintilian, *Institutio Oratoria*, IX.36

polysyndeton: the use of many conjunctions between words, phrases, or clauses (opposite of *asyndeton*)

[Satan] pursues his way,
And swims or sinks, or wades, or creeps, or flies . . .
Milton, *Paradise Lost*, II.949-950

The ice was all around:
It cracked and growled, and roared and howled,
Like noises in a swound!

Coleridge, "The Rime of the Ancient Mariner," 61-63

Cretesque Dryopesque fremunt pictique Agathyrsi:
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.146

omnia Mercurio similis, vocemque coloremque
et crinis flavos et membra decora iuventae
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.558-559

praeteritio: the statement of facts by pretended omission

Let but the commons hear this testament—
Which, pardon me, I do not mean to read—
And they would go and kiss dead Caesar's wounds . . .
Have patience, gentle friends, I must not read it.
It is not meet you know how Caesar loved you.
'Tis good you know not that you are his heirs . . .

Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*, III.ii.130-145

Nam illa nimis antiqua praetereo, quod C. Servilius Ahala
Sp. Maelium novis rebus studentem manu sua occidit.
Cicero, *In Catilinam*, I.3

prolepsis: the anticipatory use of an epithet, applying as if already true what only becomes true afterward; also, positioning a relative clause before its antecedent

So the two brothers and their murder'd man
Rode past fair Florence . . .
Keats, *Isabella*, 209-210

et recidiva manu posuisse Pergama victis
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.344

Vixi et quem dederat cursum fortuna peregi,
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.653

. . . tu cum conscientia scelerum tuorum agnoscas odium omnium
iustum et iam diu tibi debitum, dubitas, quorum mentes sensusque
vulneras, eorum aspectum praesentiamque vitare?
Cicero, *In Catilinam*, 1.17

prosopopoeia: (1) personification, investing abstractions or inanimate objects with human qualities or abilities; (2) the representation of an imaginary or absent person as speaking or acting

- (1) Earth felt the wound, and Nature from her seat
Sighing through all her Works gave signs of woe,
That all was lost.

Milton, *Paradise Lost*, XI.782-784

- ... concussam bacchatur Fama per urbem.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.666

... si mecum patria, quae mihi vita mea multo est
carior, si cuncta Italia, si omnis res publica loquatur:
"M. Tulli, quid agis? . . ."

Cicero, *In Catilinam*, I.27

- (2) Qui profecto, si exstiterit, sic aget ac sic loquetur:
"Mulier, quid tibi cum Caelio, quid cum homine adulescentulo,
quid cum alieno? . . ."

Cicero, *Pro Caelio*, 34

simile: an explicit comparison between two things, using 'like' or 'as'

She walks in beauty, like the night
Of cloudless climes and starry skies;
Byron, "She Walks in Beauty," 1-2

My love is as a fever, longing still
For that which longer nurseth the disease,
Shakespeare, *Sonnets*, 147.1-2

... hinc toto paeceps se corpore ad undas
misit avi similis, quae circum litora, circum
piscosos scopulos humilis volat aequora iuxta.
Haud aliter terras inter caelumque volabat
litus harenosum ad Libyae, ventosque secabat
materno veniens ab avo Cyllenia proles.

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.253-258

syllepsis: two nouns governed by a verb or adjective that shifts in sense when applied to both

Or stain her honour or her new brocade . . .
Pope, *The Rape of the Lock*, II.107-109

et quicquid usquam concipitur nefas
tractavit . . .
Horace, *Odes*, 2.13.8-10

sola viri mollis aditus et tempora noras.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.423

synchysis: interlocking word order

Thy end is truth's and beauty's doom and date.
Shakespeare, *Sonnets*, XIV.13-14

At regina gravi iamdudum saucia cura
vulnus alit venis et caeco carpitur igni.
Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.1-2

syncope: the contraction or omission of a syllable from the middle of a word

The which she kepte in vertu and letrre [= lett(e)rure]

Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*, "Monk's Tale," 2295-96

ne cui me vinclo vellem sociare iugali . . . [vinclo = vinculo]

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.16

synecdoche: understanding one thing for another, the use of a part for the whole or whole for the part

Give us this day our daily bread

Matthew, vi.11

I should have been a pair of ragged claws

Scuttling across the floors of silent seas.

Eliot, "The Love Song of J. Alfred Prufrock," 73-74

tecta metu petiere

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.164

hunc cursum Iliacas vento tenuisse carinas.

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.46

synesis (constructio ad sensum): agreement of words according to logic and not the grammatical form

For the wages of sin is death.

Romans, vi.23

...pars grandia trudunt
obnixae frumenta umeris, pars agmina cogunt
castigantque moras, opere omnis semita fervet.

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 4.405-407

tricolon: three-limbed structure

variatio: variation in expression, often creating a balanced imbalance (e.g., "both in war and when peace had come")

zeugma: similar to the figure of *syllepsis*, but whereas in *syllepsis* the single word is grammatically and idiomatically compatible with both of the other words that it governs, in a *zeugma* the single word does not fit grammatically or idiomatically with one member of the pair. Skillfully managed, *zeugma* may be impressive as a display of wit, but more often is merely a faulty use of *syllepsis*. The terms are often confused, and *zeugma* is commonly used to cover both.

He took her to bed, turning out the lights and his morals.

Dunham, *Victorian Nights*, Ch. 2

Kill the boys and the luggage!

Shakespeare, *Henry V*, IV.vii.1

inclusos utero Danaos et pinea furtim

laxat claustra Sinon . . .

Vergil, *Aeneid*, 2.258-259

A List of Some Roman Emperors

Julio-Claudians	{ Augustus (27 B.C.-14 A.D.) Tiberius (14 A.D.-37 A.D.) Caligula (Gaius) (37 A.D.-41 A.D.) Claudius (41 A.D.-54 A.D.) Nero (54 A.D.-68 A.D.) Galba (68 A.D.-69 A.D.) Otho (69 A.D.) Vitellius (69 A.D.)
Flavians	{ Vespasian (69 A.D.-79 A.D.) Titus (79 A.D.-81 A.D.) Domitian (81 A.D.-96 A.D.) Nerva (96 A.D.-98 A.D.) Trajan (98 A.D.-117 A.D.) Hadrian (117 A.D.-138 A.D.)
	Marcus Aurelius (161 A.D.-180 A.D.) Diocletian (284 A.D.-305 A.D.) Constantine (306 A.D.-337 A.D.)

A Time Line for Reference

Historical Notes	Greek	Prose	Latin	Poetry	Latin
Founding of Rome (753 B.C.)				Homer (9th cent. B.C. ?) Hesiod (8th cent. B.C. ?)	
Golden Age of Greece (5th century B.C.)	Herodotus (480-425 B.C.) Thucydides (c.460-c.400B.C.)			Greek Lyric Writers Alcaeus, Sappho, etc., flourished c.600 B.C. Aeschylus (525-456 B.C.)	
Fourth Century B.C.	Plato (427-348 B.C.) Aristotle (384-322 B.C.)			Pindar (c.518-443 B.C.) Sophocles (496-406 B.C.) Euripides (c.480-406 B.C.) Aristophanes (c.448-c.380 B.C.)	
Death of Alexander the Great (323 B.C.)				Greek New Comedy Menander (343-292 B.C.) Diphilus (4th cent. B.C.)	
Rome controls all Italy (265 B.C.)				Callimachus (c.310 B.C.-?) Apollontius of Rhodes (c.295-215 B.C.) Theocritus (fl. c.270 B.C.)	
First Punic War (264-241 B.C.)					Livius Andronicus (c.284-204 B.C.)
Second Punic War (218-202 B.C.)		Ennius (239-169 B.C.) Cato (234-149 B.C.)			Naevius (c.270-201 B.C.)
Destruction of Carthage and Corinth (146 B.C.)					Plautus (254-184 B.C.)
Consulship of Cicero (63 B.C.)		Cicero (106-43 B.C.)			Ennius (239-169 B.C.)
Death of Julius Caesar (44 B.C.)		Caesar (102-44 B.C.)			Terence (195-159 B.C.)
Battle of Actium (31 B.C.)		Sallust (86-35 B.C.)			
Principate of Augustus (27 B.C.-14 A.D.)		Livy (59B.C.-17 A.D.)			Publilius Syrus (100-50 B.C.)
					Lucretius (94-55 B.C.)
					Catullus (c.84-c.54 B.C.)
					Gallus (70-26 B.C.)
					Vergil (70-19 B.C.)
					Horace (65-8 B.C.)
					Tibullus (60-19 B.C.)

Historical Notes	Prose		Poetry	
	Greek	Latin	Greek	Latin
Conquest of Britain Begun (43 A.D.)				Ovid (43 B.C.-18 A.D.)
Principate of Nero (54-68 A.D.)		Seneca (4 B.C.-65 A.D.)		Seneca (4 B.C.-65 A.D.)
Murder of Agrippina (59 A.D.)		Petronius (?-66 A.D.)		
Fire at Rome (64 A.D.)				
Late 1st-2nd Centuries A.D.		Quintilian (35-96 A.D.)		Lucan (39-65 A.D.)
Capture of Jerusalem by Titus (70 A.D.)	Plutarch (46-120 A.D.)	Tacitus (c.54-? A.D.)		Statius (c. 40-96 A.D.)
Pompeii, Herculaneum destroyed (79 A.D.)		Pliny the Younger (61-113 A.D.)		Martial (40-104 A.D.)
	Lucian (c.115-200 A.D.)	Suetonius (70-160 A.D.)		Juvenal (65-140 A.D.)
Constantine converts to Christianity (312 A.D.)		Apuleius (123-170 A.D.)		
Council of Nicea (325 A.D.)		Tertullian (c.150-230 A.D.)		
Constantinople Adopted as Capital (330 A.D.)		Cyprian (c.200-258 A.D.)		
Sack of Rome by Alaric (410 A.D.)		Lactantius (born c.250 A.D.)		
Vandals Plunder Rome (455 A.D.)		St. Gregory of Nyssa (Gregory the Great; c.331-c.396 A.D.)		
End of Western Empire (476 A.D.)		St. Ambrose (c.340-397 A.D.)		
Schools of Athens Closed (529 A.D.)		St. Jerome (c.340-420 A.D.)		
		St. Augustine (354-430 A.D.)		
		Boethius (c.480-524 A.D.)		
		St. Gregory of Tours (538-594 A.D.)		

A List of Arrowed Words

- abs** = *ab* [50]
adhūc (adv.), up to this time [45]
adipiscor, **adipisci**, **adeptus sum**, reach, attain, obtain, get [66]
aequitās, **-tatis**, *f.*, evenness, calmness; equity, fairness [67]
agmen, **-minis**, *n.*, line; throng; train [93]
aliquandō (adv.), at some time or other; *in commands and purposes*, now at last [47]
ambitiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, the soliciting of votes; flattery, adulation, favoritism; desire for power, ambition [68]
amplus, **-a**, **-um**, large; great, distinguished [43]
apertē (adv.), openly [43]
armō (1), arm [93]
asper, **aspera**, **asperum**, harsh, hard; adverse, perilous [68]
at (conj.), but [44, 84]
augeō, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus**, increase, grow; strengthen [64]
auspiciūm, **-i**, *n.*, divination by the flight of birds; portent, sign [138]
avāritia, **-ae**, *f.*, greed, avarice [67]
avis, **avis**, **-ium**, *f.*, bird [134]
beneficiūm, **-i**, *n.*, favor, benefit, service, kindness [68]
brevis, **-e**, brief, short [56]
c(h)arta, **-ae**, *f.*, leaf (of papyrus), document [123]
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium**, *f.*, slaughter [42]
candidus, **-a**, **-um**, white, clear, bright, radiant [205]
caput, **capitis**, *n.*, head [100]
castra, **-ōrum**, *n. pl.*, military camp [44]
Catilina, **-ae**, *m.*, Catiline [42]
M. Catō, **Catōnis**, *m.*, Marcus Cato [76]
certō (1), struggle, contest, strive [67]
cēterī, **-ae**, **-a**, other, the rest [46]
circā (prep. + acc.), around; (adv.) around, round about, all around [103]
clāmor, **-ōris**, *m.*, shouting [93]
cohors, **cohortis**, **-ium**, *f.*, company of soldiers, division of the army, cohort [78]
commoveō [*com+moveō*], stir up, set in motion [45]
commūnis, **-e**, common, shared; held in common [48]
comperiō, **comperire**, **comperi**, **compertus**, find out, learn [47]
complūrēs, **-a** or **-ia**, several, very many [46]
cōnflo (1), kindle, inflame; assemble, acquire [54]
coniūrāti, **-ōrum**, *m. pl.*, conspirators [48]
coniūrātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, conspiracy [42]
cōnscientia, **-ae**, *f.*, consciousness, awareness [51]
cōspectus, **-ūs**, *m.*, sight, view [84]
cōsul dēsignātus, **cōsulis dēsignātī**, *m.*, consul-elect [48]
cōsulāris, **cōsulāris**, **-ium**, *m.*, ex-consul [43]
cōsulātus, **-ūs**, *m.*, consulship [56]
cōsultum, **-i**, *n.*, decree [43]
- contineō** [*con+teneō*], hold in, enclose; hold back [45]
cor, **cordis**, *n.*, heart [105]
cōram (prep. + abl.), in the presence of, before [112]
corrumpō, **corrumpere**, **corrūpi**, **corruptus**, destroy, ruin; corrupt, entice [63]
crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvi**, **crētus**, grow, increase [44]
cūnctus, **-a**, **-um**, all [56]
cupiditās, **-tatis**, *f.*, desire, greed [55]
cupidō, **cupidinis**, *f.*, desire, passion [68]
cupiō, **cupere**, **cupivī** or **cupiī**, **cupitus**, want, desire [43]
dēcernō, **dēcernere**, **dēcrevī**, **dēcretus**, decree, decide, vote [43]
decus, **decoris**, *n.*, grace, beauty; honor, glory; moral dignity [75]
dēdecus, **dēdecoris**, *n.*, shame, disgrace [86]
dēfunctus, **-a**, **-um**, deceased, dead [123]
deinde (adv.), then, next, afterwards [58, 84]
dēlectō (1), delight, please, charm [90]
dēlūbrum, **-i**, *n.*, shrine [69]
dēmum (adv.), at length, at last; precisely, only tum **dēmum**, only then [61]
dēsidia, **-ae**, *f.*, idleness, inactivity, sloth [62]
dētrahō, **dētrahere**, **dētrāxi**, **dētractus**, drag down; remove, strip [86]
digitus, **-i**, *m.*, finger [186]
diversus, **-a**, **-um**, opposite, separate, different [99]
divorsus (= *diversus*), **-a**, **-um**, turned different ways; opposite, separate, different [61]
dominatiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, absolute rule, tyranny [64]
ecce (interj.), lo! behold! [103]
ēducō (1), bring up, rear [84]
egestās, **-tatis**, *f.*, indigence, need, want [72]
cōdēm (adv.), to the same place [46]
eques, **equitis**, *m.*, knight, horseman [47]
ergō (adv.), therefore [102]
ēripō, **ēripere**, **ēripui**, **ēreptus**, tear away, snatch away, take away [52]
etenim (conj.), and indeed, in fact [45]
exerceō, **exercēre**, **exercui**, **exercitus**, keep busy, occupy; exercise, train [55, 102]
existimō [*ex+aestimō*], think, reckon [57]
exitium, **-i**, *n.*, destruction, ruin [47]
exsilium, **-i**, *n.*, exile [49]
extrēmus, **-a**, **-um**, remotest, farthest, utmost, last [100]
faciēs, **-et**, *f.*, appearance, face [84]
facinus, **facinoris**, *n.*, deed; crime [49]
falsus, **-a**, **-um**, false [52]
familiāris, **-e**, of or belonging to the household [64]; **familiāris**, **-e**, of or belonging to the household; intimate, friendly; (*subst.*), friend, intimate acquaintance [90]
ferōx, **ferōcis**, fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant [203]
finḡō, **fingere**, **finxi**, **fictus**, form, fashion, make; imagine [61]
flāgitium, **-i**, *n.*, shame, outrage, disgrace [49]
flōs, **flōris**, *m.*, flower, blossom [200]

- fortūna, -ae, f.**, fortune, chance [55]
frigus, frigoris, n., cold, coldness, chill; cold weather [205]
fruor, frui, fructus sum, derive enjoyment from, enjoy, delight in (+abl.) [61]
furor, -ōris, m., madness [42]
grāmen, -minis, n., grass; pasture [211]
grātia, -ae, f., favor; gratitude, thanks [48]
haud (adv.), not at all, by no means [62]
hūmānus, -a, -um, human [62]
ideō (adv.), for this reason [91]
imber, imbris, m., rain; water [213]
immō (adv.), denying or correcting a previous assertion or question, no, on the contrary [105]
impendeō, impendēre, —, —, hang over, threaten (+dat.) [49]
improbus, -a, -um, wicked, immoral; shameless, wanton [45]
incēdō [*in* + *cēdō*], advance, proceed; stride; appear [66]
incendium, -i, n., fire [43]
inceptum, -i, n., beginning, undertaking; purpose, subject [63]
inde (adv.), from there; thereupon, then [104]
infestus, -a, -um, hostile, harmful [48]
initium, -i, n., beginning [61]
iniūria, -ae, f., injury, injustice; **iniūriā** (abl. sing. as adv.), unjustifiably, unjustly [51]; injury, insult; injustice [86]
immūtō (= *immūtō*) [*in* + *mūtō*], change, alter, transform [69]
inopia, -ae, f., lack of resources, poverty; lack [56]
insidior (1), lie in wait for, plot against (+dat.) [48]
intentus, -a, -um, intent, occupied; earnest, serious [62]
intrā (prep.+acc.), within [44]
item (adv.), similarly, in turn, likewise [76]
iūcundus, -a, -um, pleasing, delightful, agreeable [151]
iūdicō (1), judge, form an opinion [51]
iūstus, -a, -um, just, fair, right; well-founded [51]; just, fair, right [118]
Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl., Kalends, first of the month [45]
labor, -ōris, m., work, exertion; trouble, effort [55]
latrōcinium, -i, n., criminality [54]
lectus, -i, m., bed, couch [98]
libidō, libidinis, f., desire, pleasure, passion, lust [49]
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language [68]
luxuria, -ae, f., extravagance, excess, luxury [64]
magnificus, -a, -um, magnificent, splendid [67]
Manlius, -i, m., Gaius Manlius [54]
meditor (1), consider; intend; devise [54]
memorō (1), mention, recount, tell [63]
merum, -i, n., unmixed wine [205]
militia, -ae, f., military service; warfare; war; soldiery [67]
modestia, -ae, f., moderation, self-restraint, temperance [69]
mollis, -e, gentle, mild, soft [57]
mortalis, -e, mortal [68]
mulier, mulieris, f., woman [90]
mūnus, mūneris, n., service, tribute; gift [178]
mūrus, -i, m., (city) wall [47]
namque (conj.), for in fact [68]
nārrō (1), tell, relate [124]
nātiō, -ōnis, f., race, nation, tribe [68]
nefārius, -a, -um, unspeakable, wicked [45]
negōtium, -i, n., business; pains, difficulty, trouble [61]
nimis (adv.), excessively, too [43]
nix, nivis, f., snow [205]
nōbilis, -e, noble, prominent [64]
nōndum (adv.), not yet [45]
November, -bris, -bre, of November [45]
occidō, occidere, occidī, occīsus, kill, cut down [43]
ordō, -inis, m., order, rank, (social) class, body [43]
ōsculum, -i, n., kiss [178]
ōtium, -i, n., leisure, idleness [55]
pactus, -a, -um, agreed upon [55]
pār, paris, equal [62]
pariō, parere, peperi, partus, give birth (to), bear, produce; acquire [55]
pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open, be evident [42]
paulatim (adv.), little by little, by degrees, gradually [68]
perditus, -a, -um, lost, desperate, degenerate [45]
pernicīes, -ēi, f., destruction, ruin, disaster [44]
perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive, dangerous [43]
pestis, pestis, -ium, f., plague, destruction, ruin [42]
plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, a very great part; (pl.), very many, the majority, most [63]
posteritās, -tātis, f., later generations [54]
postrēmō (adv.), finally, at last; in a word [72]
potēns, -entis, powerful, having power over (+gen.) [202]
praeclārus, -a, -um, splendid; famous [56]
praesidiūm, -i, n., guard, garrison [42]
praeter (prep.+acc.), except, beyond, besides [70]
prætereā (adv.), besides, furthermore, in addition [64]
praetor, -ōris, m., praetor, a public official; judge [44]
pridem (adv.), for a long time; **iam pridem**, for a long time already, long since [42]
primō (adv.), at first [58]
prīnceps, principis, first, foremost, chief; (subst.), leading man [46]
principium, -i, n., beginning, origin [102]
privātus, -a, -um, private [43]
proelium, -i, n., battle [68]
profectō (adv.), in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly [67]
proprius, -a, -um, own, personal, individual [123]
pudicitia, -ae, f., modesty, chastity, virtue [70]
pudor, -ōris, m., shame, decency, modesty [54]
quam (adv.), how [42]
quoque (adv.), also, too [52]
quotiēns (adv.), how many times, how often; as many times as, as often as [50]

rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptus, seize, carry off, snatch; impel [55]
ratiō, -ōnis, f., account, reason; method, way [51]
relevō (1), lighten, relieve, free [58]
reperiō, reperire, rep(p)eri, repertus, find, discover [47]
ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a river) [223]
rursus (adv.), again; in addition [179]
Sāturnus, -ī, m., Saturn, god of agriculture and once king of heaven; equivalent to Greek Titan Kronos [84]
senātus, -ūs, m., senate [42]
sēsē = sē [42]
sevēritās, -tatis, f., sternness, strictness [48]
sicuti or sicut (conj.), just as [67]
silentium, -ī, n., silence [53]
simul (adv.), at the same time [62]
sīn (conj.), but if [48]
sive or seu (conj.), or if [201]
stātim (adv.), immediately [98]
strēnuus, -a, -um, active, vigorous, energetic [74]
stuprum, -ī, n., debauchery; prey [55]
subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus, drive under, force; subdue, conquer [68]
super (prep. + acc.), over, above, beyond; (prep. + abl.) above; about, concerning; (adv.) in addition [98]
superbia, -ae, f., pride; arrogance, haughtiness [68]
supplicium, -ī, n., punishment [43]
suprā (adv.), above, beyond; further, more [64]
tacitus, -a, -um, silent [51]
tametsī (conj. + indic. or subj.), notwithstanding that, although [62]
tandem (adv.), *in questions and commands.* pray; I ask you [42]
taurus, -ī, m., bull [218]
tēlum, -ī, n., weapon [42]
tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, soft, delicate, young [201]
testis, testis, -ium, m. or f., witness [123]
tolerō (1), bear the weight of, endure, withstand [68]
torus, -ī, m., couch, bed [177]
trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus, draw, drag; lead away; distract [67]
trēs, tria (numerical adj.), three [123]
turpitūdō, -tūdinis, f., moral turpitude, disgrace [49]
tūs, tūris, n., incense, frankincense [230]
ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, most remote, last [93]
undique (adv.), from all sides, on all sides [45]
ūsque (adv.), continuously; all the way (to) [42, 91]
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two); both [61]
vacuus, -a, -um, empty; free, available; carefree, disengaged [202]
valeō, valēre, valui, valitus, be strong, be able; fare well [52]
vāstō (1), lay waste, ravage, destroy [43]
vehementer (adv.), exceedingly, strongly [57]
veluti or velut (conj.), even as, just as [61]
venter, ventris, m., belly, stomach [61]

Venus, Veneris, f., Venus, goddess of love [140]
vēr, vēris, n., spring [200]
vērum (conj.), but [44, 98]
vexō (1), trouble, disturb, harass [56]
vigilō (1), remain awake; watch for [46]
vindicō (1), avenge, punish [49]
virgō, virginis, f., maiden, virgin [149]
viridis, -e, green [200]
visō, visere, visi, visus, go to see, visit; view, behold [200]
vitium, -ī, n., vice, fault [49, 91]
vitō (1), avoid [42]
vultus, -ūs, m., face, looks, expression [42]

Arrowed Footnotes

In addition, to the words arrowed in the glosses, the following words and ideas have been arrowed in footnotes:

ad, here and frequently, for (the purpose of) [42:8]
brevi, sc., tempore [65:3]
domi militiaeque, locatives, at home and in military service [67:2]
in (+acc.), here and frequently, against [42:1]
in primis, especially, in particular [62:5]
invidia, here and frequently, ill-will, resentment [54:4]
liberi, -um or -ōrum, m. pl., children [43:8]
modus, here and frequently, measure, meter; poetry, verse [213:2]
neque enim, for . . . not [50:2]
paucis, sc., verbis [63:6]
quamquam, with a question introducing an independent clause, and yet [54:1]
rēs gestae, accomplishments, deeds [67:1]
simul, here and frequently, conj., as soon as [201:3]
studium, here and frequently, pursuit [55:7]
superior, superius, here and frequently, previous, preceding; earlier [42:6]
 Second declension nouns ending in **-ius** or **-ium** often contract **-i-** at the end of the stem with **-ī** of the genitive singular ending: **-īf → -ī.** [42:4]
 The present tense, when accompanied by some expression of time duration, is often used to denote action that has been going on for some time and is still going on. Translate: "we have been allowing." [44:2]